

THE  
SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST

TRANSLATED

BY VARIOUS ORIENTAL SCHOLARS

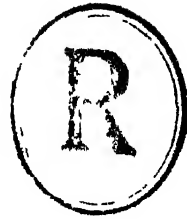
AND EDITED BY

F. MAX MÜLLER

b. L. 2278  
REFERENCE

VOI. VIII

*SECOND EDITION*



OXFORD  
AT THE CLARENDON PRESS

1908

OXFORD  
PRINTED AT THE CLARENDON PRESS  
BY HORACE HART, M A  
PRINTER TO THE UNIVERSITY

## CONTENTS.

	PAGE
<b>BHAGAVADGÎTÂ:-</b>	
Introduction . . . . .	I
Translation . . . . .	37
<b>SANATSUGÂTÎYA:—</b>	
Introduction . . . . .	135
Translation . . . . .	149
<b>ANUGÎTÂ:—</b>	
Introduction . . . . .	197
Translation . . . . .	229
INDEX OF PRINCIPAL MATTERS . . . . .	395
SANSKRIT INDEX . . . . .	439

— — — — —

Transliteration of Oriental Alphabets adopted for the Trans- lations of the Sacred Books of the East . . . . .	443
---	-----





# INTRODUCTION

## TO

### BHAGAVADGÎTÂ

IT has become quite a literary commonplace, that—to borrow the words of Professor Max Müller in one of his recent lectures—history, in the ordinary sense of the word, is almost unknown in Indian literature<sup>1</sup>. And it is certainly a remarkable irony of fate, that we should be obliged to make this remark on the very threshold of an introduction to the Bhagavadgîtâ; for according to the eminent French philosopher, Cousin<sup>2</sup>, this great deficiency in Sanskrit literature is due, in no inconsiderable measure, to the doctrines propounded in the Bhagavadgîtâ itself. But however that may be, this much is certain, that the student of the Bhagavadgîtâ must, for the present, go without that reliable historical information touching the author of the work, the time at which it was composed, and even the place it occupies in literature, which one naturally desires, when entering upon the study of any work. More especially in an attempt like the present, intended as it mainly is for students of the history of religion, I should have been better pleased, if I could, in this Introduction, have concentrated to a focus, as it were, only those well ascertained historical results, on which there is something like a consensus of opinion among persons qualified to judge. But there is no exaggeration in saying, that it is almost impossible to lay down even a single proposition respecting any important

---

<sup>1</sup> Hibbert Lectures, p. 131

<sup>2</sup> Lectures on the History of Modern Philosophy (translated by O. W. Wight), vol. 1, pp 49, 50. At p. 433 seq of the second volume, M. Cousin gives a general view of the doctrine of the Gîtâ. See also Mr Maurice's and Ritter's Histories of Philosophy.

matter connected with the Bhagavadgîtâ, about which any such consensus can be said to exist. The conclusions arrived at in this Introduction must, therefore, be distinctly understood to embody individual opinions only, and must be taken accordingly for what they are worth.

The full name of the work is Bhagavadgîtâ. In common parlance, we often abbreviate the name into Gîtâ, and in Sanskrit literature the name occurs in both forms. In the works of Sâṅkarâkârya, quotations from the Gîtâ are introduced, sometimes with the words 'In the Gîtâ,' or 'In the Bhagavadgîtâ,' and sometimes with words which may be rendered 'In the Gîtâs,' the plural form being used<sup>1</sup>. In the colophons to the MSS. of the work, the form current, apparently throughout India, is, 'In the Upanishads sung (Gîtâs) by the Deity.' Sâṅkarâkârya, indeed, sometimes calls it the Îsvara Gîtâ<sup>2</sup>, which, I believe, is the specific title of a different work altogether. The signification, however, of the two names is identical, namely, the song sung by the Deity, or, as Wilkins translates it, the Divine Lay.

This Divine Lay forms part of the Bhîshma Parvan of the Mahâbhârata—one of the two well-known national epics of India. The Gîtâ gives its name to a subdivision of the Bhîshma Parvan, which is called the Bhagavadgîtâ Parvan, and which includes, in addition to the eighteen chapters of which the Gîtâ consists, twelve other chapters. Upon this the question has naturally arisen, Is the Gîtâ a genuine portion of the Mahâbhârata, or is it a later addition? The question is one of considerable difficulty. But I cannot help saying, that the manner in which it has been generally dealt with is not altogether satisfactory to my mind. Before going any further into that question, however, it is desirable to state some of the facts on which the decision must be based. It appears, then, that the royal family of Hastinâpura was divided into two branches; the one called the Kauravas, and the other the Pândavas. The

<sup>1</sup> Ex. gr. Sâṅkarâkârya Bhâṣhya, vol. ii, p. 840. It is also often cited as a *Smṛiti*, *ibid.* vol. i, p. 152.

<sup>2</sup> See *inter alia* Sâṅkarâkârya Bhâṣhya, vol. i, p. 455, vol. ii, p. 687, and Colebooke's *Essays*, vol. i, p. 355 (Madras); Lassen's edition of the Gîtâ, XXXV.

former wished to keep the latter out of the share of the kingdom claimed by them ; and so, after many attempts at an amicable arrangement had proved fruitless, it was determined to decide the differences between the two parties by the arbitrament of arms. Each party accordingly collected its adherents, and the hostile armies met on the 'holy field of Kurukshetra,' mentioned in the opening lines of our poem. At this juncture, *Krishna* Dvaipâyana, alias *Vyâsa*, a relative of both parties and endowed with more than human powers, presents himself before *Dhrîtarâshtra*, the father of the Kauravas, who is stated to be altogether blind. *Vyâsa* asks *Dhrîtarâshtra* whether it is his wish to look with his own eyes on the course of the battle ; and on *Dhrîtarâshtra*'s expressing his reluctance, *Vyâsa* deputes one *Saṅgaya* to relate to *Dhrîtarâshtra* all the events of the battle, giving to *Saṅgaya*, by means of his own superhuman powers, all necessary aids for performing the duty. Then the battle begins, and after a ten days' struggle, the first great general of the Kauravas, namely *Bhîshma*, falls<sup>1</sup>. At this point *Saṅgaya* comes up to *Dhrîtarâshtra*, and announces to him the sad result, which is of course a great blow to his party. *Dhrîtarâshtra* then makes numerous enquiries of *Saṅgaya* regarding the course of the conflict, all of which *Saṅgaya* duly answers. And among his earliest answers is the account of the conversation between *Krishna* and *Arguna* at the commencement of the battle, which constitutes the *Bhagavadgîtâ*. After relating to *Dhrîtarâshtra* that 'wonderful and holy dialogue,' and after giving an account of what occurred in the intervals of the conversation, *Saṅgaya* proceeds to narrate the actual events of the battle.

With this rough outline of the framework of the story before us, we are now in a position to consider the opposing arguments on the point above noted. Mr. Talboys Wheeler writes on that point as follows<sup>2</sup>: 'But there remains one

<sup>1</sup> The whole story is given in brief by the late Professor Goldstucker in the *Westminster Review*, April 1868, p. 392 seq. See now his *Literary Remains*, II, 104 seq.

<sup>2</sup> *History of India*, vol. i, p. 293.

other anomalous characteristic of the history of the great war, as it is recorded in the Mahābhārata, which cannot be passed over in silence; and that is the extraordinary abruptness and infelicity with which Brahmanical discourses, such as essays on law, on morals, sermons on divine things, and even instruction in the so-called sciences are recklessly grafted upon the main narrative. . . . *Kṛishna* and *Arguna* on the morning of the first day of the war, when both armies are drawn out in battle-array, and hostilities are about to begin, enter into a long and philosophical dialogue respecting the various forms of devotion which lead to the emancipation of the soul; and it cannot be denied that, however incongruous and irrelevant such a dialogue must appear on the eve of battle, the discourse of *Kṛishna*, whilst acting as the charioteer of *Arguna*, contains the essence of the most spiritual phases of Brahmanical teaching, and is expressed in language of such depth and sublimity, that it has become deservedly known as the *Bhagavad-gītā* or Divine Song. . . . Indeed no effort has been spared by the Brahmanical compilers to convert the history of the great war into a vehicle for Brahmanical teaching; and so skilfully are many of these interpolations interwoven with the story, that it is frequently impossible to narrate the one, without referring to the other, however irrelevant the matter may be to the main subject in hand.' It appears to me, I own, very difficult to accept that as a satisfactory argument, amounting, as it does, to no more than 'this—that 'interpolations,' which must needs be referred to in narrating the main story even to make it intelligible, are nevertheless to be regarded 'as evidently the product of a Brahmanical age<sup>1</sup>,' and presumably also a later age, because, forsooth, they are irrelevant and incongruous according to the 'tastes and ideas'<sup>1</sup>—not of the time, be it remembered, when the 'main story' is supposed to have been written, but—of this enlightened nineteenth century. The support, too, which may be sup-

<sup>1</sup> History of India, vol. i, p. 288; and compare generally upon this point the remarks in Gladstone's Homer, especially vol. i, p. 70 seq.

posed to be derived by this argument from the allegation that there has been an attempt to Brahmanize, so to say, the history of the great war, appears to me to be extremely weak, so far as the *Gîtâ* is concerned. But that is a point which will have to be considered more at large in the sequel<sup>1</sup>

While, however, I am not prepared to admit the cogency Mr. Wheeler's arguments, I am not, on the other hand, to be understood as holding that the *Gîtâ* must be accepted as a genuine part of the original *Mahâbhârata*. I own that my feeling on the subject is something akin to that of the great historian of Greece regarding the Homeric question, a feeling of painful diffidence regarding the soundness of any conclusion whatever. While it is impossible not to feel serious doubts about the critical condition of the *Mahâbhârata* generally; while, indeed, we may be almost certain that the work has been tampered with from time to time<sup>2</sup>; it is difficult to come to a satisfactory conclusion regarding any particular given section of it. And it must be remembered, also, that the alternatives for us to choose from in these cases are not only these two, that the section in question may be a genuine part of the work, or that it may be a later interpolation: but also this, as suggested recently, though not for the first time, by Mr. Freeman<sup>3</sup> with reference to the Homeric question, that the section may have been in existence at the date of the original epos, and may have been worked by the author of the epos into his own production. For that absence of dread, 'either of the law or sentiment of copyright,' which Mr. Freeman relies upon with regard to a primitive Greek poet, was by no means confined to the Greek people, but may be traced amongst us also. The commentator *Madhusûdana Sarasvatî* likens the *Gîtâ* to those dialogues which occur in sundry Vedic works, particularly the *Upanishads*<sup>4</sup>. Possibly—I will not use a stronger word—possibly the *Gîtâ*

<sup>1</sup> *Infra*, p. 21 seq.

<sup>2</sup> Compare the late Professor Goldstucker's remarks in the *Westminster Review* for April 1868, p. 389. <sup>3</sup> *Contemporary Review* (February 1879.)

<sup>4</sup> *Madhusûdana* mentions the dialogue between *Ganaka* and *Yâgyavalkya* as a specific parallel.

may have existed as such a dialogue before the Mahâbhârata, and may have been appropriated by the author of the Mahâbhârata to his own purposes<sup>1</sup>. But yet, upon the whole, having regard to the fact that those ideas of unity on which Mr. Wheeler and others set so much store are scarcely appropriate to our old literature; to the fact that the Gîtâ fits pretty well into the setting given to it in the Bhîshma Parvan; to the fact that the feeling of Arguna, which gives occasion to it, is not at all inconsistent, but is most consonant, with poetical justice; to the fact that there is not in the Gîtâ, in my judgment, any trace of a sectarian or 'Brahmanizing' spirit<sup>2</sup>, such as Mr. Wheeler and also the late Professor Goldstucker<sup>3</sup> hold to have animated the arrangers of the Mahâbhârata; having regard, I say, to all these facts, I am prepared to adhere, I will not say without diffidence, to the theory of the genuineness of the Bhagavadgîtâ as a portion of the original Mahâbhârata.

The next point to consider is as to the authorship of the Gîtâ. The popular notion on this subject is pretty well known. The whole of the Mahâbhârata is, by our traditions, attributed to Vyâsa, whom we have already noticed as a relative of the Kauravas and Pândavas; and therefore the Bhagavadgîtâ, also, is naturally affiliated to the same author. The earliest written testimony to this authorship, that I can trace, is to be found in Saṅkarâkârya's commentary on the Gîtâ<sup>4</sup> itself and on the *Bṛihadâraṇyakopaniṣad*<sup>5</sup>. To a certain extent, the mention of Vyâsa in the body of the Gîtâ would, from a historic standpoint, seem to militate against this tradition. But I have not seen in any of the commentaries to which I have had access, any consideration of this point, as there is of the mention in some

<sup>1</sup> See to this effect M. Fauriel, quoted in Grote's *Greece*, II, 195 (Cabinet ed.)

<sup>2</sup> Compare also Weber's *History of Indian Literature* (English translation), p. 187. The instruction, however, as to 'the reverence due to the priesthood' from 'the military caste,' which is there spoken of, appears to me to be entirely absent from the Gîtâ; see p. 21 seq. *infra*.

<sup>3</sup> *Westminster Review*, April 1868, p. 388 seq.; and *Remains*, I, 104, 105.

<sup>4</sup> P. 6 (Calcutta ed., Samvat, 1927).

<sup>5</sup> P. 841 (*Bibl. Indic. ed.*); also *Svetâsvatara*, p. 278.

*Smṛitis* and *Sūtras* of the names of those to whom those *Smṛitis* and *Sūtras* are respectively ascribed<sup>1</sup>.

We must now leave these preliminary questions, unluckily in a state far from satisfactory, and proceed to that most important topic—the date when the *Gītā* was composed, and the position it occupies in Sanskrit literature. We have here to consider the external evidence bearing on these points, which is tantalizingly meagre; and the internal evidence, which is, perhaps, somewhat more full. And taking first the internal evidence, the various items falling under that head may be marshalled into four groups. Firstly, we have to consider the general character of the *Gītā* with reference to its mode of handling its subject. Secondly, there is the character of its style and language. Thirdly, we have to consider the nature of the versification of the *Gītā*. And fourthly and lastly, we must take note of sundry points of detail, such as the attitude of the *Gītā* towards the Vedas and towards caste, its allusions to other systems of speculation, and other matters of the like nature. On each of these groups, in the order here stated, we now proceed to make a few observations.

And first about the manner in which the *Gītā* deals with its subject. It appears to me, that the work bears on the face of it very plain marks indicating that it belongs to an age prior to the system-making age of Sanskrit philosophy. In 1875, I wrote as follows upon this point: 'My view is, that in the *Gītā* and the Upanishads, the philosophical part has not been consistently and fully worked out. We have there the results of free thought, exercised on different subjects of great moment, unfettered by the exigencies of any foregone conclusions, or of any fully developed theory. It is afterwards, it is at a later stage of philosophical progress, that system-making arises. In that stage some thinkers interpret whole works by the light of some particular doctrines or expressions. And the result is the development of a whole multitude of philosophical sects, following the lead of those thinkers, and all professing to

<sup>1</sup> See, as to this, Colebrooke's Essays, vol. i, p. 328 (Madras).

draw their doctrine from the Gîtâ or the Upanishads, yet each differing remarkably from the other <sup>1</sup>. Since this was written, Professor Max Müller's Hibbert Lectures have been published. And I am happy to find, that as regards the Upanishads, his view coincides exactly with that which I have expressed in the words now quoted. Professor Max Müller says: 'There is not what may be called a philosophical system in these Upanishads. They are in the true sense of the word guesses at truth, frequently contradicting each other, yet all tending in one direction <sup>2</sup>.' Further corroboration for the same view is also forthcoming. Professor Fitz-Edward Hall, in a passage which I had not noticed before, says <sup>3</sup>: 'In the Upanishads, the Bhagavad-gîtâ, and other ancient Hindu books, we encounter, in combination, the doctrines which, after having been subjected to modifications that rendered them as wholes irreconcilable, were distinguished, at an uncertain period, into what have for many ages been styled the Sâṅkhya and the Vedânta.' We have thus very weighty authority for adhering to the view already expressed on this important topic. But as Professor Weber appears to have expressed an opinion <sup>4</sup> intended perhaps to throw some doubt on the correctness of that view, it is desirable to go a little more into detail to fortify it by actual reference to the contents of the Gîtâ, the more especially as we can thus elucidate the true character of that work. Before doing so, however, it may be pointed out, that the proposition we have laid down is one, the test of which lies more in a comprehensive review of the whole of the Gîtâ, than in the investigation of small details on which there is necessarily much room for difference of opinion.

And first, let us compare that indisputably systematized work, the current Yoga-sûtras <sup>5</sup>, with the Bhagavadgîtâ on

<sup>1</sup> See the Introductory Essay to my Bhagavadgîtâ, translated into English blank verse, p. lxvii. See also Goldstucker's Remains, I, 48, 77; II, 10.

<sup>2</sup> P. 317; cf. also p. 338.

<sup>3</sup> Preface to Sâṅkhya Sâra, p. 7 (Bibl. Indic. ed.)

<sup>4</sup> History of Indian Literature, p. 28.

<sup>5</sup> Are we to infer from the circumstance mentioned in Weber's History of



one or two topics, where they both travel over common ground. In the *Gîtâ*, chapter VI, stanzas 33, 34 (p. 71), we have *Arguna* putting what is, in substance, a question to *Krishna*, as to how the mind, which is admittedly 'fickle, boisterous, strong, and obstinate,' is to be brought under control—such control having been declared by *Krishna* to be necessary for attaining devotion (*yoga*)? *Krishna* answers by saying that the mind may be restrained by 'practice (*abhyâsa*) and indifference to worldly objects (*vairâgya*).' He then goes on to say, that devotion cannot be attained without self-restraint, but that one who has self-restraint, and works to achieve devotion, may succeed in acquiring it. Here the subject drops. There is no further explanation of 'practice' or 'indifference to worldly objects,' no exposition of the mode in which they work, and so forth. Contrast now the *Yoga-sûtras*. The topic is there discussed at the very outset of the work. As usual the author begins with 'Now therefore the *Yoga* is to be taught.' He then explains *Yoga* by the well-known definition '*Yoga* is the restraint of the movements of the mind.' And then after pointing out what the movements of the mind are, he proceeds: 'Their restraint is by means of practice and indifference to worldly objects<sup>1</sup>,'—the very terms, be it remarked in passing, which are used in the *Bhagavadgîtâ*. But having come thus far, the author of the *Sûtras* does not drop the subject as the author of the *Gîtâ* does. He goes on in this wise: 'Practice is the effort for keeping it steady.' 'And that becomes firmly grounded when resorted to for a long time, without interruption, and with correct conduct.' So far we have a discussion of the first requisite specified, namely, practice. *Patañjali* then goes on to his second requisite for mental restraint. 'Indifference to worldly objects is the consciousness of having subdued desires &c. (*Vasîkāra sañgīhā*) which belongs to one having no longing for objects visible and those which

---

Indian Literature (p. 223, note 235), that the author of these *Sûtras* was older than Buddha?

<sup>1</sup> *Sûtra* 12, *Abhyâsa-vairâgyâbhyâṁ tannirodhaḥ*.

are heard of' (from Sâstras &c., such as heaven and so forth). He next proceeds to distinguish another and higher species of 'indifference,' and then he goes on to point out the results of that self-restraint which is to be acquired in the mode he has expounded. That is one instance. Now take another. In chapter VI, stanza 10 and following stanzas, the Gîtâ sets forth elaborately the mode of practically achieving the mental abstraction called Yoga. It need not be reproduced here. The reader can readily find out how sundry directions are there given for the purpose specified, but without any attempt at systematizing. Contrast the Yoga-sûtras. In the Sâdhanapâda, the section treating of the acquisition of Yoga, Patañjali states in the twenty-ninth aphorism the well-known eight elements of Yoga. Then he subdivides these elements, and expatiates on each of them distinctly, defining them, indicating the mode of acquiring them, and hinting at the results which flow from them. 'That inordinate love of subdivision,' which Dr. F. E. Hall<sup>1</sup> has somewhere attributed to the Hindus, appears plainly in these aphorisms, while there is not a trace of it in the corresponding passage in the Bhagavadgîtâ. In my opinion, therefore, these comparisons strongly corroborate the proposition we have laid down regarding the unsystematic, or rather non-systematic, character of the work. In the one we have definition, classification, division, and subdivision. In the other we have a set of practical directions, without any attempt to arrange them in any very scientific order. In the one you have a set of technical terms with specific significations. In the other no such precision is yet manifest. In one word, you have in the Gîtâ the germs, and noteworthy germs too, of a system<sup>2</sup>, and you have most of the raw material of a system, but you have no system ready-made.\*

Let us look at the matter now from a slightly different point of view. There are sundry words used in the Bhaga-

<sup>1</sup> In the Preface to his Sâmkhya Sâra, I think.

<sup>2</sup> This is all that we can infer from the few cases of division and classification which we do meet with in the Gîtâ. A subject like that treated of in this work could not well be discussed without some classifications &c.

vadgîtâ, the significations of which are not quite identical throughout the work. Take, for instance, the word 'yoga,' which we have rendered 'devotion.' At Gîtâ, chapter II, stanza 48 (p. 49), a definition is given of that word. In chapter VI, the signification it bears is entirely different. And again in chapter IX, stanza 5, there is still another sense in which the word is used<sup>1</sup>. The word 'Brahman' too occurs in widely varying significations. And one of its meanings, indeed, is quite singular, namely, 'Nature' (see chapter XIV, stanza 3). Similar observations, to a greater or less extent, apply to the words *Buddhi*, *Âtman*, and *Sva-bhâva*<sup>2</sup>. Now these are words which stand for ideas not unimportant in the philosophy of the *Bhagavadgîtâ*. And the absence of scientific precision about their use appears to me to be some indication of that non-systematic character of which we have already spoken.

There is one other line of argument, which leads, I think, to the same conclusion. There are several passages in the *Gîtâ* which it is not very easy to reconcile with one another; and no attempt is made to harmonise them. Thus, for example, in stanza 16 of chapter VII, *Kṛishna* divides his devotees into four classes, one of which consists of 'men of knowledge,' whom, *Kṛishna* says, he considers 'as his own self.' It would probably be difficult to imagine any expression which could indicate higher esteem. Yet in stanza 46 of chapter VI, we have it laid down, that the devotee is superior not only to the mere performer of penances, but even to the men of knowledge. The commentators betray their gnostic bias by interpreting 'men of knowledge' in this latter passage to mean those who have acquired erudition in the *Sâstras* and their significations. This is not an interpretation to be necessarily rejected. But there is in it a certain twisting of words, which, under the circumstances here, I am not inclined to accept. And on the other hand, it must not be forgotten, that the implication fairly derivable

<sup>1</sup> In chapter X the word occurs in two different senses in the same stanza (st. 7).

<sup>2</sup> Compare the various passages, references to which are collected in the Sanskrit Index at the end of this volume.

from chapter IV, stanza 38 (pp. 62, 63), would seem to be rather that knowledge is superior to devotion—is the higher stage to be reached by means of devotion as the stepping-stone. In another passage again at Gītā, chapter XII, stanza 12, concentration is preferred to knowledge, which also seems to me to be irreconcilable with chapter VII, stanza 16. Take still another instance. At Gītā, chapter V, stanza 15, it is said, that ‘the Lord receives the sin or merit of none’ Yet at chapter V, stanza 29, and again at chapter IX, stanza 24, *Kṛishṇa* calls himself ‘the Lord and enjoyer’ of all sacrifices and penances. How, it may well be asked, can the Supreme Being ‘enjoy’ that which he does not even ‘receive?’ Once more, at chapter X, stanza 29, *Kṛishṇa* declares that ‘none is hateful to me, none dear.’ And yet the remarkable verses at the close of chapter XII seem to stand in point-blank contradiction to that declaration. There through a most elaborate series of stanzas, the burden of *Kṛishṇa*’s eloquent sermon is ‘such a one is dear to me.’ And again in those fine verses, where *Kṛishṇa* winds up his Divine Lay, he similarly tells Arguna, that he, Arguna, is ‘dear’ to *Kṛishṇa*. And *Kṛishṇa* also speaks of that devotee as ‘dear’ to him, who may publish the mystery of the Gītā among those who reverence the Supreme Being<sup>1</sup>. And yet again, how are we to reconcile the same passage about none being ‘hateful or dear’ to *Kṛishṇa*, with his own words at chapter XVI, stanza 18 and following stanzas<sup>2</sup>. The language used in describing the ‘demoniac’ people there mentioned is not remarkable for sweetness towards them, while *Kṛishṇa* says positively, ‘I hurl down such people into demoniac wombs, whereby they go down into misery and the vilest condition.’ These persons are scarcely characterised with accuracy ‘as neither hateful nor dear’ to *Kṛishṇa*. It seems to me, that all these are real inconsistencies in the Gītā, not such, perhaps, as might not be explained away, but such, I think, as indicate a mind making guesses at truth, as Professor Max

<sup>1</sup> And see, too, chapter VII, stanza 17, where the man of knowledge is declared to be ‘dear’ to *Kṛishṇa*.

Müller puts it, rather than a mind elaborating a complete and organised system of philosophy. There is not even a trace of consciousness on the part of the author that these inconsistencies exist. And the contexts of the various passages indicate, in my judgment, that a half-truth is struck out here, and another half-truth there, with special reference to the special subject then under discussion; but no attempt is made to organise the various half-truths, which are apparently incompatible, into a symmetrical whole, where the apparent inconsistencies might possibly vanish altogether in the higher synthesis. And having regard to these various points, and to the further point, that the sequence of ideas throughout the verses of the *Gîtâ* is not always easily followed, we are, I think, safe in adhering to the opinion expressed above, that the *Gîtâ* is a non-systematic work, and in that respect belongs to the same class as the older *Upanishads*.

We next come to the consideration of the style and language of the *Bhagavadgîtâ*. And that, I think, furnishes a strong argument for the proposition, that it belongs to an age considerably prior to the epoch of the artificial department of Sanskrit literature—the epoch, namely, of the dramas and poems. In its general character, the style impresses me as quite archaic in its simplicity. Compounds, properly so called, are not numerous: such as there are, are not long ones, and very rarely, if ever, present any puzzle in analysing. The contrast there presented with what is called the classical literature, as represented by *Bâna* or *Dandin*, or even *Kâlidâsa*, is not a little striking. In *Kâlidâsa*, doubtless, the love for compounds is pretty well subdued, though I think his works have a perceptibly larger proportion of them than the *Gîtâ*. But after *Kâlidâsa* the love for compounds goes through a remarkable development, till in later writings it may be said almost to have gone mad. Even in *Bâna* and *Dandin*, *Subandhu* and *Bhavabhûti*, the plethora of compounds is often wearisome. And the same remark applies to many of the copper-plate and other inscriptions which have been recently

deciphered, and some of which date from the early centuries of the Christian era. Take again the exuberance of figures and tropes which is so marked in the classical style. There is little or nothing of that in the Gītā, where you have a plain and direct style of natural simplicity, and yet a style not by any means devoid of æsthetic merit like the style of the Sūtra literature. There is also an almost complete absence of involved syntactical constructions; no attempt to secure that jingle of like sounds, which seems to have proved a temptation too strong even for Kālidāsa's muse entirely to resist. But on the contrary, we have those repetitions of words and phrases, which are characteristic, and not only in Sanskrit, of the style of an archaic period<sup>1</sup>. Adverting specially to the language as distinguished from the style of the Gītā, we find such words as *Anta*, *Bhāshā*, *Brahman*, some of which are collected in the Sanskrit Index in this volume, which have gone out of use in the classical literature in the significations they respectively bear in the Gītā. The word 'ha,' which occurs once, is worthy of special note. It is the equivalent of 'gha,' which occurs in the Vedic *Saṃhitās*. In the form 'ha' it occurs in the *Brahmaṇyas*. But it never occurs, I think, in what is properly called the classical literature. It is, indeed, found in the *Purāṇas*. But that is a class of works which occupies a very unique position. There is a good deal in the *Purāṇas* that, I think, must be admitted to be very ancient<sup>2</sup>; while undoubtedly also there is a great deal in them that is very modern. It is, therefore, impossible to treat the use of 'ha' in that class of works as negating an inference of the antiquity of any book where the word occurs; while its use in Vedic works and its total absence from modern works indicate such

<sup>1</sup> Compare Muir, *Sanskrit Texts*, vol. i, p. 5. See, too, Goldstucker's *Remains*, I, 177.

<sup>2</sup> This opinion which I had expressed as long ago as 1874 in the Introduction to my edition of Bhartṛhari's *Satakas*, is, I find, also held by Dr. Buhler; see his Introduction to *Apastamba* in this series, p. xx seq., note. *Purāṇas* are mentioned in the *Sutta Nipāta* (p. 115), as to the date of which, see *inter alia* Swamy's Introduction, p. xvii.

antiquity pretty strongly. We may, therefore, embody the result of this part of the discussion in the proposition, that the Gîtâ is removed by a considerable linguistic and chronological distance from classical Sanskrit literature. And so far as it goes, this proposition agrees with the result of our investigation of the first branch of internal evidence.

The next branch of that evidence brings us to the character of the versification of the Gîtâ. Here, again, a survey of Sanskrit verse generally, and the verse of the Gîtâ in particular, leads us to a conclusion regarding the position of the Gîtâ in Sanskrit literature, which is in strict accord with the conclusions we have already drawn. In the verse of the Vedic Samhitâs, there is almost nothing like a rigidly fixed scheme of versification, no particular collocation of long and short syllables is absolutely necessary. If we attempt to chant them in the mode in which classical Sanskrit verse is chanted, we invariably come across lines where the chanting cannot be smooth. If we come next to the versification of the Upanishads, we observe some progress made towards such fixity of scheme as we have alluded to above. Though there are still numerous lines, which cannot be smoothly chanted, there are, on the other hand, a not altogether inconsiderable number which can be smoothly chanted. In the Bhagavadgîtâ a still further advance, though a slight one, may, I think, be marked. A visibly larger proportion of the stanzas in the Gîtâ conform to the metrical schemes as laid down by the writers on prosody, though there are still sundry verses which do not so conform, and cannot, accordingly, be chanted in the regular way. Lastly, we come to the Kāvya and Nâṭakas the classical literature. And here in practice we find everywhere a most inflexible rigidity of scheme, while the theory is laid down in a rule which says, that 'even māsha may be changed to masha, but a break of metre should be avoided.' This survey of Sanskrit verse may, I think, be fairly treated as showing, that adhesion to the metrical schemes is one test of the chronological position of a work- the later the work, the

more undeviating is such adhesion. I need not stay here to point out, how this view receives corroboration from the rules given on this subject in the standard work of Piṅgala on the *Kṛāṇḍas Sâstra*. I will only conclude this point by saying, that the argument from the versification of the Gîtâ, so far as it goes, indicates its position as being prior to the classical literature, and nearly contemporaneous with the Upanishad literature.

We now proceed to investigate the last group of facts falling under the head of internal evidence, as mentioned above. And first as regards the attitude of the Gîtâ towards the Vedas. If we examine all the passages in the Gîtâ, in which reference is made to the Vedas, the aggregate result appears to be, that the author of the Gîtâ does not throw the Vedas entirely overboard. He feels and expresses reverence for them, only that reverence is of a somewhat special character. He says in effect, that the precepts of the Vedas are suitable to a certain class of people, of a certain intellectual and spiritual status, so to say. So far their authority is unimpeached. But if the unwise sticklers for the authority of the Vedas claim anything more for them than this, then the author of the Gîtâ holds them to be wrong. He contends, on the contrary, that acting upon the ordinances of the Vedas is an obstacle to the attainment of the *summum bonum*<sup>1</sup>. Compare this with the doctrine of the Upanishads. The coincidence appears to me to be most noteworthy. In one of his recent lectures, Professor Max Muller uses the following eloquent language regarding the Upanishads<sup>2</sup>: 'Lastly come the Upanishads; and what is their object? To show the utter uselessness, nay, the mischievousness of all ritual performances (compare our Gîtâ, pp. 47, 48, 84<sup>3</sup>); to condemn every sacrificial act which has for its motive a desire or hope of reward (comp. Gîtâ, p. 119<sup>4</sup>); to deny, if not the existence, at least the exceptional and exalted character

<sup>1</sup> Compare the passages collected under the word Vedas in our Index.

<sup>2</sup> Hibbert Lectures, p. 340 seq.

<sup>3</sup> II, 42-45; IX, 20, 21.

<sup>4</sup> XVII, 12.



of the Devas (comp. *Gîtâ*, pp. 76-84<sup>1</sup>); and to teach that there is no hope of salvation and deliverance except by the individual self recognising the true and universal self, and finding rest there, where alone rest can be found<sup>2</sup> (comp. our *Gîtâ* Translation, pp. 78-83).

The passages to which I have given references in brackets will show, that Professor Max Muller's words might all be used with strict accuracy regarding the essential teaching of the Bhagavad-gîtâ. We have here, therefore, another strong circumstance in favour of grouping the *Gîtâ* with the Upanishads. One more point is worthy of note. Wherever the *Gîtâ* refers to the Vedas in the somewhat disparaging manner I have noted, no distinction is taken between the portion which relates to the ritual and the portion which relates to that higher science, viz. the science of the soul, which Sanatkumâra speaks of in his famous dialogue with Nârada<sup>3</sup>. At *Gîtâ*, chapter II, stanza 45, Arjuna is told that the Vedas relate only to the effects of the three qualities, which effects Arjuna is instructed to overcome. At *Gîtâ*, chapter VI, stanza 44, Arjuna is told that he who has acquired some little devotion, and then exerts himself for further progress, rises above the Divine word—the Vedas. And there are also one or two other passages of the like nature. They all treat the Vedas as concerned with ritual alone. They make no reference to any portion of the Vedas dealing with the higher knowledge. If the word Vedânta, at *Gîtâ*, chapter XV, stanza 15 (p. 113), signifies, as it seems to signify, this latter portion of the Vedas, then that is the only allusion to it. But, from all the passages in the *Gîtâ* which refer to the Vedas, I am inclined to draw the inference, that the Upanishads of the Vedas were composed at a time not far removed from the time of the composition of the *Gîtâ*, and that at that period the Upanishads had not yet risen to the position of

<sup>1</sup> VII, 21-23; IX, 23-24.

<sup>2</sup> VIII, 14-16; IX, 29-33.

<sup>3</sup> See *Âtmandogya-upanishad*, p. 473, or rather I ought to have referred to the *Mundâka-upanishad*, where the superiority and inferiority is more distinctly stated in words, pp. 266, 267.

high importance which they afterwards commanded. In the passage referred to at chapter XV, the word Vedântas probably signifies the Âraṇyakas, which may be regarded as marking the beginning of the epoch, which the composition of the Upanishads brought to its close. And it is to the close of this epoch, that I would assign the birth of the Gîtâ, which is probably one of the youngest members of the group to which it belongs.

It appears to me, that this conclusion is corroborated by the fact that a few stanzas in the Gîtâ are identical with some stanzas in some of the Upanishads. With regard to the epic age of Greece, Mr. E. A. Freeman has said that, in carrying ourselves back to that age, 'we must cast aside all the notions with which we are familiar in our own age about property legal or moral in literary compositions. It is plain that there were phrases, epithets, whole lines, which were the common property of the whole epic school of poetry'.<sup>1</sup> It appears to me that we must accept this proposition as equally applicable to the early days of Sanskrit literature, having regard to the common passages which we meet with in sundry of the Vedic works, and also sometimes, I believe, in the different Purâṇas. If this view is correct, then the fact that the Gîtâ contains some stanzas in the very words which we meet with in some of the Upanishads, indicates, to my mind, that the conclusion already drawn from other data about the position of the Gîtâ with regard to the Upanishads, is not by any means unwarranted, but one to which the facts before us rather seem to point.

And here we may proceed to draw attention to another fact connected with the relation of the Gîtâ to the Vedas. In stanza 17 of the ninth chapter of the Gîtâ, only *Rik*, *Sâman*, and *Yagus* are mentioned. The Atharva-veda is not referred to at all. This omission does certainly seem a very noteworthy one. For it is in a passage where the Supreme Being is identifying himself with everything, and where, therefore, the fourth Veda might fairly be expected

<sup>1</sup> Contemporary Review, February 1879.

to be mentioned. I may add that in commenting on Saṅkārācārya's remarks on this passage, Ānandagiri (and Madhusūdana Sarasvatī also) seems evidently to have been conscious of the possible force of this omission of the Atharva-veda. He accordingly says that by force of the word 'and' in the verse in question, the Atharvāṅgirasas, or Atharva-veda, must also be included. Are we at liberty to infer from this, that the Atharva-veda did not exist in the days when the Gītā was composed? The explanation ordinarily given for the omission of that Veda, where such omission occurs, namely, that it is not of any use in ordinary sacrificial matters, is one which can scarcely have any force in the present instance; though it is adequate, perhaps, to explain the words 'those who know the three branches of knowledge,' which occur only a few lines after the verse now under consideration. The commentators render no further help than has been already stated. Upon the whole, however, while I am not yet quite prepared to say, that the priority of the Gītā, even to the recognition of the Atharva-veda as a real Veda, may be fairly inferred from the passage in question, I think that the passage is noteworthy as pointing in that direction. But further data in explanation of the omission referred to must be awaited.

If the conclusions here indicated about the relative positions of the Gītā and certain Vedic works are correct, we can fairly take the second century B.C. as a terminus before which the Gītā must have been composed. For the Upanishads are mentioned in the Mahābhāṣya of Patañjali, which we are probably safe in assigning to the middle of that century. The epoch of the older Upanishads, therefore, to which reference has been so frequently made here, may well be placed at some period prior to the beginning of the second century B.C. The Atharva-veda is likewise mentioned by Patañjali<sup>1</sup>, and as 'ninefold,' too, be it remembered; so that if we are entitled to draw the conclusion which has been mentioned above from chapter IX, stanza 17, we come to the same period for the date of the Gītā.

<sup>1</sup> See also Sutta Nipāta, p. 115.

Another point to note in this connexion is the reference to the Sâma-veda as the best of the Vedas (see p. 88). That is a fact which seems to be capable of yielding some chronological information. For the estimation in which that Veda has been held appears to have varied at different times. Thus, in the Aitareya-brâhmaṇa <sup>1</sup>, the glory of the Sâman is declared to be higher than that of the *Rik*. In the *Ātândogya-upanishad* <sup>2</sup> the Sâman is said to be the essence of the *Rik*, which Saṅkara interprets by saying that the Sâman is more weighty. In the *Prasna-upanishad* <sup>3</sup>, too, the implication of the passage V, 5 (in which the Sâman is stated as the guide to the Brahmaloṇa, while the Yagus is said to guide to the lunar world, and the *Rik* to the human world) is to the same effect. And we may also mention as on the same side the *Nṛsiṃha Tâpini-upanishad* and the Vedic passage cited in the commentary of Saṅkara on the closing sentence of the first *khaṇḍa* of that *Upanishad* <sup>4</sup>. On the other side, we have the statement in *Manu* that the sound of the Sâma-veda is unholy; and the consequent direction that where the sound of it is heard, the *Rik* and Yagus should not be recited <sup>5</sup>. We have also the passages from some of the *Purâṇas* noted by Dr. Muir in his excellent work, *Original Sanskrit Texts*, which point in the same direction <sup>6</sup>. And we have further the direction in the *Âpastamba Dharma-sûtra*, that the Sâman hymns should not be recited where the other Vedas are being recited <sup>7</sup>, as well as the grouping of the sound of the Sâman with various classes of objectionable and unholy noises, such as those of dogs and asses. It is pretty evident that the view of *Âpastamba* is based on the same theory as that of *Manu*. Now in looking at the two classes of authorities thus marshalled, it is plain that the *Gītā* ranges itself with those which are unquestionably the more ancient.

<sup>1</sup> Haug's edition, p. 68.

<sup>2</sup> *Bibl. Ind. ed.*, p. 12.

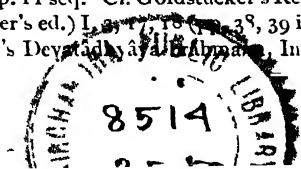
<sup>3</sup> *Bibl. Ind. ed.*, p. 11.

<sup>4</sup> *Bibl. Ind. ed.*, p. 221 seq.

<sup>5</sup> Chapter IV, stanzas 123, 124.

<sup>6</sup> Vol. in (2nd ed.), p. 11 seq. Cf. Goldstucker's *Remains*, I, 4, 28, 266; II, 67.

<sup>7</sup> *Âpastamba* (Bühler's ed.) I, 2, 17, 18 (p. 28, 39 in this series); see further on this point Mr. Burnell's *Devatâdhyâya*, Intro., pp. viii, ix, and notes



And among the less ancient works, prior to which we may place the *Gîtâ* on account of the facts now under consideration, are *Manu* and *Âpastamba*. Now *Manu*'s date is not ascertained, though, I believe, he is now generally considered to belong to about the second or third century B. C.<sup>1</sup> But Dr. Bühler, in the Preface to his *Âpastamba* in the present series, has adduced good reasons for holding that *Âpastamba* is prior to the third century B. C.<sup>2</sup>, and we therefore obtain that as a point of time prior to which the *Gîtâ* must have been composed.

The next important item of internal evidence which we have to note, is the view taken of caste in the *Bhagavad-gîtâ*. Here, again, a comparison of the doctrine of the *Gîtâ* with the conception of caste in *Manu* and *Âpastamba* is interesting and instructive. The view of *Manu* has been already contrasted by me with the *Gîtâ* in another place<sup>3</sup>. I do not propose to dwell on that point here, as the date of *Manu* is far from being satisfactorily ascertained. I prefer now to take up *Âpastamba* only, whose date, as just now stated, is fairly well fixed by Dr. Bühler. The division of castes, then, is twice referred to in the *Bhagavad-gîtâ*. In the first passage (p. 59) it is stated that the division rests on differences of qualities and duties; in the second (pp. 126, 127) the various duties are distinctly stated according to the differences of qualities. Now in the first place, noting as we pass along, that there is nothing in the *Gîtâ* to indicate whether caste was hereditary, according to its view, whereas *Âpastamba* distinctly states it to be such, let us compare the second passage of the *Gîtâ* with the *Sûtras* of *Âpastamba* bearing on the point. The view enunciated in the *Gîtâ* appears to me plainly to belong to an earlier age—to an age of considerably less advancement in social and religious development. In the *Gîtâ*, for instance, the duties of a *Brâhmana* are said to be tranquillity, self-restraint, and

<sup>1</sup> Professor Tiele (*History of Ancient Religions*, p. 127) considers the 'main features' of *Manu* to be 'pre-Buddhistic.'

<sup>2</sup> P. xxxv.

<sup>3</sup> See the Introductory Essay to my *Bhagavad-gîtâ* in English verse, published in 1875, p. cxii.

so forth. In Āpastamba, they are the famous six duties, namely, study, imparting instruction, sacrificing, officiating at others' sacrifices, making gifts, and receiving gifts : and three others, namely, inheritance, occupancy, and gleanings of ears of corn, which, it may be remarked en passant, are not stated in Manu. The former seem to my mind to point to the age when the qualities which in early times gave the Brāhmanas their pre-eminence in Hindu society were still a living reality<sup>1</sup>. It will be noted, too, that there is nothing in that list of duties which has any necessary or natural connexion with any privilege as belonging to the caste. The Law lays down these duties, in the true sense of the word. In Āpastamba, on the contrary, we see an advance towards the later view on both points. You have no reference to moral and religious qualities now. You have to do with ceremonies and acts. You have under the head 'duties' not mere obligations, but rights. For the duty of receiving gifts is a right, and so is the duty of teaching others and officiating at others' sacrifices ; as we know not merely from the subsequent course of events, but also from a comparison of the duties of Brāhmanas on the one hand, and Kṣatriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras on the other, as laid down by Manu and Āpastamba themselves. Āpastamba's rules, therefore, appear to belong to the time when the Brāhmanas had long been an established power, and were assuming to themselves those valuable privileges which they have always claimed in later times. The rules of the Gītā, on the other hand, point to a time considerably prior to this to a time when the Brāhmanas were by their moral and intellectual qualities laying the foundation of that pre-eminence in Hindu society which afterwards enabled them to lord it over all castes. These observations mutatis mutandis apply to the rules regarding the other castes also. Here again, while the Gītā still insists on the inner qualities, which properly constitute the military profession, for instance, the rules of Āpastamba indicate the powerful

<sup>1</sup> The remarks in the text will show how little there is in the Gītā of that 'Brahmanizing' which has been shortly noticed on a previous page.

influence of the Brāhmaṇas<sup>1</sup>. For, as stated before, officiating at others' sacrifices, instructing others, and receiving presents, are here expressly prohibited to Kshatriyas as also to Vaisyas. The result of that is, that the Brāhmaṇas become indispensable to the Kshatriyas and Vaisyas, for upon both the duty of study, of offering sacrifices, and making gifts and presents is inculcated. In his outline of the History of Ancient Religions, Professor Tiele, speaking of the 'increasing influence of the Brāhmans,' writes as follows: 'Subject at first to the princes and nobles, and dependent on them, they began by insinuating themselves into their favour, and representing it as a religious duty to show protection and liberality towards them. Meanwhile they endeavoured to make themselves indispensable to them, gradually acquired the sole right to conduct public worship, and made themselves masters of instruction<sup>2</sup>.' And after pointing out the high position thus achieved by the Brāhmans, and the low position of the Kāṇḍālas and others of the inferior castes, he adds: 'Such a position could not long be endured; and this serves to explain not only the rise of Buddhism, but also its rapid diffusion, and the radical revolution which it brought about<sup>3</sup>.' To proceed, however, with our comparison of the Gītā and Āpastamba. The superiority distinctly claimed by the latter for the Brāhmaṇa is not quite clearly brought out in the Gītā. 'Holy Brāhmaṇas and devoted royal saints' are bracketed together at p. 86; while the Kshatriyas are declared to have been the channel of communication between the Deity and mankind as regards the great doctrine of devotion propounded by the Bhagavadgītā. That indicates a position for the Kshatriyas much more like what the Upanishads disclose<sup>4</sup>, than even that which

<sup>1</sup> As to the Kshatriyas the contrast with Manu's rules is even stronger than with Āpastamba's. See our Introduction to the Gītā in English verse, p. cxiii.

<sup>2</sup> P. 120.

<sup>3</sup> Pp. 129, 137.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 58 *infra*; and compare with this Weber's remarks on one of the classes into which he divides the whole body of Upanishads, History of Indian Literature, p. 165. See also Muir, Sanskrit Texts, vol. i, p. 508; Max Müller, Upanishads, vol. i, p. lxxv.

fortifying the results of the negative argument already set forth. To me Buddhism is perfectly intelligible as one outcome of that play of thought on high spiritual topics, which in its other, and as we may say, less thorough-going manifestations, we see in the Upanishads and the Gîtâ<sup>1</sup>. But assume that Buddhism was a protest against Brahmanism prior to its purification and elevation by the theosophy of the Upanishads, and those remarkable productions of ancient Indian thought become difficult to account for. Let us compare our small modern events with those grand old occurrences. Suppose our ancestors to have been attached to the ceremonial law of the Vedas, as we are now attached to a lifeless ritualism, the Upanishads and the Gîtâ might be, in a way, comparable to movements like that of the late Raja Rammohun Roy. Standing, as far as possible, on the antique ways, they attempt, as Raja Rammohun attempted in these latter days, to bring into prominence and to elaborate the higher and nobler aspects of the old beliefs. Buddhism would be comparable to the further departure from old traditions which was led by Babu Keshub Chander Sen. The points of dissent in the olden times were pretty nearly the same as the points of dissent now. The ultimate motive power also was in both cases identical—a sense of dissatisfaction in its integrity with what had come down from old times encrusted with the corruptions of years. In this view the old system, the philosophy of the Upanishads and the Gîtâ, and the philosophy of Buddha, constitute a regular intelligible progression. But suppose the turn events took was different, as is supposed by the alternative theory indicated above. Suppose Babu Keshub's movement was chronologically prior, and had begun to tell on orthodox society. Is it likely, that then one of the orthodox party

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Weber's History of Indian Literature, p. 285. In Mr. Davids' Buddhism, p. 94, we have a noteworthy extract from a standard Buddhistic work, touching the existence of the soul. Compare that with the corresponding doctrine in the Gîtâ. It will be found that the two are at one in rejecting the identity of the soul with the senses &c. The Gîtâ then goes on to admit a soul separate from these. Buddhism rejects that also, and sees nothing but the senses.



would take up the position which Rammohun Roy took? Would he still rely on old authorities, but with sundry qualifications, and yet earnestly assail the current forms of orthodoxy? I do not think so. I think the true view to be, as already stated, very different. The Upanishads, with the Gîtâ, and the precepts of Buddha appear to me to be the successive<sup>1</sup> embodiments of the spiritual thought of the age, as it became more and more dissatisfied with the system of mere ceremonial then dominant.

There are several other points of much interest in the Bhagavadgîtâ, such as the reference to the Sâṅkhya and Yoga; the place assigned to the Mârgasīrsha month; the allusion to the doctrines of materialism; the nearly entire coincidence between a stanza of the Gîtâ and one in the Manu Smṛiti. But in the present state of our knowledge, I do not think that we can extract any historical results from any of them. Without dwelling on them any further<sup>2</sup>, therefore, I will only state it as my opinion, that the Sâṅkhya and Yoga of the Gîtâ are not identical with the systems known to us under those names, and that the Manu Smṛiti has probably borrowed from the Gîtâ the stanza common to the two works.

We now proceed to a discussion of some of the external evidence touching the age of the Bhagavadgîtâ. It is, of course, unnecessary to consider any evidence of a date later than the eighth century A. C., that being the date generally received, though not on very strong grounds, as the date of Saṅkarâkârya, the celebrated commentator of the Gîtâ<sup>3</sup>. For the period prior to that limit, the first testimony to consider is that of Bâṇabhaṭṭa, the author of the Kâdambarî. The date of Bâṇa is now fairly well settled as the

<sup>1</sup> The word *Brahma-nirvâṇa*, which occurs so often at the close of chapter V and also at chapter II, 72, seems to me to indicate that *nirvâṇa* had not yet become technically pinned down, so to say, to the meaning which Buddhism subsequently gave to it, as the name of what it deemed the summum bonum. *Nirvâṇa* by itself occurs at VI, 15.

<sup>2</sup> See some further remarks on these points in my Introduction to the Gîtâ in verse.

<sup>3</sup> Professor Tiele (*History of Ancient Religions*, p. 140) says Saṅkara was born in 788 A. D.; on the authority, I presume, of the *Âryavidyâsudhâkara*, p. 226.

middle of the seventh century A. C. The doubt which the late Dr. Bhāu Dāji had cast upon its correctness<sup>1</sup>, by impugning the received date of king Harshavardhana, appears to me to have been satisfactorily disposed of by the paper of my friend Professor R. G. Bhāṇḍārkar on the Kālukya dates<sup>2</sup>. In the Kādambarī, then, we have testimony to the existence of the Bhagavadgītā in the middle of the seventh century A. C. For in that work, which, as is well known, abounds with equivoques, we have a passage which compares the royal palace to the Mahābhārata, both being 'Anantagītākarzanānārditanaram<sup>3</sup>,' which, as applied to the royal palace, means 'in which the people were delighted by hearing innumerable songs;' and as applied to the Mahābhārata means 'in which Arguna was delighted at hearing the Anantagītā.' Anantagītā is evidently only another name here for Bhagavadgītā. The conclusion deducible from this fact is not merely that the Gītā existed, but that it existed as a recognised portion of the Bhārata, in the seventh century A. C. Now the Kādambarī shows, in numerous passages, in what high esteem the Mahābhārata was held in its days. The queen Vilāsavati used to attend at those readings and expositions of the Mahābhārata, which have continued down to our own times; and it was even then regarded as a sacred work of extremely high authority, in the same way as it is now. It follows, therefore, that the Gītā must have been several centuries old in the time of Bāṇabhaṭṭa.

Prior in time to Dāna is the Indian Shakespeare, Kālidāsa, as he is referred to in Bāṇabhaṭṭa's Harshakarita<sup>4</sup>, and also in a copperplate inscription of the early part of the seventh century, as a poet who had then already acquired a high reputation<sup>5</sup>. Unfortunately, it is not yet possible to fix exactly the date at which Kālidāsa flourished. Still,

<sup>1</sup> Journal of the Bombay Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. viii, p. 250; and see, too, Indian Antiquary, vol. vi, p. 61 (Dr. Buhler).

<sup>2</sup> Journal of the Bombay Branch of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. xiv, p. 16 seq.

<sup>3</sup> P. 182 (Tārānātha's ed.)

<sup>4</sup> See F. E. Hall's Vāsavadattā, p. 14 note.

<sup>5</sup> See Indian Antiquary, vol. v, p. 70.

I think, we have pretty satisfactory evidence to show that the middle of the fifth century A. C. is the very latest date to which he can be referred. In a small tract (written by me in 1873), discussing Professor Weber's theory about the *Râmâyana*, I have pointed out <sup>1</sup> that the *Pañkatantra* quotes from Kâlidâsa a passage which there is good reason to believe formed part of the *Pañkatantra* when it was translated for king Nushirvan of Persia about the beginning of the sixth century A. C.<sup>2</sup> Allowing for the time required to raise Kâlidâsa to the position of being cited as an authority, and for the time required for the spread of the fame of an Indian work to Persia in those early days, I think, that the middle of the fifth century is a date to which Kâlidâsa cannot well have been subsequent. Now in the works of Kâlidâsa we have some very remarkable allusions to the *Bhagavadgîtâ*. It is not necessary to go through all these allusions. I will only mention the most remarkable, one from the *Raghuvaṃsa*, and one from the *Kumârasambhava*. In *Raghu*, canto X, stanza 67, the gods addressing Vishṇu say: 'There is nothing for you to acquire which has not been acquired. The one motive in your birth and work is the good of the worlds.' The first sentence here reminds one at once of *Gîtâ*, chapter III, stanza 22, the coincidence with which in sense as well as expression is very striking. The second sentence contains the words 'birth and work,' the precise words employed at *Gîtâ* IV, 9; and the idea of 'good of the worlds' is identical with the idea expressed in *Gîtâ* III, 20-24, the words only in which it is clothed being different. Couple this passage with the one from *Kumârasambhava*, canto VI, 67, where the seven *Rishis* say to the *Himâlaya* mountain, 'Well hast thou been called Vishṇu in a firmly-fixed form.' The allusion there to the *Gîtâ*, chapter X, stanza 25 (p. 89), is, I venture to think,

<sup>1</sup> 'Was the *Râmâyana* copied from Homer?' See pp. 36-59.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Colebrooke's *Essays*, vol. ii, p. 166 seq. It may be remarked that this argument is not affected by the attempt to distinguish the Kâlidâsa of the *Sakuntalâ* from the Kâlidâsa of the *Raghuvaṃsa*. Because the work cited in the *Pañkatantra* is the *Kumârasambhava*, which indisputably belongs to the same author as the *Raghuvaṃsa*.

unmistakable. The word 'firmly-fixed' is identical in both passages ; the idea is identical, and Mallinātha refers to the passage in the Gītā as the authority which Kālidāsa had in view. It follows, therefore, that the Gītā must be prior to Kālidāsa's time. It may be added, that Kālidāsa in his *Raghu* XV, 67, cites *Manu* as an authority for the proposition that a king must protect all castes and all orders of āsramas. *Manu*, therefore, must have lived considerably earlier than Kālidāsa, and the Gītā, as we have already argued, must be considerably earlier, not only than *Manu*, but also than his predecessor Āpastamba. The Gītā may, therefore, be safely said to belong to a period several centuries prior to the fifth century A.C.

The next piece of external evidence is furnished by the Vedānta-sūtras of Bādaiyāya. In several of those Sūtras, references are made to certain Smṛtis as authorities for the propositions laid down. Take, for instance, I, 2, 6, or I, 3, 23, and many others. Now three of these Sūtras are very useful for our present purpose. The first we have to consider is Sūtra II, 3, 45. The commentators Sankarācārya, Rāmānuga, Madhva, and Vallabha<sup>1</sup> are unanimous in understanding the passage in Gītā, chapter XV, stanza 7 (p. 112), to be the one there referred to by the words of the Sūtra, which are, 'And it is said in a Smṛti.' Now a glance at the context of the Sūtra will, I think, satisfy us that the commentators, who are unanimous though representing different and even conflicting schools of thought, are also quite right. Sūtra 43, in the elliptical language characteristic of that branch of our literature, says, 'A part, from the statement of difference, and the reverse also ; some lay down that it is a fisherman or a cheat.' Sūtra 44 runs thus, 'And also from the words of the Mantia.' And then comes Sūtra 45 as set out above. It is plain, that the Sūtra No. 45 indicates an authority for something not specified, being regarded as part of some other thing also not

---

<sup>1</sup> I am indebted to Professor M. M. Kuntze for a loan of Vallabhaācārya's commentary on the Sūtras noted in the text. I had not seen it 1875, when I last discussed this question.

specified. Now the discussion in previous Sûtras has been about the soul ; so we can have little difficulty in accepting the unanimous interpretation of the commentators, that the proposition here sought to be made out is that the individual soul is part of the Supreme Soul, which is the proposition laid down in the Gîtâ in the passage referred to. The next Sûtra to refer to is IV, 1, 10. I shall not set forth the other relevant Sûtras here as in the preceding case. I only state that the three commentators, Śaṅkara, Rāmānuga, and Madhva, agree that the Gîtâ is here referred to, namely, chapter VI, stanza 11 seq. Vallabha, however, I am bound to add, does not agree with this, as he interprets the Sûtra in question and those which precede and follow as referring to an entirely different matter. If I may be permitted to say so, however, I consider his interpretation not so satisfactory as that of the three other and older commentators. Lastly, we come to Sûtra IV, 2-19. On this, again, all the four commentators are unanimous, and they say that Gîtâ, chapter VIII, stanza 24 seq. (p. 80), is the authority referred to. And I think there can be very little doubt that they are right. These various pieces of evidence render it, I think, historically certain, that the Gîtâ must be considerably prior to the Vedānta-sûtras ; and that the word Brahma-sûtras, which occurs at Gîtâ, chapter XIII, stanza 4 (p. 102), is correctly interpreted by the commentators as not referring to the Vedānta-sûtras, which are also called Brahma-sûtras, but to a different subject altogether<sup>1</sup>. When were the Vedānta-sûtras composed ? The question must at once be admitted to be a difficult one ; but I think the following considerations will show that the date of those Sûtras must, at the latest, be considerably earlier than the period which we have already reached in this part of our investigation. We may take it as fairly well settled, that Bhaṭṭa Kumārila, the celebrated commentator of the Pūrva Mīmāṃsā school, flourished not later than the end of the seventh century

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Weber's *Indian Literature*, p. 242. See also Lassen's Preface to his edition of Schlegel's Gîtâ, XXXV. Rāmānuga takes the other view.

A. C.<sup>1</sup> A considerable time prior to him must be placed the great commentator on the *Mîmâmsâ-sûtras*, namely, Sabarasvâmin. If we may judge from the style of his great commentary, he cannot have flourished much later than Patañjali, who may now be taken as historically proved to have flourished about 140 B. C.<sup>2</sup> Now a considerable time must have intervened between Sabarasvâmin and another commentator on the *Pûrva Mîmâmsâ*, whom Sabara quotes with the highly honorific title Bhagavân, the Venerable, namely, Upavarsha. Upavarsha appears from Sañkara's statement to have commented on the *Vedânta-sûtras*<sup>3</sup>. We have thus a long catena of works from the seventh century A. C., indicating a pretty high antiquity for the *Vedânta-sûtras*, and therefore a higher one for the *Bhagavadgîtâ*. The antiquity of the *Vedânta-sûtras* follows also from the circumstance, which we have on the testimony of Râmânuga, repeated by Mâdhavâkârya, that a commentary on the *Sûtras* was written by Baudhâyanâkârya<sup>4</sup>, which commentary Râmânuga says he followed. Baudhâyanâ's date is not accurately settled. But he appears to be older than Âpastamba, whose date, as suggested by Dr. Buhler, has already been mentioned<sup>5</sup>. The *Vedânta-sûtras*, then, would appear to be at least as old as the fourth century B. C.; if the information we have from Râmânuga may be trusted. A third argument may be mentioned, bearing on the date of the *Vedânta-sûtras*. In *Sûtra* 110 of the third *Pâda* of the fourth *Adhyâya* of Pânini's *Sûtras*, a *Pârâsarya* is mentioned as the author of a *Bhikshu-sûtra*. Who is this *Pârâsarya*, and what the *Bhikshu-sûtra*? Unluckily Patañjali gives us no information on this head, nor

<sup>1</sup> See Bunnell's *Samavidhâna-brâhmana*, Introduction, p. vi note.

<sup>2</sup> The authorities are collected in our edition of *Bhârtaṛhari* (Bombay Series of Sanskrit Classics), Introd. p. xi note. See also Buhler's *Âpastamba* in this series, Introd. p. xxviii.

See Colebrooke's *Essays*, vol. i, p. 332. An Upavarsha is mentioned in the *Kathâsaritsâgara* as living in the time of king Nanda, and having Pânini, Kâtâyâna, and Vyâdi for his pupils.

<sup>4</sup> See the Râmânuga Bhâṣya; and the Râmânuga Darṣana in *Sarvadarsana-saṅgraha*.

<sup>5</sup> *Âpastamba*, p. xvi.

does the *Kâsikâ Vṛtti*. But a note of Professor Târânâtha Tarkavâkâspati, of Calcutta, says that Pârâsarya is Vyâsa, and the Bhikshu-sûtra is the Vedânta-sûtra <sup>1</sup>. If this is correct, the Vedânta-sûtras go very far indeed into antiquity. For Pânini can certainly not be assigned to a later date than the fourth century B. C., while that learned scholar, Professor Goldstücker, on grounds of considerable strength, assigned him to a much earlier date <sup>2</sup>. The question thus comes to this, Is the remark of Professor Târânâtha, above set out, correct? I find then, from enquiries made of my venerable and erudite friend Yagñesvar Sâstrin, the author of the *Âryavidyâsudhâkara*, that the note of Târânâtha is based on the works of Bhaṭṭogî Dîkshita, Nâgogî Bhaṭṭa, and Gñânendra Sarasvati, who all give the same interpretation of the Sûtra in question. It is certainly unfortunate that we have no older authority on this point than Bhaṭṭogî. The interpretation is in itself not improbable. Vyâsa is certainly by the current tradition <sup>3</sup> called the author of the Vedânta-sûtras, and also the son of Parâsara. Nor is Bhikshu-sûtra a name too far removed in sense from Vedânta-sûtra, though doubtless the former name is not now in use at all events as applied to the Sûtras attributed to Bâdarâyana, and though, it must also be stated, a Bhikshu-sûtra. Bhâshya Vârtika is mentioned *eo nomine* by Professor Weber as actually in existence at the present day <sup>4</sup>. Taking all things together, therefore, we may provisionally understand the Bhikshu-sûtra mentioned by Pânini to be identical with the Vedânta-sûtras. But even apart from that identification, the other testimonies we have adduced prove, I think, the high antiquity of those Sûtras, and consequently of the Bhagavadgîtâ.

We have thus examined, at least, considering the importance and difficulty of the subject, will not, I trust, be regarded as unreasonable length, some of the principal pieces of internal and external evidence touching the age

<sup>1</sup> See *Siddhânta Kaumudî*, vol. i, p. 592.

<sup>2</sup> See his *Pânini*; and see also Bühler's *Âpastamba* in this series, *Introd.* p. xxxii note.

<sup>3</sup> The correctness of this tradition is very doubtful.

<sup>4</sup> *Indische Studien* I, 470.

of the Bhagavadgītā and its position in Sanskrit literature. Although, as stated at the very outset, the conclusions we have deduced in the course of that examination are not all such as at once to secure acceptance, I venture to think that we have now adequate grounds for saying, that the various and independent lines of investigation, which we have pursued, converge to this point, that the Gītā, on numerous and essential topics, ranges itself as a member of the Upanishad group, so to say, in Sanskrit literature. Its philosophy, its mode of treating its subject, its style, its language, its versification, its opinions on sundry subjects of the highest importance, all point to that one conclusion. We may also, I think, lay it down as more than probable, that the latest date at which the Gītā can have been composed, must be earlier than the third century B. C., though it is altogether impossible to say at present how much earlier. This proposition, too, is supported by the cumulative strength of several independent lines of testimony.

Before closing this Introduction, it is desirable to add a word concerning the text of the Bhagavadgītā. The religious care with which that text has been preserved is very worthy of note. Schlegel and Lassen<sup>1</sup> have both declared it as their opinion, that we have the text now almost exactly in the condition in which it was when it left the hands of the author. There are very few real various readings, and some of the very few that exist are noted by the commentators. Considering that the Mahābhārata must have been tampered with on numerous occasions, this preservation of the Gītā is most interesting. It doubtless indicates that high veneration for it which is still felt, and has for long been felt, by the Hindus, and which is embodied in the expression used in the colophons of the MSS. describing the Gītā as the 'Upanishad sung by God<sup>2</sup>.' In view of the facts and deductions set forth in

<sup>1</sup> See the latter's edition of the Gītā, Preface, p. xxvii.

<sup>2</sup> In the edition of the Gītā published in Bombay in Saka 1782, there is a stanza which says that the Upanishads are the cows, Kṛṣṇa the milkman, Arjuna the calf, and the milk is the nectar-like Gītā, which indicates the tradi-



this essay, that expression existing as, I believe, it does, almost universally in Indian MSS. of the *Gîtâ*, is not altogether devoid of historical value.

Schlegel draws attention to one other circumstance regarding the text of the *Gîtâ*, which is also highly interesting, namely, that the number of the stanzas is exactly 700. Schlegel concludes that the author must have fixed on that number deliberately, in order to prevent, as far as he could, all subsequent interpolations<sup>1</sup>. This is certainly not unlikely, and if the aim of the author was such as Schlegel suggests, it has assuredly been thoroughly successful. In the chapter of the *Mahâbhârata* immediately succeeding the eighteenth chapter of the *Gîtâ*, the extent of the work in slokas is distinctly stated. The verses in which this is stated do not exist in the *Gaudâ* or *Bengal* recension, and are doubtless not genuine. But, nevertheless, they are interesting, and I shall reproduce them here. 'Kesava spoke 620 slokas. Arjuna fifty-seven, Sañgaya sixty-seven, and Dhritarâshtra one sloka; such is the extent of the *Gîtâ*. It is very difficult to account for these figures. According to them, the total number of verses in the *Gîtâ* would be 745, whereas the number in the current MSS., and even in the *Mahâbhârata* itself, is, as already stated, only 700<sup>2</sup>. I cannot suggest any explanation whatever of this discrepancy.

In conclusion, a few words may be added regarding the general principles followed in the translation contained in this volume. My aim has been to make that translation as close and literal a rendering as possible of the *Gîtâ*, as interpreted by the commentators Sankarâkârya, Śrīdhara-svâmin, and Madhusûdana Sarasvatî. Reference has also been frequently made to the commentary of Râmânugâkârya, and also to that of *Nîlakantha*, which latter forms part of the author's general commentary on the *Mahâbhârata*.

---

tional view of the *Gîtâ*—a view in consonance with that which we have been led to by the facts and arguments contained in this Introduction.

<sup>1</sup> P. xl (Lassen's ed.)

<sup>2</sup> Sankara's commentary states in so many words that the *Gîtâ* he used contained only 700 slokas.

In some places these commentators differ among themselves, and then I have made my own choice. The foot-notes are mainly intended to make clear that which necessarily remains obscure in a literal translation. Some of the notes, however, also point out the parallelisms existing between the Gîtâ and other works, principally the Upanishads and the Buddhistic Dhammapada and Sutta Nipâta. Of the latter I have not been able to procure the original Pâli; I have only used Sir M. C. Swamy's translation. But I may here note, that there are some verses, especially in the Salla Sutta (see pp. 124-127 of Sir M. C. Swamy's book), the similarity of which, in doctrine and expression, to some of the verses of the Gîtâ is particularly striking. The analogies between the Gîtâ and the Upanishads have been made the basis of certain conclusions in this Introduction. Those between the Gîtâ and these Buddhistic works are at present, to my mind, only interesting; I am unable yet to say whether they may legitimately be made the premises for any historical deductions.

There are two indexes: the first a general index of matters, the second containing the principal words in the Gîtâ which may prove useful or interesting for philological, historical, or other kindred purposes.

# BHAGAVADGÎTÂ.

## CHAPTER I.

*Dhrîtarâshtra* said :

What did my (people) and the *Pândavas* do, O *Saṅgaya* ! when they assembled together on the holy field of Kurukshetra, desirous to do battle ?

*Saṅgaya* said :

Seeing the army of the *Pândavas* drawn up in battle-array<sup>1</sup>, the prince *Duryodhana* approached his preceptor, and spoke (these) words : ‘ O preceptor ! observe this grand army of the sons of *Pându*, drawn up in battle-array by your talented pupil, the son of *Drupada*. In it are heroes (bearing) large bows, the equals of *Bhîma* and *Arguna* in battle — (namely), *Yuyudhâna*, *Virâta*, and *Drupada*, the master of a great car<sup>2</sup>, and *Dhrishṭaketu*, *Akîṭâna*, and the valiant king of *Kâśi*, *Purugit* and *Kuntibhoga*, and that eminent man *Saibya* ; the heroic *Yudhâmanyu*, the valiant *Uttamaugas*, the son of *Sîbhadrà*, and the sons of

<sup>1</sup> Several of these modes of array are described in *Manu* VII, 187, like a staff, like a wain, like a boar, &c. That of the *Pândavas*, here referred to, appears to have been like the thunderbolt, as to which see *Manu* VII, 191.

<sup>2</sup> This is a literal rendering ; the technical meaning is ‘ a warrior proficient in military science, who single-handed can fight a thousand archers.’

Draupadî—all masters of great cars. And now, O best of Brâhmanas! learn who are most distinguished among us, and are leaders of my army. I will name them to you, in order that you may know them well. Yourself, and Bhîshma, and Karna, and Kripa the victor of (many) battles; Asvatthâman, and Vikarna, and also the son of Somadatta, and many other brave men, who have given up their lives for me, who fight with various weapons, (and are) all dexterous in battle. Thus our army which is protected by Bhîshma is unlimited; while this army of theirs which is protected by Bhîma is very limited. And therefore do ye all, occupying respectively the positions<sup>1</sup> assigned to you, protect Bhîshma<sup>2</sup> only.'

Then his powerful grandsire, Bhîshma, the oldest of the Kauravas, roaring aloud like a lion, blew his conch, (thereby) affording delight to Duryodhana. And then all at once, conchs, and kettledrums, and tabors, and trumpets were played upon; and there was a tumultuous din. Then, too, Mâdhava and the son of Pându (Arguna), seated in a grand chariot to which white steeds were yoked, blew their heavenly conchs. Hrîshîkêsa<sup>3</sup> blew the Pându-kaganya<sup>4</sup>, and Dhanañjaya the Devadatta, and Bhîma, (the doer) of fearful deeds, blew the great conch Paundra. King Yudhishthîra, the son of Kuntî<sup>5</sup>, blew the Anan-

<sup>1</sup> The original word means, according to Sîrîdhara, 'the ways of entrance into a Vyûha or phalanx.'

<sup>2</sup> Who, as generalissimo, remained in the centre of the army.

<sup>3</sup> Literally, according to the commentators, 'lord of the senses of perception.'

<sup>4</sup> Schlegel renders the names of these conchs by Gigantea, Theodotes, Arundinea, Triumphatrix, Dulcisona, and Gemmiflora respectively.

<sup>5</sup> So called, par excellence, apparently.

tavigaya, and Nakula and Sahadeva (respectively) the Sughosha and Manipushpaka. And the king of Kâśī, too, who has an excellent bow, and Sikhanḍin, the master of a great car, and Dhrīṣṭadyumna, Virâta, and the unconquered Sâtyaki, and Drupada, and the sons of Draupadī, and the son of Subhadrâ, of mighty arms, blew conchs severally from all sides, O king of the earth! That tumultuous din rent the hearts of all (the people) of Dhrītarâshtra's (party), causing reverberations throughout heaven and earth. Then seeing (the people of) Dhrītarâshtra's party regularly marshalled, the son of Pându, whose standard is the ape, raised his bow<sup>1</sup>, after the discharge of missiles had commenced, and O king of the earth! spake these words to Hrishīkesa: 'O undegraded one! station my chariot between the two armies, while I observe those, who stand here desirous to engage in battle, and with whom, in the labours of this struggle, I must do battle. I will observe those who are assembled here and who are about to engage in battle, wishing to do service in battle<sup>2</sup> to the evil-minded son of Dhrītarâshtra.'

Saṅgaya said :

Thus addressed by Gudâkesa<sup>3</sup>, 'O descendant of Bharata<sup>4</sup>! Hrishīkesa stationed that excellent chariot between the two armies, in front of Bhishma

<sup>1</sup> I.e. to join in the fight.

<sup>2</sup> In the original, several derivatives from the root yudh, meaning 'to fight,' occur with the same frequency as 'battle' here.

<sup>3</sup> Generally interpreted 'lord of sleep,' i.e. not indolent. Nīlakantha also suggests, that it may mean 'of thick hair.'

<sup>4</sup> The son of Dushyanta and Sakuntalâ, after whom India is called 'Bhâratarashya,' and from whom both Pândavas and Kauravas were descended.

subverted. And O *Ganârdana*! we have heard that men whose family-rites are subverted, must necessarily live in hell. Alas! we are engaged in committing a heinous sin, seeing that we are making efforts for killing our own kinsmen out of greed of the pleasures of sovereignty. If the sons of *Dhṛitarâshṛa*, weapon in hand, were to kill me in battle, me being weaponless and not defending (myself), that would be better for me.

*Saṅgaya* said :

Having spoken thus, *Arguna* cast aside his bow together with the arrows, on the battle-field, and sat down in (his) chariot, with a mind agitated by grief.

## CHAPTER II.

*Saṅgaya* said :

To him, who was thus overcome with pity, and dejected, and whose eyes were full of tears and turbid, the destroyer of *Madhu* spoke these words.

The Deity said :

How (comes it that) this delusion, O *Arguna*! which is discarded by the good, which excludes from heaven, and occasions infamy, has overtaken you in this (place of) peril? Be not effeminate, O son of *Prithâ*! it is not worthy of you. Cast off this base weakness of heart, and arise, O terror of (your) foes!

*Arguna* said :

How, O destroyer of *Madhu*! shall I encounter with arrows in the battle *Bhishma* and *Drona*—both, O destroyer of enemies! entitled to reverence?

Without killing (my) preceptors—(men) of great glory—it is better to live even on alms in this world. But if killing them, though they are avaricious of worldly goods, I should only enjoy blood-tainted enjoyments. Nor do we know which of the two is better for us—whether that we should vanquish them, or that they should vanquish us. Even those, whom having killed, we do not wish to live—even those sons of Dhṛitarāshṛa stand (arrayed) against us. With a heart contaminated by the taint of helplessness<sup>1</sup>, with a mind confounded about my duty, I ask you. Tell me what is assuredly good for me. I am your-disciple; instruct me, who have thrown myself on your (indulgence). For I do not perceive what is to dispel that grief which will dry up my organs<sup>2</sup> after I shall have obtained a prosperous kingdom on earth without a foe, or even the sovereignty of the gods<sup>3</sup>.

Saṅgaya said :

Having spoken thus to Hrishikesa, O terror of (your) foes! Guḍākesa said to Govinda, 'I shall not engage in battle : ' and veril remained silent. To him thus desponding between the two armies, O descendant of Bharata! Hrishikesa spoke these words with a slight smile.

The Deity said :

.You have grieved for those who deserve no grief,

<sup>1</sup> The commentators say that 'heart' here signifies the dispositions which are stated in chapter XVIII *infra*, p 126. The feeling of 'helplessness' is incompatible with what is there stated as the proper disposition for a Kshatriya.

<sup>2</sup> I.e. by the heat of vexation, the meaning is, 'which will cause constant vexation of spirit.'

<sup>3</sup> I.e. if the means employed are the sinful acts referred to.

and you speak words of wisdom<sup>1</sup>. Learned men grieve not for the living nor the dead. Never did I not exist, nor you, nor these rulers of men ; nor will any one of us ever hereafter cease to be. As in this body, infancy and youth and old age (come) to the embodied (self)<sup>2</sup>, so does the acquisition of another body ; a sensible man is not deceived about that. The contacts of the senses<sup>3</sup>, O son of Kuntī ! which produce cold and heat, pleasure and pain, are not permanent, they are for ever coming and going. Bear them, O descendant of Bharata ! For, O chief of men ! that sensible man whom they<sup>4</sup> afflict not, (pain and pleasure being alike to him), he merits immortality. There is no existence for that which is unreal ; there is no non-existence for that which is real. And the (correct) conclusion about both<sup>5</sup> is perceived by those who perceive the truth. Know that to be indestructible which pervades all this ; the destruction of that inexhaustible (principle) none can bring about. These bodies appertaining to the embodied (self) which is eternal, indestructible, and indefinable, are declared<sup>6</sup> to be perishable ; therefore do engage in battle, O descendant of Bharata ! He who thinks one to be the killer and he who thinks

<sup>1</sup> Scil. regarding family-rites, &c., for, says Nilakanṭha, they indicate knowledge of soul as distinct from body.

<sup>2</sup> A common word in the Gītā, that which presides over each individual body.

<sup>3</sup> Scil. with external objects.

<sup>4</sup> I.e. the 'contacts.'

<sup>5</sup> The sense is this—there are two things apparently, the soul which is indestructible, and the feelings of pain &c. which 'come and go.' The true philosopher knows that the former only is real and exists ; and that the latter is unreal and non-existent. He therefore does not mind the latter.

<sup>6</sup> Scil. by those who are possessed of true knowledge.



one to be killed, both know nothing. He kills not, is not killed<sup>1</sup>. He is not born, nor does he ever die, nor, having existed, does he exist no more. Unborn, everlasting, unchangeable, and very ancient, he is not killed when the body is killed<sup>2</sup>. O son of *Prithâ*! how can that man who knows the self thus to be indestructible, everlasting, unborn, and imperishable, kill any one, or cause any one to be killed? As a man, casting off old clothes, puts on others and new ones, so the embodied (self), casting off old bodies, goes to others and new ones. Weapons do not divide the self (into pieces); fire does not burn it; waters do not moisten it; the wind does not dry it up. It is not divisible; it is not combustible; it is not to be moistened; it is not to be dried up. It is everlasting, all-pervading, stable, firm, and eternal<sup>3</sup>. It is said to be unperceived, to be unthinkable, to be unchangeable. Therefore knowing it to be such, you ought not to grieve. But even if you think that the self is constantly born, and constantly dies, still, O you of mighty arms! you ought not to grieve thus. For to one that is born, death is certain, and to one that dies, birth is certain<sup>4</sup>. Therefore about (this)

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *Kat̥ha-upanishad*, p. 104. <sup>2</sup> *Kat̥ha-upanishad*, pp. 103, 104.

<sup>3</sup> 'Eternal.' *Nilakanṭha* explains this by 'unlimited by time, place,' &c. *Saṅkara* and others as 'created,' 'without cause.' Stable = not assuming new forms; firm = not abandoning the original form. (*Srīdhara*.) The latter signifies a slight change; the former a total change.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. the following from the *Sutta Nipāta* (*Sir M. C. Swamy's* translation), pp. 124, 125. 'There is, indeed, no means by which those born could be prevented from dying.' 'Even thus the world is afflicted with death and decay; therefore wise men, knowing the course of things in the world, do not give way to grief.'

unavoidable thing, you ought not to grieve. The source of things, O descendant of Bharata! is unperceived; their middle state is perceived; and their end again is unperceived. What (occasion is there for any) lamentation regarding them<sup>1</sup>? One looks upon it<sup>2</sup> as a wonder; another similarly speaks of it as a wonder; another too hears of it as a wonder; and even 'after having heard of it, no one does really know it<sup>3</sup>. This embodied (self), O descendant of Bharata! within every one's body is ever indestructible. Therefore you ought not to grieve for any being. Having regard to your own duty also, you ought not to falter, for there is nothing better for a Kshatriya<sup>4</sup> than a righteous battle. Happy those Kshatriyas, O son of Prithâ! who can find such a battle (to fight)—come of itself<sup>5</sup>—an open door to heaven! But if you will not fight this righteous battle, then you will have abandoned your own duty and your fame, and you will incur sin. All beings, too, will tell of your everlasting infamy; and to one who has been honoured, infamy is (a) greater (evil) than death. (Warriors who are) masters of great cars will think that you abstained from the battle through fear, and having been highly thought of by them, you will fall down to littleness. Your enemies, too, decrying your power, will speak much about you that should not be spoken. And what, indeed, more lamentable than that? Killed,

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Sutta Nipâta, p. 125. 'In vain do you grieve, not knowing well the two ends of him whose manner either of coming or going you know not.'

<sup>2</sup> I. e. the self spoken of above.

<sup>3</sup> *Kaṭha*-upanishad, p. 96.

<sup>4</sup> One of the warrior caste.

<sup>5</sup> Without any effort, that is to say, of one's own.

you will obtain heaven ; victorious, you will enjoy the earth. Therefore arise, O son of Kuntī ! resolved to (engage in) battle. Looking on pleasure and pain, on gain and loss, on victory and defeat as the same, prepare for battle, and thus you will not incur sin. The knowledge here declared to you is that relating to the Sāṅkhya <sup>1</sup>. Now hear that relating to the Yōga. Possessed of this knowledge, O son of Prithā ! you will cast off the bonds of action. In this (path to final emancipation) nothing that is commenced becomes abortive ; no obstacles exist ; and even a little of this (form of) piety protects one from great danger <sup>2</sup>. There is here <sup>3</sup>, O descendant of Kuru ! but one state of mind consisting in firm understanding. But the states of mind of those who have no firm understanding are manifold and endless. The state of mind which consists in firm understanding regarding steady contemplation <sup>4</sup> does not belong to those, O son of Prithā ! who are strongly attached to (worldly) pleasures and power, and whose minds are drawn away by that flowery talk which is full of (the ordinances of) specific acts for the attainment of (those) pleasures and (that) power, and which promises birth as the fruit of acts <sup>5</sup>—(that flowery

---

<sup>1</sup> Sāṅkhya is explained in different modes by the different commentators, but the meaning here seems to be, that the doctrine stated is the doctrine of true knowledge and of emancipation by means of it. See *infra*, p. 52.

<sup>2</sup> Viz. this mortal mundane life.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. for those who enter on this 'path.'

<sup>4</sup> I. e. of the supreme Being ; Yōga meaning really the dedication of all acts to that Being.

<sup>5</sup> See Sutta Nipāta, p. 4.

talk) which those unwise ones utter, who are enamoured of Vedic words, who say there is nothing else, who are full of desires, and whose goal is heaven<sup>1</sup>. The Vedas (merely) relate to the effects of the three qualities<sup>2</sup>; do you, O Arguna! rise above those effects of the three qualities, and be free from the pairs of opposites<sup>3</sup>, always preserve courage<sup>4</sup>, be free from anxiety for new acquisitions or protection of old acquisitions, and be self-controlled<sup>5</sup>. To the instructed Brâhmaṇa, there is in all the Vedas as much utility as in a reservoir of water into which waters flow from all sides<sup>6</sup>. Your business is with action alone; not by any means with fruit. Let not the fruit of action be your motive (to action). Let not your attachment be (fixed) on inaction<sup>7</sup>. Having recourse to devotion, O Dhanañgaya! perform actions, casting off (all) attachment, and being equable in success or ill-success; (such) equability is called devotion. Action,

<sup>1</sup> This is a merely temporary good, and not therefore deserving to be aspired to before final emancipation.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. the whole course of worldly affairs. As to qualities, see chapter XIV.

<sup>3</sup> Heat and cold, pain and pleasure, and so forth. Cf. Manu I, 26.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Sutta Nipāta, p. 17 and other places.

<sup>5</sup> Keeping the mind from worldly objects.

<sup>6</sup> The meaning here is not easily apprehended. I suggest the following explanation:—Having said that the Vedas are concerned with actions for special benefits, *Kṛishṇa* compares them to a reservoir which provides water for various special purposes, drinking, bathing, &c. The Vedas similarly prescribe particular rites and ceremonies for going to heaven, or destroying an enemy, &c. But, says *Kṛishṇa*, man's duty is merely to perform the actions prescribed for him, and not entertain desires for the special benefits named. The stanza occurs in the Sanatsugâtīya, too.

<sup>7</sup> Doing nothing at all.

O Dhanañjaya ! is far inferior to the devotion of the mind. In that devotion seek shelter. Wretched are those whose motive (to action) is the fruit (of action). He who has obtained devotion in this world casts off both merit and sin<sup>1</sup>. Therefore apply yourself to devotion ; devotion in (all) actions is wisdom. The wise who have obtained devotion cast off the fruit<sup>2</sup> of action ; and released from the shackles of (repeated) births<sup>3</sup>, repair to that seat where there is no unhappiness<sup>4</sup>. When your mind shall have crossed beyond the taint of delusion then will you become indifferent to all that you have heard or will hear<sup>5</sup>. When your mind, that was confounded by what you have heard<sup>6</sup>, will stand firm and steady in contemplation<sup>7</sup>, then will you acquire devotion.

Arguna said :

What are the characteristics, O Kesava ! of one whose mind is steady, and who is intent on contemplation ? How should one of a steady mind speak, how sit, how move ?

The Deity said :

When a man, O son of Prithâ ! abandons all the desires of his heart, and is pleased in his self only

<sup>1</sup> Merit merely leads to heaven, as to which see note on last page. Cf. Sutta Nipâta, pp. 4, 136, 14, etc.

<sup>2</sup> Sutta Nipâta, pp 3-7, &c.

<sup>3</sup> Sutta Nipâta, p. 21

<sup>4</sup> This, according to Ânandagiri, means all writings other than those on the science of the soul.

<sup>5</sup> I.e. about the means for the acquisition of various desired things.

<sup>6</sup> I.e. of the soul (Sankara), of the supreme Being (Sridhara). Substantially they both mean the same thing.

and by his self<sup>1</sup>, he is then called of a steady mind. He whose heart is not agitated in the midst of calamities, who has no longing for pleasures, and from whom (the feelings of) affection, fear, and wrath<sup>2</sup> have departed, is called a sage of a steady mind. His mind is steady, who, being without attachments anywhere, feels no exultation and no aversion on encountering the various agreeable and disagreeable<sup>3</sup> (things of this world). A man's mind is steady, when he withdraws his senses from (all) objects of sense, as the tortoise (withdraws) its limbs from all sides. Objects of sense withdraw themselves from a person who is abstinent; not so the taste (for those objects). But even the taste departs from him, when he has seen the Supreme<sup>4</sup>. The boisterous senses, O son of Kuntî! carry away by force the mind even of a wise man, who exerts himself (for final emancipation). Restraining them all, a man should remain engaged in devotion, making me his only resort. For his mind is steady whose senses are under his control. The man who ponders over objects of sense forms an attachment to them; from (that) attachment is produced desire; and from desire anger is produced<sup>5</sup>; from anger results want of 'discrimination'<sup>6</sup>; from want of dis-

<sup>1</sup> I. e. pleased, without regard to external objects, by self-contemplation alone.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Sutta Nipâta, p. 3.

<sup>3</sup> The word *subhâsubha* in this sense also occurs in the Dhammapada, stanza 78, and in the Maitrî-upanishad, p. 34.

<sup>4</sup> See on this, Wilson's Essays on Sanskrit Literature, vol. iii, p. 130.

<sup>5</sup> I. e. when the desire is frustrated.

<sup>6</sup> I. e. between right and wrong. Confusion of memory = forgetfulness of *Sâstras* and rules prescribed in them.

crimination, confusion of the memory ; from confusion of the memory, loss of reason ; and in consequence of loss of reason he is utterly ruined. But the self-restrained man who moves among<sup>1</sup> objects with senses under the control of his own self, and free from affection and aversion, obtains tranquillity<sup>2</sup>. When there is tranquillity, all his miseries are destroyed, for the mind of him whose heart is tranquil soon becomes steady. He who is not self-restrained has no steadiness of mind ; nor has he who is not self-restrained perseverance<sup>3</sup> in the pursuit of self-knowledge ; there is no tranquillity for him who does not persevere in the pursuit of self-knowledge ; and whence can there be happiness for one who is not tranquil ? For the heart which follows the rambling senses leads away his judgment, as the wind leads a boat astray upon the waters. Therefore, O you of mighty arms ! his mind is steady whose senses are restrained on all sides from objects of sense. The self-restrained man is awake, when it is night for all beings ; and when all beings are awake, that is the night of the right-seeing sage<sup>4</sup>. He into whom all objects of desire enter, as waters enter the ocean, which, (though) replenished, (still) keeps its position unmoved,—he only obtains tranquillity ; not he who desires (those) objects of desire. The man who,

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Sutta Nipâta, p. 45.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Maitrî-upanishad, p. 134, where the commentator explains it to mean freedom from desires.

<sup>3</sup> For a somewhat similar use of the word bhâvâna in this sense, comp. Dhammapada, stanza 301.

<sup>4</sup> Spiritual matters are dark as night to the common run of men, while they are wide awake in all worldly pursuits. With the sage the case is exactly the reverse.

*From food are born (all) creatures ; from rain is the production of food ; rain is produced by sacrifices ; sacrifices are the result of action ; know that action has its source in the Vedas ; the Vedas come from the Indestructible. Therefore the all-comprehending Vedas are always concerned with sacrifices*<sup>1</sup>. He who in this world does not turn round the wheel revolving thus, is of sinful life, indulging his senses, and, O son of *Prithā* ! he lives in vain. But the man who is attached to his self only, who is contented in his self, and is pleased with his self<sup>2</sup>, has nothing to do. He has no interest at all in what is done, and none whatever in what is not done, in this world<sup>3</sup>; nor is any interest of his dependent on any being. Therefore<sup>4</sup> always perform action, which must be performed, without attachment. For a man, performing action without attachment, attains the Supreme. By action alone, did *Ganaka* and the rest work for perfection<sup>5</sup>. And having regard also to the keeping of people (to their duties) you should perform action. Whatever a great man does, that other men also do. And people follow whatever he receives as authority. There is nothing, O son of *Prithā* ! for me to do in (all) the three worlds,

---

<sup>1</sup> The commentators explain this to mean that though the Vedas elucidate all matters, their principal subject is the sacrifice.

<sup>2</sup> The distinctions here are rather nice,—an ordinary man is ‘attached’ to worldly objects, is ‘contented’ with goods &c., and is ‘pleased’ with special gains.

<sup>3</sup> No good or evil accrues to him from anything he does or omits to do.

<sup>4</sup> Śrīdhara says that Arjuna is here told to perform action, as freedom from it is only for the man of true knowledge, which Arjuna is not as yet.

<sup>5</sup> I.e. final emancipation ; cf. p. 59 infra, and *Īsopanishad*, p. 6.



nothing to acquire which has not been acquired. Still I do engage in action. For should I at any time not engage without sloth in action, men would follow in my path from all sides, O son of *Prithâ* ! If I did not perform actions, these worlds would be destroyed, I should be the cause of caste-interminglings ; and I should be ruining these people. As the ignorant act, O descendant of *Bharata* ! with attachment to action, so should a wise man act without attachment, wishing to keep the people (to their duties). A wise man should not shake the convictions of the ignorant who are attached to action, but acting with devotion (himself) should make them apply themselves to all action. He whose mind is deluded by egoism thinks himself the doer of the actions, which, in every way, are done by the qualities of nature<sup>1</sup>. But he, O you of mighty arms ! who knows the truth about the difference from qualities and the difference from actions<sup>2</sup>, forms no attachments, believing that qualities deal with qualities<sup>3</sup>. But those who are deluded by the qualities of nature form attachments to the actions of the qualities<sup>4</sup>. A man of perfect knowledge should not shake these men of imperfect knowledge (in their convictions). Dedicating all actions to me with a mind knowing the relation of the supreme and individual self, engage in battle without

<sup>1</sup> The active principle is nature, the aggregate of the three qualities ; the soul is only the looker-on ; cf. *inter alia*, p. 104 *infra*.

<sup>2</sup> Scil. the difference of the soul from the collection of qualities, viz. the body, senses, &c., and from the actions of which they are the author.

<sup>3</sup> Qualities (i. e. senses) deal with qualities, i. e. objects of sense.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. all mundane affairs.

mighty arms! destroy this unmanageable enemy in the shape of desire.

---

#### CHAPTER IV.

The Deity said :

This everlasting <sup>1</sup> (system of) devotion I declared to the sun, the sun declared it to Manu <sup>2</sup>, and Manu communicated it to Ikshvâku. Coming thus by steps, it became known to royal sages. But, O terror of (your) foes! that devotion was lost to the world by long (lapse) of time. That same primeval devotion I have declared to you to-day, seeing that you are my devotee and friend, for it is the highest mystery.

Arguna said :

Later is your birth ; the birth of the sun is prior. How then shall I understand that you declared (this) first ?

The Deity said :

I have passed through many births, O Arguna ! and you also. I know them all, but you, O terror of (your) foes! do not know them. Even though I am unborn and inexhaustible in (my) essence, even though I am lord of all beings, still I take up the control of my own nature <sup>3</sup>, and am born by

---

<sup>1</sup> Because its fruit is imperishable, viz. final emancipation.

<sup>2</sup> In the *Khândogya-upanishad*, Manu is the channel of communication for some doctrine taught by Pragâpati, which Manu teaches the 'people,' interpreted by Sâṅkara to mean Ikshvâku, &c. (p. 178 ; see too p. 625).

<sup>3</sup> Nature is what goes to the formation of the material form in which he is born ; the 'power' includes knowledge, omnipotence, &c. It is delusive because he is still really 'unborn.'

means of my delusive power. Whensoever, O descendant of Bharata ! piety languishes, and impiety is in the ascendant, I create myself. I am born age after age, for the protection of the good, for the destruction of evil-doers, and the establishment of piety. Whoever truly knows thus my divine birth and work, casts off (this) body and is not born again. He comes to me, O Arguna ! Many from whom affection, fear<sup>1</sup>, and wrath have departed, who are full of me, who depend on me, and who are purified by the penance of knowledge<sup>2</sup>, have come into my essence. I serve men in the way in which they approach me<sup>3</sup>. In every way, O son of Prithâ ! men follow in my path<sup>4</sup>. Desiring the success of actions<sup>5</sup>, men in this world worship the divinities, for in this world of mortals, the success produced by action is soon obtained. The fourfold division of castes was created by me according to the apportionment of qualities and duties. But though I am its author, know me to be inexhaustible, and not the author. Actions defile me not. I have no attachment to the fruit of actions. He who knows me thus is not tied down by actions. Knowing this, the men of old who wished for final emancipation, performed action. Therefore do you, too, perform action as was done by men of old in olden times. Even sages are confused as to what is

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Sutta Nipâta, p. 73.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *infra*, p. 61.

<sup>3</sup> I.e. I give to each worshipper what is proper for him.

<sup>4</sup> The original words used here occur before in a different sense (see p. 55). Here the meaning is that to whomsoever directly addressed, all worship is worship of me (see p. 84). In the whole passage, *Kṛishna* says that the Deity is not chargeable with partiality on account of the variety of human qualities and states.

<sup>5</sup> Such as acquisition of sons, cattle, &c.

action, what inaction. Therefore I will speak to you about action, and learning that, you will be freed from (this world of) evil. One must possess knowledge about action ; one must also possess knowledge about prohibited action ; and again one must possess knowledge about inaction. The truth regarding action is abstruse. He is wise among men, he is possessed of devotion, and performs all actions<sup>1</sup>, who sees inaction in action, and action in inaction. The wise call him learned, whose acts are all free from desires and fancies, and whose actions are burnt down by the fire of knowledge. Forsaking all attachment to the fruit of action, always contented, dependent on none, he does nothing at all, though he engages in action. Devoid of expectations, restraining the mind and the self, and casting off all belongings<sup>2</sup>, he incurs no sin, performing actions merely for the sake of the body<sup>3</sup>. Satisfied with earnings coming spontaneously<sup>4</sup>, rising above the pairs of opposites, free from all animosity, and equable on success or ill-success, he is not fettered down, even though he performs (actions). The acts of one who is devoid of attachment, who is free<sup>5</sup>, whose mind is fixed on knowledge, and who performs action for (the purpose of) the sacrifice<sup>6</sup> are all

---

<sup>1</sup> Devoted though performing all actions.

<sup>2</sup> 'Appropriating nothing,' at Sutta Nipâta, p. 101, seems to be the same idea. 'Self' just before this means senses.

<sup>3</sup> Preferably, perhaps, 'with the body only.' But Sankara rejects this.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. *infra*, p. 101 ; and Sutta Nipâta, p. 12.

<sup>5</sup> The commentators vary in their interpretations of this word (*mukta*), but the common point appears to be 'free from attachment to worldly concerns.' Cf. Sutta Nipâta, p. 8.

<sup>6</sup> Sacrifice here apparently means every act for the attainment of

destroyed. Brahman is the oblation ; with Brahman (as a sacrificial instrument) it is offered up ; Brahman is in the fire ; and by Brahman it is thrown ; and Brahman, too, is the goal to which he proceeds who meditates on Brahman in the action <sup>1</sup>. Some devotees perform the sacrifice to the gods, some offer up the sacrifice by the sacrifice itself in the fire of Brahman <sup>2</sup>. Others offer up the senses, such as the sense of hearing and others, in the fires of restraint <sup>3</sup> ; others offer up the objects of sense, such as sound and so forth, into the fires of the senses <sup>4</sup>. Some again offer up all the operations of the senses and the operations of the life-breaths into the fire of devotion by self-restraint <sup>5</sup>, kindled by knowledge. Others perform the sacrifice of wealth, the sacrifice of penance, the sacrifice of concentration of mind, the sacrifice of Vedic study <sup>6</sup>, and of knowledge, and others are ascetics of rigid vows. Some offer up the upward life-breath into the downward life-breath, and the downward life-breath into the upper life-breath, and stopping up the motions of the upward and downward life-breaths, devote themselves to the restraint of the life-breaths . Others, who (take)

---

the supreme ; cf. supra, p. 53. In *Âsvalâyana Grîhya-sûtra* I, 1, 5, a text is cited meaning 'salutation verily is a sacrifice.'

<sup>1</sup> This thorough identification with the Brahman explains why the action is 'destroyed' and does not 'fetter' the doer.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. all acts, religious and other, offered up to the Brahman in the mode above stated.

<sup>3</sup> Practise 'yoga' and other like exercises.

<sup>4</sup> Remaining unattached to sensuous enjoyments.

<sup>5</sup> Stopping the bodily operations mentioned, and engaging in contemplation.

<sup>6</sup> This is called *Brahmayagña*, *Âsvalâyana Grîhya-sûtra* III, 1, 3.

<sup>7</sup> *Maitrî-upanishad*, p. 129.

limited food, offer up the life-breaths into the life-breaths. All of these, conversant with the sacrifice, have their sins destroyed by the sacrifice. Those who eat the nectar-like leavings of the sacrifice repair to the eternal Brahman<sup>1</sup>. This world is not for those who perform no sacrifice, whence (then) the other, O best of the Kâuravas! Thus sacrifices of various sorts are laid down in the Vedas. Know them all to be produced from action<sup>2</sup>, and knowing this you will be released (from the fetters of this world). The sacrifice of knowledge, O terror of (your) foes! is superior to the sacrifice of wealth, for action, O son of Prithâ! is wholly and entirely comprehended in knowledge. That<sup>3</sup> you should learn by salutation, question, and service<sup>4</sup>. The men of knowledge who perceive the truth will teach knowledge to you. Having learnt that, O son of Pându! you will not again fall thus into delusion; and by means of it, you will see all beings, without exception, first in yourself, and then in me<sup>5</sup>. Even if you are the most sinful of all sinful men, you will cross over all trespasses by means of the boat of knowledge alone. As a fire well kindled, O Arguna! reduces fuel to ashes, so the fire of knowledge reduces all actions to ashes<sup>6</sup>. For there is in this world no means of sanctification like knowledge<sup>7</sup>, and that one perfected by devotion finds

<sup>1</sup> Supra, p. 53.

<sup>2</sup> Operations of mind, senses, &c.; cf. supra, p. 54.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. knowledge.

<sup>4</sup> Addressed to men of knowledge. Cf. *Mundâkôpanishad*, p. 282.

<sup>5</sup> The essential unity of the supreme and individual soul and the whole universe. Cf. *Îsôpanishad*, pp. 13, 14.

<sup>6</sup> Supra, p. 60.

<sup>7</sup> *Sutta Nipâta*, p. 48.

within one's self in time. He who has faith, whose senses are restrained, and who is assiduous, obtains knowledge<sup>1</sup>. Obtaining knowledge, he acquires, without delay, the highest tranquillity. He who is ignorant and devoid of faith, and whose self is full of misgivings, is ruined. Not this world, not the next, nor happiness, is for him whose self is full of misgivings. Actions, O Dhanañgaya! do not fetter one who is self-possessed<sup>2</sup>, who has renounced action by devotion, and who has destroyed misgivings by knowledge. Therefore, O descendant of Bharata! destroy, with the sword of knowledge, these misgivings of yours which fill your mind, and which are produced from ignorance. Engage in devotion. Arise!

## CHAPTER V.

Arguna said :

O *Krishna*! you praise renunciation of actions and also the pursuit (of them). Tell me determinately which one of these two is superior.

The Deity said :

Renunciation and pursuit of action are both instruments of happiness. But of the two, pursuit of action is superior to renunciation of action. He should be understood to be always an ascetic<sup>3</sup>, who has no aversion and no desire. For, O you of mighty arms! he who is free from the pairs of opposites is easily released from (all) bonds. Children—not wise men—talk of *sāṅkhya* and *yoga* as dis-

<sup>1</sup> Sutta Nipāta, p. 49.

<sup>2</sup> Cautious, free from heedlessness.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. one who has performed 'renunciation.'

tinct. One who pursues either well obtains the fruit of both. The seat which the sâṅkhyas obtain is reached by the yogas<sup>1</sup> also. He sees (truly), who sees the sâṅkhyas and yoga as one. Renunciation, O you of mighty arms! is difficult to reach without devotion; the sage possessed of devotion attains Brahman<sup>2</sup> without delay. He who is possessed of devotion, whose self is pure, who has restrained his self<sup>3</sup>, and who has controlled his senses, and who identifies his self with every being, is not tainted though he performs (actions). The man of devotion, who knows the truth, thinks he does nothing at all, when he sees<sup>4</sup>, hears, touches, smells, eats, moves, sleeps, breathes, talks, throws out<sup>5</sup>, takes, opens or closes the eyelids; he holds that the senses deal with the objects of the senses. He who, casting off (all) attachment, performs actions dedicating them to Brahman, is not tainted by sin, as the lotus-leaf<sup>6</sup> (is not tainted) by water. Devotees, casting off attachment, perform actions for attaining purity of self, with the body, the mind, the understanding, or even the senses<sup>7</sup>—(all) free (from

<sup>1</sup> Those who follow the yoga 'path.' The form is noteworthy, grammatically.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. 'attains true renunciation,' says Saṅkara; Śiṣṭhara says, 'attains Brahman, after becoming a "renouncer."'

<sup>3</sup> Here self is explained as body; in the line which goes before it is explained as heart.

<sup>4</sup> These are the various operations of the organs of perception, action, &c.

<sup>5</sup> Excretions, &c.

<sup>6</sup> A very common simile. Cf. inter alia *Khândogya-upanishad*, p. 276; *Sutta Nipâta*, pp. 107-134; and *Dauids' Buddhism*, p. 158 note.

<sup>7</sup> Body=bathing, &c.; mind=meditation, &c.; understanding=ascertainment of truth; senses=hearing and celebrating God's name.



egoistic notions). He who is possessed of devotion, abandoning the fruit of actions, attains the highest tranquillity. He who is without devotion, and attached to the fruit (of action), is tied down by (reason of his) acting in consequence of (some) desire. The self-restrained, embodied (self) lies at ease within the city of nine portals<sup>1</sup>, renouncing all actions by the mind, not doing nor causing (anything) to be done. The Lord is not the cause of actions, or of the capacity of performing actions amongst men, or of the connexion of action and fruit. But nature only works. The Lord receives no one's sin, nor merit either. Knowledge is enveloped by ignorance, hence all creatures are deluded<sup>2</sup>. But to those who have destroyed that ignorance by knowledge of the self, (such) knowledge, like the sun, shows forth that supreme (principle). And those whose mind is (centred) on it, whose (very) self it is, who are thoroughly devoted to it, and whose final goal it is, go never to return, having their sins destroyed by knowledge. The wise look upon a Brâhmana possessed of learning and humility, on a cow, an elephant, a dog, and a Svapâka, as alike<sup>3</sup>. Even here, those have conquered the material world, whose mind rests in equability<sup>4</sup>; since Brahman is free from defects and equable, therefore they rest in

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Prasnopanishad, p. 202; Svetâsvatara, p. 332; Sutta Nipâta, p. 52. The Kathopanishad has eleven portals (p. 132). The nine are the eyes, nostrils, ears, mouth, and the two for excretions.

<sup>2</sup> As regards the Lord's relation to man's merit or sin.

<sup>3</sup> As manifestations of Brahman, though of different qualities and classes. As to Svapâka, a very low caste, see Sutta Nipâta, p. 36.

<sup>4</sup> As stated in the preceding words.

*Brahman.* He who knows Brahman, whose mind is steady, who is not deluded, and who rests in Brahman, does not exult on finding anything agreeable, nor does he grieve on finding anything disagreeable<sup>1</sup>. One whose self is not attached to external objects, obtains the happiness that is in (one's) self; and by means of concentration of mind, joining one's self (with the Brahman), one obtains indestructible happiness. For the enjoyments born of contact (between senses and their objects) are, indeed, sources of misery; they have a beginning as well as an end<sup>2</sup>. O son of Kuntî! a wise man feels no pleasure in them. He who even in this world, before his release from the body, is able to bear the agitations produced from desire and wrath, is a devoted man, he is a happy man. The devotee whose happiness is within (himself), whose recreation is within (himself), and whose light (of knowledge) also is within (himself), becoming (one with) the Brahman<sup>3</sup>, obtains the Brahmic bliss<sup>4</sup>. The sages whose sins have perished, whose misgivings are destroyed, who are self-restrained, and who are intent on the welfare of all beings<sup>5</sup>, obtain the Brahmic bliss. To the ascetics, who are free from desire and wrath<sup>6</sup>, and whose minds are restrained, and who have knowledge of the self, the Brahmic bliss is on both sides (of death). The sage who excludes (from his mind)

<sup>1</sup> Kaṭhopanishad, p. 100.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. supra, p. 44.

<sup>3</sup> He is one with the Brahman as he is intent exclusively on the Brahman.

<sup>4</sup> The bliss of assimilation with the Brahman, or, as Râmânuga puts it, the bliss of direct knowledge of the self.

<sup>5</sup> Sutta Nipâta, p. 39; also Davids' Buddhism, p. 109.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Sutta Nipâta, p. 3.

external objects, (concentrates) the visual power between the brows<sup>1</sup>, and making the upward and downward life-breaths even, confines their movements within the nose, who restrains senses, mind, and understanding<sup>2</sup>, whose highest goal is final emancipation, from whom desire, fear, and wrath have departed, is, indeed, for ever released (from birth and death). • He knowing me to be the enjoyer of all sacrifices and penances, the great Lord of all worlds, and the friend of all beings, attains tranquillity.

## CHAPTER VI.

The Deity said :

He who, regardless of the fruit of actions, performs the actions which ought to be performed, is the devotee and renouncer ; not he who discards the (sacred) fires<sup>3</sup>, nor he who performs no acts. Know, O son of Pându ! that what is called renunciation is devotion ; for nobo'tv becomes a devotee who has not renounced (all) fancies<sup>4</sup>. To the sage who wishes to rise to devotion, action is said to be a means, and to him, when he has risen to devotion, tranquillity<sup>5</sup> is said to be a means. When one does not attach oneself to objects of sense, nor to action, renouncing all fancies, then one is said to have risen to devotion. (A man) should elevate his self by his self<sup>6</sup> ; he should not debase his self, for even (a man's) own self is his

<sup>1</sup> Cf infra, p. 78.

<sup>2</sup> P. 57 and Kathopanishad, p. 157.

<sup>3</sup> Which are required for ordinary religious rites.

<sup>4</sup> Which are the cause of desires ; see supra, p. 50.

<sup>5</sup> Abandonment of distracting actions ; means scil. to perfect knowledge, says Sîdharma.

<sup>6</sup> I. e. by means of a mind possessed of true discrimination.

friend, (a man's) own self is also his enemy<sup>1</sup>. To him who has subjugated his self by his self<sup>2</sup>, his self is a friend; but to him who has not restrained his self, his own self behaves inimically, like an enemy. The self of one who has subjugated his self and is tranquil, is absolutely concentrated (on itself), in the midst of cold and heat, pleasure and pain, as well as honour and dishonour. The devotee whose self is contented with knowledge and experience<sup>3</sup>, who is unmoved<sup>4</sup>, who has restrained his senses, and to whom a sod, a stone, and gold are alike, is said to be devoted. And he is esteemed highest, who thinks alike<sup>5</sup> about well-wishers, friends, and enemies, and those who are indifferent, and those who take part with both sides, and those who are objects of hatred, and relatives, as well as about the good and the sinful. A devotee should constantly devote his self to abstraction, remaining in a secret place<sup>6</sup>, alone, with his mind and self<sup>7</sup> restrained, without expectations, and without belongings. Fixing his seat firmly in a clean<sup>8</sup> place, not too high nor too low, and covered over with a sheet of cloth, a deer-skin, and (blades of) Kusa (grass),—and there seated on (that) seat, fixing his mind exclusively on one

<sup>1</sup> Self is here explained as mind, the unsteadiness of which prevents the acquisition of devotion, p. 71.

<sup>2</sup> This means restraining senses by mind. See Maitrî-upanishad, p. 180.

<sup>3</sup> Supra, p. 57. <sup>4</sup> By any of the vexations of the world.

<sup>5</sup> I.e. is free from affection or aversion towards them.

<sup>6</sup> 'Release from society' is insisted on at Sutta Nipâta, p. 55.

<sup>7</sup> Self is here explained as senses; in the previous clause as mind.

<sup>8</sup> This requisite is prescribed by many authorities. Cf. *Khândogya-upanishad*, p. 626; *Maitrî*, p. 156; *Svetâsvatara*, pp. 318, 319; and *Âsvalâyana (Grîhya-sûtra)* III, 2, 2, for Vedic study too.

point, with the workings of the minds and senses restrained, he should practise devotion for purity of self. Holding his body, head, and neck even and unmoved, (remaining) steady, looking at the tip of his own nose<sup>1</sup>, and not looking about in (all) directions, with a tranquil self, devoid of fear, and adhering to the rules of Brahmaçârins<sup>2</sup>, he should restrain his mind, and (concentrate it) on me, and sit down engaged in devotion, regarding me as his final goal. Thus constantly devoting his self to abstraction, a devotee whose mind is restrained, attains that tranquillity which culminates in final emancipation, and assimilation with me. • Devotion is not his, O Arguna ! who eats too much, nor his who eats not at all ; not his who is addicted to too much sleep, nor his who is (ever) awake. That devotion which destroys (all) misery is his, who takes due food and exercise<sup>3</sup>, who toils duly in all works, and who sleeps and awakes (in) due (time)<sup>4</sup>. When (a man's) mind well restrained becomes steady upon the self alone, when he being indifferent to all objects of desire, is said to be devoted. As a light standing in a windless (place) flickers not, that is declared to be the parallel for a devotee, whose mind is restrained, and who devotes his self to abstraction. That (mental condition), in which the mind restrained by practice of abstraction, ceases to work ; in which

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Kumârasambhava, Canto III, 47. This is done in order to prevent the sight from rambling—a total closing of the eyes being objectionable as leading to sleep.

<sup>2</sup> See these in Âpastamba (p. 7 in this series); and cf. Sutta Nipâta, pp. 159, 160 ; and Max Müller's Hibbert Lectures, p. 158.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Sutta Nipâta, pp. 28, 95.

<sup>4</sup> Buddhism shows similar injunctions. Cf. Sutta Nipâta, pp. 21, 28, 95 ; and Dhammapada, stanza 8.

too, one seeing the self by the self<sup>1</sup>, is pleased in the self; in which one experiences that infinite happiness which transcends the senses, and which can be grasped by the understanding only; and adhering to which, one never swerves from the truth; acquiring which, one thinks no other acquisition higher than it; and adhering to which, one is not shaken off even by great misery; that should be understood to be called devotion in which there is a severance of all connexion with pain. That devotion should be practised with steadiness and with an undesponding heart. Abandoning, without exception, all desires<sup>2</sup>, which are produced from fancies, and restraining the whole group of the senses on all sides by the mind only<sup>3</sup>, one should by slow steps become quiescent<sup>4</sup>, with a firm resolve coupled with courage<sup>5</sup>; and fixing the mind upon the self, should think of nothing. Wherever the active and unsteady mind breaks forth<sup>6</sup>, there one should ever restrain it, and fix it steadily on the self alone. The highest happiness comes to such a devotee, whose mind is fully tranquil, in whom the quality of passion has been suppressed, who is free from sin, and who is become (one with) the Brahman. Thus constantly devoting his self to abstraction, a devotee, freed from sin, easily obtains that supreme happiness—contact with the Brahman<sup>7</sup>. He who has devoted his self to abstraction, by devotion, looking alike on everything,

<sup>1</sup> Sees the highest principle by a mind purified by abstraction.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Sutta Nipâta, p. 62.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. supra, p. 53.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. cease to think of objects of sense. Cf. supra, p. 69.

<sup>5</sup> I. e. an undespairing and firm resolution that devotion will be achieved ultimately.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Sutta Nipâta, p. 106.

<sup>7</sup> Assimilation with the Brahman.

sees the self abiding in all beings, and all beings in the self<sup>1</sup>. To him who sees me in everything, and everything in me, I am never lost, and he is not lost to me<sup>2</sup>. The devotee who worships me abiding in all beings, holding that all is one<sup>3</sup>, lives in me, however he may be living<sup>4</sup>. That devotee, O Arguna! is deemed to be the best, who looks alike on pleasure or pain, whatever it may be, in all (creatures), comparing all with his own (pleasure or pain)<sup>5</sup>.

Arguna said :

I cannot see, O destroyer of Madhu! (how) the sustained existence (is to be secured) of this devotion by means of equanimity which you have declared—in consequence of fickleness. For, O *Kṛishṇa*! the mind is fickle, boisterous<sup>6</sup>, strong, and obstinate; and I think that to restrain it is as difficult as (to restrain) the wind.

The Deity said :

Doubtless, O you of mighty arms! the mind is difficult to restrain, and fickle<sup>7</sup>. Still, O son of Kuntī! it may be restrained by constant practice and by indifference (to worldly objects). It is my belief, that devotion is hard to obtain for one who does not restrain his self. But by one who is self-restrained

<sup>1</sup> Realises the essential unity of everything.

<sup>2</sup> He has access to me, and I am kind to him.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *Īsopanishad*, p. 13.

<sup>4</sup> 'Even abandoning all action,' says *Srīdhara*; and cf. *infra*, p. 105.

<sup>5</sup> Who believes that pleasure and pain are as much liked or disliked by others as by himself, and puts himself in fact in the place of others.

<sup>6</sup> Troublesome to the body, senses, &c.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. *Dhammapada*, stanza 33 seq.

and egoism <sup>1</sup>, thus is my nature divided eightfold. But this is a lower (form of my) nature. Know (that there is) another (form of my) nature, and higher than this, which is animate, O you of mighty arms! and by which this universe is upheld. Know that all things have these (for their) source <sup>2</sup>. I am the producer and the destroyer of the whole universe. There is nothing else, O Dhanañjaya! higher than myself; all this is woven upon me, like numbers of pearls upon a thread <sup>3</sup>. I am the taste in water, O son of Kuntî! I am the light of the sun and moon. I am 'Om' <sup>4</sup> in all the Vedas, sound <sup>5</sup> in space, and manliness in human beings; I am the fragrant smell in the earth, refulgence in the fire; I am life in all beings, and penance <sup>6</sup> in those who perform penance. Know me, O son of Prithâ! to be the eternal seed of all beings; I am the discernment of the discerning ones, and I the glory of the glorious <sup>7</sup>. I am also the strength, unaccompanied by fondness or desire <sup>8</sup>, of the strong. And, O chief of the descendants of Bharata! I am love unopposed to piety <sup>9</sup> among all

<sup>1</sup> This accords with the Sâṅkhya philosophy. See chapter I, sūtra 61 of the current aphorisms.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. infra, p. 105.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *Mundakopaniṣad*, p. 298.

<sup>4</sup> *Infra*, p. 79. Cf. Goldstücker's *Remains*, I, 14, 122; *Yoga-sūtras* I, 27.

<sup>5</sup> I.e. the occult essence which underlies all these and the other qualities of the various things mentioned.

<sup>6</sup> I.e. power to bear the pairs of opposites.

<sup>7</sup> Glory here seems to mean dignity, greatness.

<sup>8</sup> Desire is the wish to obtain new things; fondness is the anxiety to retain what has been obtained. The strength here spoken of, therefore, is that which is applied to the performance of one's own duties only.

<sup>9</sup> I.e. indulged within the bounds allowed by the rules of the *Sâstras*, namely, for the procreation of sons &c. only.



beings. And all entities which are of the quality of goodness, and those which are of the quality of passion and of darkness, know that they are, indeed, all from me; I am not in them, but they are in me<sup>1</sup>. The whole universe deluded by these three states of mind, developed from the qualities, does not know me, who am beyond them and inexhaustible; for this delusion of mine, developed from the qualities, is divine and difficult to transcend. Those who resort to me alone cross beyond this delusion. Wicked men, doers of evil (acts), who are deluded, who are deprived of their knowledge by (this) delusion, and who incline to the demoniac state of mind<sup>2</sup>, do not resort to me. But O Arguna! doers of good (acts) of four classes worship me: one who is distressed, one who is seeking after knowledge, one who wants wealth, and one, O chief of the descendants of Bharata! who is possessed of knowledge. Of these, he who is possessed of knowledge, who is always devoted, and whose worship is (addressed) to one (Being) only, is esteemed highest. For to the man of knowledge I am dear above all things, and he is dear to me. All these are noble. But the man possessed of knowledge is deemed by me to be my own self. For he with (his) self devoted to abstraction, has taken to me as the goal than which there is nothing higher. At the end of many lives, the man possessed of knowledge approaches me, (believing) that Vâsudeva is everything. Such a high-souled man is very hard to find. Those who are deprived of knowledge by various desires approach other

---

<sup>1</sup> They do not dominate over me, I rule them.

<sup>2</sup> *Infra*, p. 115.

divinities, observing various regulations<sup>1</sup>, and controlled by their own natures<sup>2</sup>. Whichever form (of deity) any worshipper wishes to worship with faith, to that form I render his faith steady. Possessed of that faith, he seeks to propitiate (the deity in) that (form), and obtains from it those beneficial things which he desires, (though they are) really given by me. But the fruit thus (obtained) by them, who have little judgment, is perishable. Those who worship the divinities go to the divinities<sup>3</sup>, and my worshippers, too, go to me. The undiscerning ones, not knowing my transcendent and inexhaustible essence, than which there is nothing higher, think me, who am unperceived, to have become perceptible<sup>4</sup>. Surrounded by the delusion of my mystic power<sup>5</sup>, I am not manifest to all. This deluded world knows not me unborn and inexhaustible. I know, O Arguna ! the things which have been, those which are, and those which are to be. But me nobody knows. All beings, O terror of (your) foes ! are deluded at the time of birth, by the delusion, O descendant of Bharata ! caused by the pairs of opposites arising from desire and aversion. But the men of meritorious actions, whose sins have terminated, worship me, being released from the delusion (caused) by the pairs of

<sup>1</sup> Fasts and so forth.

<sup>2</sup> Which are the result of the actions done in previous lives.

<sup>3</sup> And the divinities are not eternal, so the fruit obtained is ephemeral.

<sup>4</sup> The ignorant do not know the real divinity of Vishnu, thinking him to be no higher than as he is seen in the human form. This gives them an inadequate notion of the purity and eternity of the happiness to be obtained by worshipping him ; cf. *infra*, p. 83.

<sup>5</sup> The veil surrounding me is created by my mysterious power, and that everybody cannot pierce through ; cf. *Kaṭha*, p. 117.

opposites, and being firm in their beliefs<sup>1</sup>. Those who, resting on me, work for release from old age and death<sup>2</sup>, know the Brahman<sup>3</sup>, the whole Adhyâtma, and all action. And those who know me with the Adhibhûta, the Adhidaiva, and the Adhiyagñā, having minds devoted to abstraction, know me at the time of departure (from this world).

### CHAPTER VIII.

Arguna said :

What is that Brahman, what the Adhyâtma, and what, O best of beings ! is action ? And what is called the Adhibhûta ? And who is the Adhiyagñā, and how in this body, O destroyer of Madhu ? And how, too, are you to be known at the time of departure (from this world) by those who restrain their selves ?

The Deity said :

The Brahman is the supreme, the indestructible. Its manifestation (as an individual self) is called the Adhyâtma. The offering (of an oblation to any divinity), which is the cause of the production and development of all things, is named action. The Adhibhûta is all perishable things. The Adhidai-  
vata is the (primal) being. And the Adhiyagñā, O best of embodied (beings) ! is I myself in this body<sup>4</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Concerning the supreme principle and the mode of worshipping it.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *infra*, p. 109.

<sup>3</sup> See the next chapter.

<sup>4</sup> Adhyâtma where it occurs before (e.g. p. 55) has been rendered 'the relation between the supreme and individual soul.' As to

And he who leaves this body and departs (from this world) remembering me in (his) last moments, comes into my essence. There is no doubt of that. Also whichever form<sup>1</sup> (of deity) he remembers when he finally leaves this body, to that he goes, O son of Kuntī! having been used to ponder on it. Therefore, at all times remember me, and engage in battle. Fixing your mind and understanding on me, you will come to me, there is no doubt. He who thinks of the supreme divine Being, O son of Prithā! with a mind not (running) to other (objects), and possessed of abstraction in the shape of continuous meditation (about the supreme), goes to him. He who, possessed of reverence (for the supreme Being) with a steady mind, and with the power of devotion, properly concentrates the life-breath between the brows<sup>2</sup>, and meditates on the ancient Seer, the ruler, more minute than the minutest atom<sup>3</sup>, the supporter of all, who is of an unthinkable form, whose brilliance is like that of the sun, and who is beyond all darkness<sup>4</sup>, he attains to that transcendent and divine Being. I<sup>5</sup> will tell you briefly about the seat, which those who know the Vedas declare to be indestructible; which is entered by ascetics from whom all desires have departed; and wishing for which, people pursue the

---

action, cf. pp. 53, 54. Adhibhūta is apparently the whole inanimate creation, and Adhidaivata is the being supposed to dwell in the sun. Adhiyagña is *Kṛishṇa*. Cf. too pp. 113, 114.

<sup>1</sup> Some commentators say 'whatever thing' generally. The 'form' remembered in one's last moments would be that which had been most often meditated on during life.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *supra*, p. 67. <sup>3</sup> *Kaṭha*, p. 105; *Svetâsvatara*, p. 333.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. *Svetâsvatara-upanishad*, p. 327.

<sup>5</sup> *Kaṭhupanishad*, p. 102.

mode of life of Brahmaçârins<sup>1</sup>. He who leaves the body and departs (from this world), stopping up all passages<sup>2</sup>, and confining the mind within the heart<sup>3</sup>, placing the life-breath in the head, and adhering to uninterrupted meditation<sup>4</sup>, repeating the single syllable 'Om,' (signifying) the eternal Brahman<sup>5</sup>, and meditating on me, he reaches the highest goal. To the devotee who constantly practises abstraction, O son of Prithâ! and who with a mind not (turned) to anything else, is ever and constantly meditating on me, I am easy of access. The high-souled ones, who achieve the highest perfection, attaining to me, do not again come to life, which is transient, a home of woes<sup>6</sup>. All worlds, O Arguna! up to the world of Brahman, are (destined) to return<sup>7</sup>. But, O son of Kuntî! after attaining to me, there is no birth again. Those who know a day of Brahman to end after one thousand ages, and the night to terminate after one thousand ages, are the persons

<sup>1</sup> As to Brahmaçârins, see supra, p. 69.

<sup>2</sup> 'The senses,' say the commentators. Might it not refer to the 'nine portals' at p. 65 supra? See also, however, p. 108.

<sup>3</sup> I.e. thinking of nothing, making the mind cease to work. Cf. Maitrî-upanishad, p. 179.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Maitrî-upanishad, p. 130, uninterrupted, like 'oil when poured out,' says the commentator.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. *Khândogya-upanishad*, p. 151; *Mâṇḍūkya*, pp. 330-388 (Om is all—past, present, and future); *Nṛsiṃha Tâpinî*, pp. 110, 117, 171; *Maitrî*, p. 140; *Prasna*, p. 220. On the opening passage of the *Khândogya*, Saṅkara says, 'Om is the closest designation of the supreme Being. He is pleased when it is pronounced, as people are at the mention of a favourite name.' See also Max Müller, *Hibbert Lectures*, p. 84, Goldstücker's Remains, I, 122.

<sup>6</sup> See infra, p. 86; and cf. *Sutta Nipâta*, p. 125.

<sup>7</sup> They are only temporary, not the everlasting seats of the soul.

who know day and night <sup>1</sup>. On the advent of day, all perceptible things are produced from the unperceived; and on the advent of night they dissolve in that same (principle) called the unperceived. This same assemblage of entities, being produced again and again, dissolves on the advent of night, and, O son of *Prithâ*! issues forth on the advent of day, without a will of its own <sup>2</sup>. But there is another entity, unperceived and eternal, and distinct from this unperceived (principle), which is not destroyed when all entities are destroyed. It is called the unperceived, the indestructible; they call it the highest goal. Attaining to it, none returns <sup>3</sup>. That is my supreme abode. That supreme Being, O son of *Prithâ*! he in whom all these entities dwell <sup>4</sup>, and by whom all this is permeated, is to be attained to by reverence not (directed) to another. I will state the times, O descendant of *Bharata*! at which devotees departing (from this world) go, never to return, or to return. The fire, the flame <sup>5</sup>, the day,

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *Manu* I, 73. *Saṅkara* says, that this explains why the abodes of *Brahmâ* and others are said to be not lasting. They are limited by time. As to ages, *Srīdhara* says, a human year is a day and night of the gods. Twelve thousand years made of such days and nights make up the four ages: one thousand such 'quaternions of ages' make up a day, and another thousand a night of *Brahmâ*. Of such days and nights *Brahmâ* has a hundred years to live. At the close of his life, the universe is destroyed.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. p. 82 *infra*; also *Manu-smṛiti* I, 52; and *Kālidāsa's Kumārasambhava* II, 8.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *Kaṭhōpanishad*, p. 149; and also p. 112 *infra*.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. by whom, as the cause of them, all these entities are supported; cf. p. 82 *infra*.

<sup>5</sup> *Srīdhara* understands 'the time when,' in the sentence preceding this, to mean 'the path indicated by a deity presiding over

the bright fortnight, the six months of the northern solstice, departing (from the world) in these, those who know the Brahman go to the Brahman. Smoke, night, the dark fortnight, the six months of the southern solstice, (dying) in these, the devotee goes to the lunar light and returns<sup>1</sup>. These two paths, bright and dark, are deemed to be eternal in this world<sup>2</sup>. By the one, (a man) goes never to return, by the other he comes back. Knowing these two paths, O son of Prithâ! no devotee is deluded<sup>3</sup>. Therefore at all times be possessed of devotion, O Arguna! A devotee knowing all this<sup>4</sup>, obtains all the holy fruit which is prescribed for (study of) the Vedas, for sacrifices, and also for penances and gifts, and he attains to the highest and primeval seat.

## CHAPTER IX.

Now I will speak to you, who are not given to carping, of that most mysterious knowledge, accompanied by experience, by knowing which you will be released from evil. It is the chief among the sciences, the chief among the mysteries. It is the best means of sanctification. It is imperishable, not

time, by which ;' and the fire-flame as included in this, though having no connexion with time. Sâṅkara agrees, though he also suggests that fire means a deity presiding over time. I own I have no clear notion of the meaning of these verses. Cf. *Khândogya*, p. 342; *Bṛihad-âraṇyaka-upanishad*, p. 1057 seq.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *Prasna-upanishad*, p. 64; and *Sâṅkara Bhâshya*, p. 747 seq.

<sup>2</sup> I.e. for those who are fitted for knowledge or action.

<sup>3</sup> I.e. does not desire heaven, but devotes himself to the supreme Being, seeing that heavenly bliss is only temporary,

<sup>4</sup> All that is stated in this chapter.

opposed to the sacred law. It is to be apprehended directly<sup>1</sup>, and is easy to practise. O terror of your foes! those men who have no faith in this holy doctrine, return to the path of this mortal world, without attaining to me. This whole universe is pervaded by me in an unperceived form. All entities live in me, but I do not live in them<sup>2</sup>. Nor yet do all entities live in me. See<sup>3</sup> my divine power. Supporting all entities and producing all entities, my self lives not in (those) entities. As the great and ubiquitous atmosphere always remains in space, know that similarly all entities live in me<sup>4</sup>. At the expiration of a Kalpa, O son of Kuntî! all entities enter my nature; and at the beginning of a Kalpa, I again bring them forth. Taking the control of my own nature<sup>5</sup>, I bring forth again and again this whole collection of entities, without a will of its own<sup>6</sup>, by the power of nature. But, O Arguna! these actions do not fetter<sup>7</sup> me, who remain like one unconcerned, and who am unattached to those actions. Nature gives birth to movables and immovables through me, the supervisor, and by reason of that<sup>7</sup>, O son of Kuntî! the universe revolves. Deluded people of vain hopes, vain acts, vain know-

<sup>1</sup> I. e. by immediate consciousness, not mediately; 'not opposed to the sacred law,' i.e. like the Syena sacrifice for destroying a foe.

<sup>2</sup> Because he is untainted by anything. And therefore also the entities do not live in him, as said in the next sentence. See p. 80 supra.

<sup>3</sup> As space is untainted and unaffected by the air which remains in it, so am I by the entities.

<sup>4</sup> Supra, p. 58. Nature = the unperceived principle.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. p. 80 supra.

<sup>6</sup> I am not affected by the differences in the conditions of these entities.

<sup>7</sup> Viz. the supervision.



ledge<sup>1</sup>, whose minds are disordered, and who are inclined to the delusive nature of Asuras and Râkshasas, not knowing my highest nature as great lord of all entities, disregard me as I have assumed a human body<sup>2</sup>. But the high-souled ones, O son of Prithâ! who are inclined to the godlike nature, knowing me as the inexhaustible source of (all) entities, worship me with minds not (turned) elsewhere. Constantly glorifying me, and exerting themselves<sup>3</sup>, firm in their vows<sup>4</sup>, and saluting me with reverence, they worship me, being always devoted. And others again, offering up the sacrifice of knowledge, worship me as one, as distinct, and as all-pervading in numerous forms<sup>5</sup>. I am the Kratu<sup>6</sup>, I am the Yagñîa, I am the Svadhâ, I the product of the herbs. I am the sacred verse. I too am the sacrificial butter, and I the fire, I the offering<sup>7</sup>. I am the father of this universe, the mother, the creator, the grandsire, the thing to be known, the means of sanctification, the syllable Om<sup>8</sup>, the *Rik*, Sâman, and Yagus also; the goal, the sustainer, the lord, the supervisor, the

<sup>1</sup> Hope, viz. that some other deity will give them what they want; acts, vain as not offered to the supreme; knowledge, vain as abounding in foolish doubts, &c.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. p. 76 supra.

<sup>3</sup> For a knowledge of the supreme or for the means of such knowledge.

<sup>4</sup> Vows=veracity, harmlessness, &c.

<sup>5</sup> Sacrifice of knowledge, viz. the knowledge that Vâsudeva is all; as one=believing that all is one; as distinct=believing that sun, moon, &c. are different manifestations of 'me.'

<sup>6</sup> Kratu is a Vedic sacrifice; Yagñîa, a sacrifice laid down in Smṛitis. Svadhâ=offering to the manes; 'product of the herbs'=food prepared from vegetables, or medicine.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. p. 61 supra.

<sup>8</sup> P. 79 supra.

be said of) holy Brāhmaṇas and royal saints who are (my) devotees? Coming to this transient unhappy<sup>1</sup> world, worship me. (Place your) mind on me, become my devotee, my worshipper; reverence me, and thus making me your highest goal, and devoting your self to abstraction, you will certainly come to me.

## CHAPTER X.

Yet again, O you of mighty arms! listen to my excellent<sup>2</sup> words, which, out of a wish for your welfare, I speak to you who are delighted (with them). Not the multitudes of gods, nor the great sages know my source; for I am in every way<sup>3</sup> the origin of the gods and great sages. Of (all) mortals, he who knows me to be unborn, without beginning, the great lord of the world, being free from delusion, is released from all sins. Intelligence, knowledge, freedom from delusion, forgiveness, truth, restraint of the senses, tranquillity, pleasure, pain, birth, death, fear, and also security, harmlessness, equability, contentment, penance, (making) gifts, glory, disgrace, all these different tempers<sup>4</sup> of living beings are from me alone. The seven great sages, and likewise the four ancient Manus<sup>5</sup>, whose descendants are (all) these people in the world, were all born from my

<sup>1</sup> Cf. p. 79 supra.

<sup>2</sup> As referring to the supreme soul.

<sup>3</sup> As creator, as moving agent in workings of the intellect, &c.

<sup>4</sup> The names are not always names of 'tempers,' but the corresponding 'temper' must be understood.

<sup>5</sup> The words are also otherwise construed, 'The four ancients (Sanaka, Sanandana, Sanātana, Sanatkumāra) and the Manus.' According to the later mythology the Manus are fourteen.

mind<sup>1</sup>, (partaking) of my powers. Whoever correctly knows these powers and emanations of mine, becomes possessed of devotion free from indecision ; of this (there is) no doubt. The wise, full of love <sup>2</sup>, worship me, believing that I am the origin of all, and that all moves on through me. (Placing their) minds on me, offering (their) lives to me, instructing each other, and speaking about me, they are always contented and happy. To these, who are constantly devoted, and who worship with love, I give that knowledge by which they attain to me. And remaining in their hearts, I destroy, with the brilliant lamp of knowledge, the darkness born of ignorance in such (men) only, out of compassion for them.

Arguna said :

You are the supreme Brahman, the supreme goal, the holiest of the holy. All sages, as well as the divine sage Nârada, Asita <sup>3</sup>, Devala, and Vyâsa, call you the eternal being, divine, the first god, the unborn, the all-pervading. And so, too, you tell me yourself, O Kesava ! <sup>†</sup> believe all this that you tell me (to be) true ; for, O lord ! neither the gods nor demons understand your manifestation <sup>4</sup>. You only know your self by your self. O best of beings ! creator of all things ! lord of all things ! god of gods ! lord of the universe ! be pleased to declare without

<sup>1</sup> By the mere operation of my thought. As to ancients, cf. *Aitareya-âranyaka*, p. 136. .

<sup>2</sup> Saṅkara renders the word here by perseverance in pursuit of truth.

<sup>3</sup> Ânandagiri calls Asita father of Devala. See also Davids' *Buddhism*, p. 185 ; Max Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.*, p. 463.

<sup>4</sup> Scil. in human form for the good of the gods and the destruction of demons.

I am the lord of beasts, and the son of Vinatâ<sup>1</sup> among birds. I am the wind among those that blow<sup>2</sup>. I am Râma<sup>3</sup> among those that wield weapons. Among fishes I am Makara<sup>4</sup>, and among streams the Gâhnavî<sup>5</sup>. Of created things I am the beginning and the end and the middle also, O Arguna ! Among sciences, I am the science of the Adhyâtma, and I am the argument of controversialists. Among letters I am the letter A<sup>6</sup>, and among the group of compounds the copulative<sup>7</sup> compound. I myself am time inexhaustible, and I the creator whose faces are in all directions. I am death who seizes all, and the source of what is to be. And among females, fame<sup>8</sup>, fortune, speech, memory, intellect, courage, forgiveness. Likewise among Sâman hymns, I am the Brihat-sâman<sup>9</sup>, and I the Gâyatrî<sup>10</sup> among metres. I am Mârgasîrsha among the months, the

---

this refers to 'time, with its divisions into years, months,' &c.; while a little further on it means 'time eternal.'

<sup>1</sup> I.e. the Garuḍa or eagle, who is the vehicle of Vishnu in Hindu mythology.

<sup>2</sup> 'Those who have the capacity of motion,' says Rāmānuga.

<sup>3</sup> The hero of the Hindu epos, Rāmāyana, translated into verse by Mr. R. T. H. Griffiths.

<sup>4</sup> The dolphin.

<sup>5</sup> The Ganges.

<sup>6</sup> That letter is supposed to comprehend all language. Cf. Aitareya-āranyaka, p. 346, and another text there cited by Mādhava in his commentary (p. 348).

<sup>7</sup> This is said to be the best, because all its members are co-ordinate with one another, not one depending on another.

<sup>8</sup> I.e. the deities of fame, &c.

<sup>9</sup> See, as to this, Muir, Sanskrit Texts, vol. i, p. 16. Saṅkara says this hymn relates to final emancipation.

<sup>10</sup> Cf. Kāṇḍogya-upanishad, p. 181, where Saṅkara says, 'Gâyatrî is the chief metre, because it is the means to a knowledge of the Brahman.' It is the metre of the celebrated verse 'Om Tatsavitur,' &c.

spring among the seasons<sup>1</sup>; of cheats, I am the game of dice; I am the glory of the glorious; I am victory, I am industry, I am the goodness of the good. I am Vâsudeva among the descendants of *Vrishni*<sup>2</sup>, and Arguna among the *Pândavas*. Among sages also, I am Vyâsa<sup>3</sup>; and among the discerning ones, I am the discerning Usanas<sup>4</sup>. I am the rod of those that restrain, and the policy<sup>5</sup> of those that desire victory. I am silence respecting secrets. I am the knowledge of those that have knowledge. And, O Arguna! I am also that which is the seed of all things. There is nothing movable or immovable which can exist without me. O terror of your foes! there is no end to my divine emanations. Here I have declared the extent of (those) emanations only in part. Whatever thing (there is) of power, or glorious, or splendid, know all that to be produced from portions of my energy. Or rather, O Arguna! what have you to do, knowing all this at large? I stand supporting all this by (but) a single portion (of myself)<sup>6</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *Āṇḍogya-upanishad*, p. 126. *Mârgaśīrsha* is November–December. *Madhusūdana* says this is the best month, as being neither too hot nor too cold; but see *Schlegel's Bhagavadgītā*, ed. Lassen, p. 276.

<sup>2</sup> One of *Kṛishna's* ancestors.

<sup>3</sup> The compiler of the Vedas.

<sup>4</sup> The preceptor of the *Daityas* or demons. A work on politics is ascribed to him.

<sup>5</sup> Making peace, bribing, &c.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. *Purusha-sūkta* (Muir, *Sanskrit Texts*, vol. i, p. 9).

## CHAPTER XI.

Arguna said :

In consequence of the excellent and mysterious words concerning the relation of the supreme and individual soul, which you have spoken for my welfare, this delusion of mine is gone away. O you whose eyes are like lotus leaves ! I have heard from you at large about the production and dissolution of things, and also about your inexhaustible greatness. O highest lord ! what you have said about yourself is so. I wish, O best of beings ! to see your divine form. If, O lord ! you think that it is possible for me to look upon it, then, O lord of the possessors of mystic power<sup>1</sup> ! show your inexhaustible form to me.

The Deity said :

In hundreds and in thousands see my forms, O son of *Prithâ* ! various, divine, and of various colours and shapes. See the *Âdityas*, *Vasus*, *Rudras*, the two *Asvins*, and *Maruts* likewise. And O descendant of *Bharata* ! see wonders, in numbers, unseen before. Within my body, O *Gudâkesa* ! see to-day the whole universe, including (everything) movable and immovable, (all) in one, and whatever else you wish to see. But you will not be able to see me with merely this eye of yours. I give you an eye divine. (Now) see my divine power.

*Saṅgaya* said :

Having spoken thus, O king ! *Hari*, the great

---

<sup>1</sup> *Madhusûdana* takes power to mean capacity of becoming small or great, of obtaining what is wanted, &c.; the so-called eight *Bhûtis*.

lord of the possessors of mystic power, then showed to the son of *Prithâ* his supreme divine form, having many mouths and eyes, having (within it) many wonderful sights, having many celestial ornaments, having many celestial weapons held erect, wearing celestial flowers and vestments, having an anointment of celestial perfumes, full of every wonder, the infinite deity with faces in all directions<sup>1</sup>. If in the heavens, the lustre of a thousand suns burst forth all at once, that would be like the lustre of that mighty one. There the son of *Pându* then observed in the body of the god of gods the whole universe (all) in one, and divided into numerous<sup>2</sup> (divisions). Then *Dhanañjaya* filled with amazement, and with hair standing on end, bowed his head before the god, and spoke with joined hands.

Arguna said :

O god! I see within your body the gods, as also all the groups of various beings; and the lord Brahman seated on (his) lotus seat, and all the sages and celestial snakes. I see you, who are of countless forms, possessed of many arms, stomachs, mouths, and eyes on all sides. And, O lord of the universe! O you of all forms! I do not see your end or middle or beginning. I see you bearing a coronet and a mace and a discus—a mass of glory, brilliant on all sides, difficult to look at, having on

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. p. 90 supra. Sāṅkara explains it as meaning 'pervading everything.' The expression occurs in the *Nṛsiṃha-tāpinī-upaniṣad*, p. 50, where it is said, 'as, without organs, it sees, hears, goes, takes from all sides and pervades everything, therefore it has faces on all sides.'

<sup>2</sup> Gods, manes, men, and so forth.

all sides the effulgence of a blazing fire or sun, and indefinable. You are indestructible, the supreme one to be known. You are the highest support<sup>1</sup> of this universe. You are the inexhaustible protector of everlasting piety. I believe you to be the eternal being. I see you void of beginning, middle, end—of infinite power, of unnumbered arms, having the sun and 'moon for eyes, having a mouth like a blazing fire, and heating the universe with your radiance. For this space between heaven and earth and all the quarters are pervaded by you alone. Looking at this wonderful and terrible form of yours, O high-souled one! the three worlds are affrighted. For here these groups of gods are entering into you. Some being afraid are praying with joined hands, and the groups of great sages and Siddhas are saying 'Welfare<sup>2</sup>' and praising you with abundant (hymns) of praise. The Rudras, and Âdityas, the Vasus, the Sâdhyas, the Visvas, the two Arvins, the Maruts, and the Ushmapas, and the groups of Gandharvas, Yakshas, demons, and Siddhas are all looking at you amazed. Seeing your mighty form, with many mouths and eyes, with many arms, thighs, and feet, with many stomachs, and fearful with many jaws, all people, and I likewise, are much alarmed, O you of mighty arms! Seeing you, O Vishnu! touching the skies, radiant, possessed of many hues, with a gaping mouth, and with large blazing eyes, I am much alarmed in my inmost self, and feel no courage, no tranquillity. And seeing your mouths terrible by the jaws, and

<sup>1</sup> The words are the same as at p 97 infra, where see the note.

<sup>2</sup> Seeing signs of some great cataclysm, they say, 'May it be well with the universe,' and then proceed to pray to you.



resembling the fire of destruction, I cannot recognise the (various) directions, I feel no comfort. Be gracious, O lord of gods! who pervadest the universe. And all these sons of *Dhr̥itarāsh̥tra*, together with all the bands of kings, and *Bhīshma* and *Droṇa*, and this charioteer's son<sup>1</sup> likewise, together with our principal warriors also, are rapidly entering your mouths, fearful and horrific<sup>2</sup> by (reason of your) jaws. And some with their heads smashed are seen (to be) stuck in the spaces between the teeth. As the many rapid currents of a river's waters run towards the sea alone, so do these heroes of the human world enter your mouths blazing all round. As butterflies, with increased velocity, enter a blazing fire to their destruction, so too do these people enter your mouths with increased velocity (only) to their destruction. Swallowing all these people, you are licking them over and over again from all sides, with your blazing mouths. Your fierce splendours, O *Vishnu*! filling the whole universe with (their) effulgence, are heating it. Tell me who you are in this fierce form. Salutations be to thee, O chief of the gods! Be gracious. I wish to know you, the primeval one for I do not understand your actions.

The Deity said :

I am death, the destroyer of the worlds, fully developed, and I am now act.<sup>v</sup> about the over-

<sup>1</sup> I.e. *Karna*, who was really the eldest brother of the *Pāṇḍavas*, but having been immediately on birth abandoned by *Kuntī*, was brought up by a charioteer. *Karna* was told of his true origin by *Bhīshma* on his deathbed, and advised to join the *Pāṇḍavas*, but he declined.

<sup>2</sup> By reason of the ruggedness and distortion of face.

throw of the worlds. Even without you, the warriors standing in the adverse hosts, shall all cease to be. Therefore, be up, obtain glory, and vanquishing (your) foes, enjoy a prosperous kingdom. All these have been already killed by me. Be only the instrument, O Savyasâkin<sup>1</sup>! Drona, and Bhîshma, and Gayadratha, and Karna, and likewise other valiant warriors also, whom I have killed, do you kill. Be not alarmed. Do fight. And in the battle you will conquer (your) foes.

Saṅgaya said :

Hearing these words of Kesava, the wearer of the coronet<sup>2</sup>, trembling, and with joined hands, bowed down; and sorely afraid, and with throat choked up, he again spoke to Kṛṣṇa after saluting him.

Arguna said :

It is quite proper, O Hṛṣhîkesa! that the universe is delighted and charmed by your renown, that the demons run away affrighted in all directions, and that all the assemblages of Siddhas bow down (to you). And why, O high-souled one! should they not bow down to you (who are) greater than Brahman, and first cause? O infinite lord of gods! O you pervading the universe! you are the indestructible, that which is, that which is not, and what is beyond them<sup>3</sup>. You are the primal

<sup>1</sup> Arguna, as he could shoot with his left hand as well as the right.—Sṛīdhara.

<sup>2</sup> Arguna, who had this coronet given him by Indra.—Madhusūdana.

<sup>3</sup> The commentators interpret this to mean the perceptible, the unperceived, and the higher principle. Cf. p. 84 *supra*, and also pp. 103, 113 *infra* and notes there.

god, the ancient being, you are the highest support of this universe<sup>1</sup>. You are that which has knowledge, that which is the object of knowledge, you are the highest goal. By you is this universe pervaded, O you of infinite forms! You are the wind, Yama, fire, Varuṇa, the moon, you Pragâpati, and the great grandsire<sup>2</sup>. Obeisance be to thee a thousand times, and again and again obeisance to thee! In front and from behind obeisance to thee! Obeisance be to thee from all sides, O you who are all! You are of infinite power, of unmeasured glory; you pervade all, and therefore you are all! Whatever I have said contemptuously,—for instance, ‘O Kṛishṇa!’ ‘O Yâdava!’ ‘O friend!’—thinking you to be (my) friend, and not knowing your greatness (as shown in) this (universal form), or through friendliness, or incautiously; and whatever disrespect I have shown you for purposes of merriment, on (occasions of) play, sleep, dinner, or sitting (together), whether alone or in the presence (of friends),—for all that, O undegraded one! I ask pardon of you who are indefinable<sup>3</sup>. You are the father of the world—movable and immovable—you its great and venerable master; there is none equal to you, whence can there be one greater, O you whose power is unparalleled in all the three worlds? Therefore I bow and prostrate myself, and would propitiate you, the praiseworthy lord. Be pleased,

---

<sup>1</sup> See p. 94 supra. Here the commentators say the words mean ‘that in which the universe is placed at deluge-time.’

<sup>2</sup> Professor Tiele mentions great-grandfather as a name for the Creator among Kaffirs (History of Religion, p. 18). Cf. p. 83 supra.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. of whom it is impossible to ascertain whether he is such or such. Cf. p. 94 supra.

O god! to pardon (my guilt) as a father (that of his) son, a friend (that of his) friend, or a husband (that of his) beloved. I am delighted at seeing what I had never seen before, and my heart is also alarmed by fear. Show me that same form, O god! Be gracious, O lord of gods! O you pervading the universe! I wish to see you bearing the coronet and the mace, with the discus in hand, just the same (as before)<sup>1</sup>. O you of thousand arms! O you of all forms! assume that same four-handed form.

The Deity said :

O Arguna! being pleased (with you), I have by my own mystic power shown you this supreme form, full of glory, universal, infinite, primeval, and which has not been seen before by any one else but you, O you hero among the Kauravas! I cannot be seen in this form by any one but you, (even) by (the help of) the study of the Vedas, or of <sup>2</sup> sacrifices, nor by gifts, nor by actions, nor by fierce penances. Be not alarmed, be not perplexed, at seeing this form of mine, fearful like this. Free from fear and with delighted heart, see now again that same form of mine.

Saṅgaya said :

Having thus spoken to Arguna, Vāsudeva again showed his own form, and the high-souled one becoming again of a mild form, comforted him who had been affrighted.

<sup>1</sup> This is the ordinary form of Kṛishṇa.

<sup>2</sup> This is the original construction. One suspects that sacrifices and study of the Vedas are meant. Cf. the speech of Kṛishṇa on the next page.

Arguna said :

O Ganardana ! seeing this mild, human form of yours, I am now in my right mind, and have come to my normal state.

The Deity said :

Even the gods are always desiring to see this form of mine, which it is difficult to get a sight of, and which you have seen. I cannot be seen, as you have seen me, by (means of) the Vedas, not by penance, not by gift, nor yet by sacrifice. But, O Arguna ! by devotion to me exclusively, I can in this form be truly known, seen, and assimilated<sup>1</sup> with, O terror of your foes ! He who performs acts for (propitiating) me, to whom I am the highest (object), who is my devotee, who is free from attachment, and who has no enmity towards any being, he, O son of Pându ! comes to me.

## CHAPTER XII.

Arguna said :

Of the worshippers, who thus, constantly devoted, meditate on you, and those who (meditate) on the unperceived and indestructible, which do best know devotion ?

The Deity said :

Those who being constantly devoted, and possessed of the highest faith, worship me with a mind fixed on me, are deemed by me to be the most devoted. But those, who, restraining the (whole) group of the senses, and with a mind at all times

<sup>1</sup> Literally, 'entered into;' it means final emancipation. See p. 128.

devotion, that man is dear to me. But those devotees who, imbued with faith, and (regarding) me as their highest (goal), resort to this holy (means for attaining) immortality, as stated, they are extremely dear to me.

### CHAPTER XIII.

The Deity said :

This body, O son of Kuntî! is called Kshetra<sup>1</sup>, and the learned call him who knows it the Kshetragñā<sup>2</sup>. And know me also, O descendant of Bharata! to be the Kshetragñā in all Kshetras. The knowledge of Kshetra and Kshetragñā is deemed by me (to be real) knowledge. Now hear from me in brief what that Kshetra (is), what (it is) like, what changes (it undergoes), and whence (it comes), and what is he<sup>3</sup>, and what his powers, (all which) is sung in various ways by sages in numerous hymns<sup>4</sup>, distinctly, and in well-settled texts full of argument, giving indications or full instruction about the Brahman. The great elements<sup>5</sup>, egoism, the understanding, the unperceived also, the ten senses, and the one, and the five objects of sense, desire,

p. 86 (p. 152 in this series); and Dhammapada, stanzas 40-91 (where the identical word is used).

<sup>1</sup> I retain the original for want of a good equivalent.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Svetâsvatârôpanishad, p. 368, and Maitrî, pp. 25-72.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. the Kshetragñā.

<sup>4</sup> Hymns=scil. from the Vedas about ordinary or special actions and so forth. Argument=e.g. in texts like 'How can entity come from non-entity?' 'Who could breathe, if &c.?'

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Aitareya-âraṇyaka, p. 97. The subtle elements, earth, fire, &c., are meant. The unperceived=nature; the one=mind; courage=that by which the drooping body and senses are supported; egoism=self-consciousness—the feeling 'this is I.'

aversion, pleasure, pain, body, consciousness, courage, thus in brief has been declared the Kshetra with changes<sup>1</sup>. Absence of vanity, absence of ostentatiousness, absence of hurtfulness, forgiveness, straightforwardness, devotion to a preceptor, purity<sup>2</sup>, steadiness, self-restraint, indifference towards objects of sense, and also absence of egoism; perception of the misery and evil of birth, death<sup>3</sup>, old age, and disease; absence of attachment, absence of self-identifying regard for son, wife<sup>4</sup>, home, and so forth; and constant equability on the approach of (both what is) agreeable and (what is) disagreeable; unswerving devotion to me, without meditation on any one else; resorting to clean places, distaste for assemblages of men<sup>5</sup>, constancy in knowledge of the relation of the individual self to the supreme, perception of the object<sup>6</sup> of knowledge of the truth, this is called knowledge; that is ignorance which is opposed to this. I will declare that which is the object of knowledge, knowing which, one reaches immortality; the highest Brahman, having no beginning nor end, which cannot be said to be existent or non-existent<sup>7</sup>. It has hands and feet on all sides, it has eyes, heads, and faces on all sides, it has ears on all sides, it

<sup>1</sup> See the last page. Changes=development.

<sup>2</sup> Internal as well as external; as to devotion to a preceptor, cf. *Āpastamba*, p. 11 (p. 23 in this series); *Taittirīya-upanishad*, p. 38; *Svetāśvatara*, p. 117; and *Sutta Nipāta*, p. 87; as to egoism, see p. 52 *supra*.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *Sutta Nipāta*, pp. 18-95.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. *Sutta Nipāta*, p. 12.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. *Sutta Nipāta*, p. 11.

<sup>6</sup> Viz. removal of ignorance and acquisition of happiness.

<sup>7</sup> Words indicate a class, a quality, an action, or a relation, says *Śaṅkara*. None of these can be predicated of the Brahman; so you cannot apply either of these words to it. Cf. pp. 84, 96 *supra*, also *Svetāśvatara*, p. 346.

who sees the supreme lord abiding alike in all entities, and not destroyed though they are destroyed. For he who sees the lord abiding everywhere alike, does not destroy himself<sup>1</sup> by himself, and then reaches the highest goal. He sees (truly), who sees (all) actions (to be) in every way done by nature alone, and likewise the self (to be) not the doer. When a man sees all the variety of entities as existing in one<sup>2</sup>, and (all as) emanating from that, then he becomes (one with) the Brahman. This inexhaustible supreme self, being without beginning and without qualities, does not act, and is not tainted, O son of Kuntī! though stationed in the body. As by (reason of its) subtlety the all-pervading space is not tainted, so the self stationed in every body is not tainted. As the sun singly lights up all this world, so the Kshetragña, O descendant of Bharata! lights up the whole Kshetra. Those who, with the eye of knowledge, thus understand the difference between Kshetra and Kshetragña, and the destruction of the nature of all entities<sup>3</sup>, go to the supreme.

#### CHAPTER XIV.

The Deity said :

Again I will declare (to you) the highest knowledge, the best of (all sorts of) knowledge, having

<sup>1</sup> Not to have true knowledge is equivalent to self-destruction. Cf. *Īsopanishad*, pp. 9, 15, 16.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. absorbed at the time of the deluge in nature, one of the energies of the supreme ; 'emanating,' i. e. at the time of creation.

<sup>3</sup> Nature, which is the material cause from which all entities are produced ; the destruction of it results from true knowledge of the soul. See the third note on p. 107 *infra*.



learnt which, all sages have reached perfection beyond (the bonds of) this (body). Those who, resorting to this knowledge, reach assimilation with my essence, are not born at the creation, and are not afflicted<sup>1</sup> at the destruction (of the universe). The great Brahman<sup>2</sup> is a womb for me, in which I cast the seed. From that, O descendant of Bharata! is the birth of all things. Of the bodies, O son of Kuntî! which are born from all wombs, the (main) womb is the great Brahman, and I (am) the father, the giver of the seed. Goodness, passion, darkness, these qualities born from nature, O you of mighty arms! bind down the inexhaustible soul in the body. Of these, goodness, which, in consequence of being untainted, is enlightening and free from (all) misery, binds the soul, O sinless one! with the bond of pleasure and the bond of knowledge<sup>4</sup>. Know that passion consists in being enamoured, and is produced from craving and attachment. That, O son of Kuntî! binds down the embodied (self) with the

<sup>1</sup> I e 'are not destroyed,' 'na ullashtānī, 'do not fall,' Sankara; 'are not born,' Śiṣṭhara, and apparently Rāmānuga

<sup>2</sup> I. e. the 'nature' spoken of before

<sup>3</sup> These constitute nature. We must understand nature, with Professor Bhāṇḍārkar, as the hypothetical cause of the soul's feeling itself limited and conditioned. If nature is understood, as it usually is, to mean matter, its being made up of the qualities is inexplicable. Interpreted idealistically, as suggested by Professor Bhāṇḍārkar, the destruction of it spoken of at the close of the last chapter also becomes intelligible. By the loss of knowledge of the soul, the unreality of these manifestations is understood and nature is destroyed.

<sup>4</sup> Pleasure and knowledge appertain to the mind, not the self, hence they are described as constituting bonds, when erroneously connected with the self, Sankara and Śiṣṭhara. They constitute 'bonds,' because the self when brought into contact with them, strives to obtain them, Rāmānuga.

bond of action. Darkness (you must) know to be born of ignorance, it deludes all embodied (selfs). And that, O descendant of Bharata! binds down (the self) with heedlessness<sup>1</sup>, indolence, and sleep. Goodness unites (the self) with pleasure; passion, O descendant of Bharata! with action; and darkness with heedlessness, after shrouding up knowledge. Passion and darkness being repressed, goodness stands, O descendant of Bharata! Passion and goodness (being repressed), darkness; and likewise darkness and goodness (being repressed), passion<sup>2</sup>. When in this body at all portals<sup>3</sup> light (that is to say) knowledge prevails, then should one know goodness to be developed. Avarice, activity<sup>4</sup>, performance of actions, want of tranquillity, desire, these are produced, O chief of the descendants of Bharata! when passion is developed. Want of light, want of activity<sup>5</sup>, heedlessness, and delusion, these are produced, O descendant of Kuru! when darkness is developed. When an embodied (self) encounters death, while goodness is developed, then he reaches the untainted worlds of those who know the highest<sup>6</sup>. Encountering death during (the preva-

<sup>1</sup> Carelessness about duty, owing to being intent on something else. Cf. Sutta Nipāta, pp. 51-91; Dhammapada, stanza 21; Kathopanishad, p. 152.

<sup>2</sup> The effects of each quality assert themselves, when the other two are held in check.

<sup>3</sup> I.e. the senses of perception.

<sup>4</sup> Activity=always doing something or another; performance, &c.=rearing large mansions, &c.; want of tranquillity=perpetual agitation of mind, 'this I will do now, then that, and next the other;' desire=to obtain everything that one comes across.

<sup>5</sup> I.e. doing absolutely nothing.

<sup>6</sup> The highest manifestations of Brahman, viz. the Hiranyagarbha, &c., say Śrīdhara and Madhusūdana. Nīlakantha also suggests that 'those who know the highest' means gods.

lence of) passion, he is born among those attached to action. Likewise, dying during (the prevalence of) darkness, he is born in the wombs of the ignorant<sup>1</sup>. The fruit of meritorious action is said to be good, untainted; while the fruit of passion is misery; and the fruit of darkness ignorance. From goodness is produced knowledge, from passion avarice<sup>2</sup>, and from darkness heedlessness and delusion and ignorance also. Those who adhere to (the ways of) goodness go up<sup>3</sup>; the passionate remain in the middle; while those of the qualities of darkness, adhering to the ways of the lowest quality, go down. When a right-seeing person sees none but the qualities (to be) the doers (of all action), and knows what is above the qualities<sup>4</sup>, he enters into my essence. The embodied (self), who transcends these three qualities, from which bodies are produced<sup>5</sup>, attains immortality, being freed from birth and death and old age and misery.

Arguna said :

What are the characteristics, O lord! of one who has transcended these three qualities? What is his conduct, and how does he transcend these three qualities<sup>6</sup>?

<sup>1</sup> Lower creation, such as birds, beasts, &c.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Sutta Nipāta, p. 15.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. are born as gods, &c.; 'middle,' as men, &c.; 'down,' as brutes, &c.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. what has been called Kshetragña before, the supervising principle within one.

<sup>5</sup> Bodies are developments of the qualities, say the commentators, which is not incompatible with the explanation of qualities given above. As to transcending qualities, cf. p. 48 supra.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. as to what follows what is said in chapter II about 'one whose mind is steady.'

## The Deity said :

He is said to have transcended the qualities, O son of Pându! who is not adverse to light and activity and delusion (when they) prevail, and who does not desire (them when they) cease<sup>1</sup>; who sitting like one unconcerned is never perturbed by the qualities<sup>2</sup>; who remains steady and moves<sup>3</sup> not, (thinking) merely that the qualities<sup>4</sup> exist; who is self-contained<sup>5</sup>; to whom pain and pleasure are alike; to whom a sod and a stone and gold are alike; to whom what is agreeable and what is disagreeable are alike; who has discernment; to whom censure and praise of himself are alike; who is alike in honour and dishonour; who is alike towards the sides of friends and foes; and who abandons all action<sup>6</sup>. And he who worships me with an unswerving devotion, transcends these qualities, and becomes fit for (entrance into) the essence of the Brahman. For I am the embodiment of the Brahman<sup>7</sup>, of indefeasible immortality, of eternal piety, and of unbroken happiness.

<sup>1</sup> I. e. who does not feel troubled, for instance, thinking now I am actuated by a motive of passion or darkness, and so forth.

<sup>2</sup> So as to lose all discrimination.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. from his determination to pursue truth, by worldly pleasures or pains.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. p. 55 supra.

<sup>5</sup> Intent on the self only.

<sup>6</sup> For the whole passage, cf. p. 101 supra.

<sup>7</sup> *Nilakantha* interprets this to mean 'the ultimate object of the Vedas.' I here means *Kṛishna*. *Sīdhara* suggests this parallel, as light embodied is the sun, so is the Brahman embodied identical with *Vāsudeva*.

## CHAPTER XV.

The Deity said :

They say the inexhaustible Asvattha<sup>1</sup> has (its) roots above, (its) branches below ; the *Kṛāṇḍas* are its leaves. He who knows it knows the Vedas. Upwards and downwards extend its branches, which are enlarged by the qualities, and the \*sprouts of which are<sup>2</sup> sensuous objects. And downwards to this human world are continued its roots which lead on to action. Its form is not thus known here, nor (its) end, nor beginning, nor support. But having with the firm weapon of unconcern, cut this Asvattha, whose roots are firmly fixed, then should one seek for that seat from which those that go there never return, (thinking) that one rests on that same primal being from whom the ancient course (of worldly life) emanated. Those who are free from pride and delusion, who have overcome the evils of attachment, who are constant in (contemplating) the relation of the supreme and individual self, from whom desire has departed, who are free from the pairs (of opposites) called pleasure and pain, go undeluded to that imperishable seat<sup>2</sup>. The sun

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Kaṭhōpanishad, p. 70, Sutta Nipāta, p. 76.

<sup>2</sup> Asvattha stands here for the course of worldly life. Its roots are above, viz. the supreme being : its boughs are *Hiraṇyagarbha* and others of the higher beings. The Vedas are its leaves, preserving it as leaves preserve trees (another interpretation is that they are the causes of the fruit which the tree bears, i. e. salvation, &c.) Upwards and downwards, from the highest to the lowest of created things. Enlarged = the qualities manifesting themselves, as body, senses, &c. ; objects of sense are sprouts as they are attached to the senses, which are the tips of the branches above stated. The roots which extend downwards are the desires for various

does not light it, nor the moon, nor fire<sup>1</sup>. That is my highest abode, going to which none returns. An eternal portion of me it is, which, becoming an individual soul in the mortal world, draws (to itself) the senses with the mind as the sixth<sup>2</sup>. Whenever the ruler (of the bodily frame) obtains or quits a body, he goes taking these (with him) as the wind (takes) perfumes from (their) seats<sup>3</sup>. And presiding over the senses of hearing and seeing, and touch, and taste, and smell, and the mind, he enjoys sensuous objects. Those who are deluded do not see (him) remaining in or quitting (a body), enjoying or joined to the qualities<sup>4</sup>; they see, who have eyes of knowledge. Devotees making efforts perceive him abiding within their selves<sup>5</sup>. But those whose selves have not been refined, and who have no discernment, do not perceive him even (after) making efforts. Know that glory (to be) mine which, dwelling in the sun, lights up the whole world, or in the moon or fire<sup>6</sup>.

enjoyments. Its form not thus known here, i. e. to those who live and move in this world, thus viz. as above described. The man who knows the tree thus is said to know the Vedas, because knowledge of it is knowledge of the substance of the Vedas, which is, that the course of worldly life springs from the supreme, is kept up by Vedic rites, and destroyed by knowledge of the supreme. As to freedom from pride, cf. Sutta Nipâta, p. 4.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Kathopanishad, p. 142; Mundaka, p. 304; Nṛsiṃha-tâpinî, p. 106; Svetâsvatara, p. 110.

<sup>2</sup> Five senses and the mind issue from nature, in which they are absorbed during sleep or at a dissolution of the world. Cf. Sutta Nipâta, p. 44.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Kaushîtaki-upanishad, pp. 86, 87.

<sup>4</sup> Perceiving objects of sense, or feeling pleasure, pain, &c.

<sup>5</sup> 'Selves' = bodies, Râmânuga and Sîdhdhara; 'understandings, Saṅkara. In the next sentence 'self' means mind.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Maitrî-upanishad, p. 142. This sentence continues what has been stated at the top of the page. The intervening

Entering the earth<sup>1</sup>, I by my power support all things; and becoming the juicy moon, I nourish all herbs. I becoming the fire, and dwelling in the bodies of (all) creatures, and united with the upward and downward life-breaths, cause digestion of the fourfold food<sup>2</sup>. And I am placed in the heart of all<sup>3</sup>; from me (come) memory, knowledge, and their removal; I alone am to be learnt from all the Vedas; I am the author of the Vedântas<sup>4</sup>; and I alone know the Vedas. There are these two beings in the world, the destructible and the indestructible<sup>5</sup>. The destructible (includes) all things. The unconcerned one is (what is) called the indestructible. But the being supreme is yet another, called the highest self, who as the inexhaustible lord, pervading the three worlds, supports (them). And since I transcend the destructible, and since I am higher also than the indestructible<sup>6</sup>, therefore

---

portion explains how souls do come back in some cases. As a general rule, 'all going ends in returning.' But the soul is an exception in some cases, as the 'going' to the Brahman is going to the fountain-head. Then the question arises, How does the severance come off at all? And that is what the lines up to this explain.

<sup>1</sup> 'Entering in the form of the goddess earth,' say Ânandagiri and Madhusûdana. Support, i. e. by keeping the earth from falling or crumbling away. The moon is said to nourish herbs by communicating to them some of her 'juice.' The moon, it may be noted, is called 'watery star' by Shakespeare. As to her relation to the vegetable kingdom, see Matsya-purâṇa XXIII, stanza 10 seq.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. what is drunk, what is licked, what is powdered with the teeth, and what is eaten without such powdering.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. p. 104 supra.

<sup>4</sup> See Introduction, p. 18.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Svetâsvatara, p. 294.

<sup>6</sup> The two are the whole collection of things as they appear and their material cause. The supreme being is a third principle.

am I celebrated in the world and in the Vedas as the best of beings. He who, undeluded, thus knows me the best of beings, worships me every way<sup>1</sup>, O descendant of Bharata! knowing everything. Thus, O sinless one! have I proclaimed this most mysterious science. He who knows this, has done all he need do, and he becomes possessed of discernment.

## CHAPTER XVI.

Freedom from fear, purity of heart, perseverance in (pursuit of) knowledge and abstraction of mind, gifts<sup>2</sup>, self-restraint<sup>2</sup>, and sacrifice, study of the Vedas, penance, straightforwardness, harmlessness, truth<sup>2</sup>, freedom from anger, renunciation<sup>1</sup>, tranquillity, freedom from the habit of backbiting<sup>4</sup>, compassion for (all) beings, freedom from avarice, gentleness, modesty, absence of vain activity, noble-mindedness, forgiveness, courage, purity, freedom from a desire to injure others, absence of vanity, (these), O descendant of Bharata! are his who is born to godlike endowments. Ostentatiousness, pride, vanity<sup>5</sup>, anger, and also harshness and ignorance (are) his, O son of Prithâ! who is born to demoniac<sup>6</sup> endowments. Godlike endowments are deemed to be (means) for

<sup>1</sup> Cf. p. 129 infra. Here Sankara paraphrases it by 'thinking me to be the soul of everything.'

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Sutta Nipâta, p. 49.

<sup>3</sup> See next chapter.

<sup>4</sup> Sutta Nipâta, pp. 15, 101.

<sup>5</sup> Ostentatiousness=making a show of piety; pride=scil. of wealth and learning; vanity=esteeming oneself too highly; harshness=mercilessness.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. *Āṅdogyā-upanishad*, p. 585, and Max Müller's *Hibbert Lectures*, p. 322.



final emancipation, demoniac for bondage<sup>1</sup>. Grieve not, O descendant of Bharata! you are born to godlike endowments. (There are) two classes of created beings in this world, the godlike and the demoniac; the godlike (class) has been described at length; now hear from me, O son of Prithâ! about the demoniac. Demoniac persons know not action or inaction<sup>2</sup>, neither purity nor yet (correct) conduct nor veracity are in them. They say the universe is devoid of truth<sup>3</sup>, devoid of fixed principle<sup>4</sup>, and devoid of a ruler, produced by union (of male and female) caused by lust<sup>5</sup>, and nothing else. Holding this view, (these) enemies of the world, of ruined<sup>6</sup> selfs, of little knowledge, and of ferocious actions, are born for the destruction (of the world). Entertaining insatiable desire, full of vanity, ostentatiousness, and frenzy, they adopt false notions<sup>7</sup> through delusion, and engage in unholy observances. Indulging in boundless thoughts ending with death<sup>8</sup>, given up to the enjoyment of objects of desire, being resolved that that is all, bound down by nets of hopes in hundreds, given up to anger and desire, they wish

<sup>1</sup> Scil. to birth and death in this world.

<sup>2</sup> What should be done for the attainment of real good, and what should not be done as productive of mischief. See too p. 125.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. contains nothing that is entitled to belief, as the Vedas, &c.

<sup>4</sup> No principle based on virtue and vice in the government of the world.

<sup>5</sup> They do not believe in any unseen cause, but say the lust of mankind is the cause of the universe.

<sup>6</sup> I. e. who have none of the means of reaching the next world.

<sup>7</sup> Such as that by propitiating a certain divinity by a certain rite they may obtain treasure and so forth.

<sup>8</sup> Till their last moments, thinking of making new acquisitions and preserving old ones.

heart<sup>1</sup>. A being here is full of faith, and whatever is a man's faith, that is a man himself<sup>2</sup>. Those of the quality of goodness worship the gods; those of the quality of passion the Yakshas and Rakshases<sup>3</sup>; and the others, the people of the quality of darkness, worship departed (spirits) and the multitudes of Bhûtas. Know those to be of demoniac convictions, who practise fierce penance<sup>4</sup> not ordained by scripture; who are full of ostentatiousness and egoism, and of desire, attachment, and stubbornness; who are without discernment; and who torment the groups of organs in (their) bodies, and me also seated within (those) bodies. The food also, which is liked by all, and likewise the sacrifice, the penance, and gifts, are of three kinds. Listen to the distinctions regarding them as follows. The kinds of food which increase life, energy, strength, health, comfort, and relish, which are savoury, oleaginous, full of nutrition, and agreeable, are liked by the good. The kinds of food which are bitter, acid, saltish, too hot, sharp, rough, and burning, and which cause pain, grief, and disease, are desired by the passionate. And the food<sup>5</sup> which is cold, tasteless, stinking, stale, impure, and even leavings, are liked by the dark. That sacrifice is good which, being prescribed in (scripture) ordinances, is performed by persons

<sup>1</sup> The hearts of gods are said to be good, those of Yakshas &c. passionate, those of men mixed, and so forth.

<sup>2</sup> Faith is the dominant principle in man, and he is good, passionate, or dark, as his faith is.

<sup>3</sup> Goldstücker, *Remains*, I, 154.

<sup>4</sup> Troublesome to oneself and others, as standing on heated stones, &c. 'Egoism' (Ahaṅkāra) = the feeling that one is worthy of honour, *Nilakantha*.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. *Sutta Nipāta*, p. 109, and *Âpastamba*, p. 31 (p. 62 in this series).

not wishing for the fruit (of it), and after determining (in their) mind that the sacrifice must needs be performed. But when a sacrifice is performed, O highest of the descendants of Bharata! with an expectation of fruit (from it), and for the purpose of ostentation, know that sacrifice (to be) passionate. They call that sacrifice dark, which is against the ordinances (of scripture), in which no food is dealt out (to Brâhmanas, &c.); which is devoid of Mantras<sup>1</sup>, devoid of Dakshinâ presents, and which is without faith. Paying reverence to gods, Brâhmanas, preceptors, and men of knowledge; purity<sup>2</sup>, straightforwardness, life as Brahmatârin, and harmlessness, (this) is called the penance bodily. The speech which causes no sorrow, which is true, agreeable, and beneficial, and the study<sup>3</sup> of the Vedas, (this) is called the penance vocal. Calmness of mind, mildness, taciturnity<sup>4</sup>, self-restraint, and purity of heart, this is called the penance mental. This threefold penance, practised with perfect faith, by men who do not wish for the fruit, and who are possessed of devotion, is called good. The penance which is done for respect, honour, and reverence, and with ostenta-

<sup>1</sup> Texts from the Vedas which ought to be recited on such occasions. Presents (Dakshinâ) to Brâhmanas are insisted on in Brihad-âraṇyaka-upanishad, p. 661; Âsvalâyana Grhya I, 23, 14.

<sup>2</sup> Cleanliness of body; straightforwardness=not doing prohibited acts; harmlessness=not injuring any living beings. These are 'bodily,' because the body is the main instrument in these actions.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. recitation of the Vedas.\*

<sup>4</sup> This is part of the 'mental penance,' because the government of the tongue is a consequence of mental restraint; the effect being, according to Saṅkara, put here for the cause.

<sup>5</sup> Respect=people rising to receive one, &c.; honour=people saying 'this is a holy man,' &c.; reverence=people washing one's feet, &c.

should not be abandoned. As to that abandonment, O best of the descendants of Bharata! listen to my decision; for abandonment, O bravest of men! is described (to be) threefold. The actions of sacrifice, gift, and penance should not be abandoned; they must needs be performed; for sacrifices, gifts, and penances are means of sanctification to the wise. But even these actions, O son of Prithā! should be performed, abandoning attachment and fruit; such is my excellent and decided opinion. The renunciation of prescribed action is not proper. Its abandonment through delusion<sup>1</sup> is described as of the quality of darkness. When a man abandons action, merely as being troublesome, through fear of bodily affliction, he does not obtain the fruit<sup>2</sup> of abandonment by making (such) passionate abandonment. When prescribed action is performed, O Arguna! abandoning attachment and fruit also, merely because it ought to be performed, that is deemed (to be) a good abandonment. He who is possessed of abandonment<sup>3</sup>, being full of goodness, and talented, and having his doubts destroyed, is not averse from unpleasant actions, is not attached to pleasant<sup>4</sup> (ones). Since no embodied (being) can abandon actions without exception<sup>5</sup>, he is said to be possessed of abandonment, who abandons the fruit of action. The threefold fruit of action, agreeable, disagreeable, and mixed, accrues after death to those who are not possessed of abandonment, but never to

<sup>1</sup> Without delusion no such abandonment will occur.

<sup>2</sup> Namely, final emancipation, by means of purity of heart.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. who has the frame of mind necessary for a good abandonment.

<sup>4</sup> Such as bathing at midday in summer.      • <sup>5</sup> Cf. p. 53 supra.

renouncers <sup>1</sup>. Learn from me, O you of mighty arms ! these five causes of the completion of all actions, declared in the Sâṅkhya system <sup>2</sup>. The substratum, the agent likewise, the various sorts of organs, and the various and distinct movements, and with these the deities, too, as the fifth. Whatever action, just or otherwise, a man performs with his body, speech, and mind, these five are its causes. That being so, the undiscerning man, who being of an unrefined understanding, sees the agent in the immaculate self, sees not (rightly) <sup>3</sup>. He who has no feeling of egoism <sup>4</sup>, and whose mind is not tainted, even though he kills (all) these people, kills not, is not fettered <sup>5</sup> (by the action). Knowledge <sup>6</sup>, the object of knowledge, the knower—threefold is the prompting to action. The instrument, the action, the agent, thus in brief is action threefold. Knowledge and action and agent

<sup>1</sup> The original is *sannyâsî*, but Śrīdhara is probably right in taking it to mean one who has command of 'abandonment.' Sāṅkara and Madhusūdana, however take the word in its ordinary sense of 'ascetic.' What follows explains, says Śrīdhara, why 'the fruit does not accrue to renouncers.'

<sup>2</sup> Sāṅkara and Madhusūdana say this means Vedānta-sāstra. Śrīdhara suggests also the alternative Sāṅkhya-sāstra. Substratum = the body, in which desire, aversion, &c. are manifested ; agent = one who egoistically thinks himself the doer of actions ; organs = senses of perception, action, &c. ; movements = of the vital breaths in the body ; deities = the deities which preside over the eye and other senses (as to this cf. Aitareya-upanishad, p. 45 · Prasna, pp. 216, 217 ; Mundaka, p. 314 ; Aitareya-āranyaka, pp. 88-270 ; and Max Müller's Hibbert Lectures, p. 204, note). <sup>3</sup> Cf. p. 106.

<sup>4</sup> Egoism = the feeling that he is the doer of the action ; taint = the feeling that the fruit of the action must accrue to him.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. p. 45, and Dhammapada, stanza 294.

<sup>6</sup> Knowledge, i. e. that something is a means to what is desired ; object is the means ; the knower is he who has this knowledge. When these co-exist we have action. The instrument = senses, &c.

are declared in the enumeration of qualities<sup>1</sup> (to be) of three classes only, according to the difference of qualities. Hear about these also as they really are. Know that knowledge to be good, by which (a man) sees one entity, inexhaustible, and not different in all things (apparently) different<sup>2</sup> (from one another). Know that knowledge to be passionate, which is (based) on distinctions<sup>3</sup> (between different entities), which sees in all things various entities of different kinds. And that is described as dark, which clings to one created (thing) only as everything, which is devoid of reason, devoid of real principle, and insignificant<sup>4</sup>. That action is called good, which is prescribed, which is devoid of attachment, which is not done from (motives of) affection or aversion, (and which is done) by one not wishing for the fruit. That is described as passionate, which (occasions) much trouble, is performed by one who wishes for objects of desire, or one who is full of egotism<sup>5</sup>. The action is called dark, which is commenced through delusion, without regard to consequences, loss, injury, or strength<sup>6</sup>. That agent is called good, who has cast off attachment, who is free from egotistic talk, who is possessed of courage and energy, and unaffected by success or ill-success. That agent is called passionate, who is full of affections<sup>7</sup>,

<sup>1</sup> The system of Kapila.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. p. 104.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *Kāthopanishad*, p. 129.

<sup>4</sup> Reason=argument in support; real principle=truth, view of things as they are; insignificant, i. e. in comprehensiveness.

<sup>5</sup> I. e. 'pride of learning,' &c., Sankara; 'egotism,' Râmânuga.

<sup>6</sup> Consequences=good or evil resulting; loss=of wealth or strength; injury=to others; strength=one's own capacity.

<sup>7</sup> I. e. 'for children,' &c., according to Sîdhara; 'for the action,' according to others.

who wishes for the fruit of actions, who is covetous, cruel, and impure, and feels joy and sorrow. That agent is called dark, who is without application<sup>1</sup>, void of discernment, headstrong, crafty, malicious, lazy, melancholy, and slow. Now hear, O Dhanañgaya! the threefold division of intelligence<sup>2</sup> and courage, according to qualities, which I am about to declare exhaustively and distinctly. That intelligence, O son of Prithâ! is good which understands action and inaction<sup>3</sup>, what ought to be done and what ought not to be done, danger and the absence of danger, emancipation and bondage. That intelligence, O son of Prithâ! is passionate, by which one imperfectly understands piety and impiety, what ought to be done and also what ought not to be done. That intelligence, O son of Prithâ! is dark, which shrouded by darkness, understands impiety (to be) piety, and all things incorrectly. That courage, O son of Prithâ! is good courage, which is unswerving<sup>4</sup>, and by which one controls the operations of the mind, breath, and senses, through abstraction. But, O Arjuna! that courage is passionate, by which one adheres to piety, lust, and wealth<sup>5</sup>, and through attachment<sup>6</sup> wishes

<sup>1</sup> I. e. attention to work; melancholy=always desponding and wanting in energy.

<sup>2</sup> The nature of the faculty of understanding; and courage is the firmness of that faculty.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 115. Sañkara takes these to mean the 'paths' of action and knowledge, and Nīlakanṭha takes the next expression to mean that which is constant and that which is not constant—nitya, anitya.

<sup>4</sup> Always co-existing with mental abstraction and supporting it.

<sup>5</sup> Three of the aims of mankind, the highest being final emancipation. In the view of the Gîtâ, piety, leading only to heaven, is of doubtful benefit.

<sup>6</sup> I. e. to the action for attaining them, in the belief that one is

O son of *Prithâ*! for the fruit. That courage is dark, O son of *Prithâ*! by which an undiscerning man does not give up sleep, fear, sorrow, despondency, and folly. Now, O chief of the descendants of *Bharata*! hear from me about the three sorts of happiness. That happiness is called good, in which one is pleased after repetition<sup>1</sup> (of enjoyment), and reaches the close of all misery, which is like poison first and comparable to nectar in the long run, and which is produced from a clear knowledge of the self<sup>2</sup>. That happiness is called passionate, which (flows) from contact between the senses and their objects, and which is at first comparable to nectar and in the long run like poison. That happiness is described as dark, which arises from sleep, laziness, heedlessness, which deludes the self, both at first and in its consequences. There is no entity either on earth or in heaven among the gods, which is free from these three qualities born of nature. The duties of *Brâhmaṇas*, *Kshatriyas*, and *Vaiśyas*, and of *Sûdras*, too, O terror of your foes! are distinguished according to the qualities born of nature<sup>3</sup>. Tranquillity<sup>4</sup>, restraint of the senses, penance, purity, forgiveness, straightforwardness, also knowledge, experience, and belief (in a future world), this is the natural duty of *Brâhmaṇas*. Valour, glory, courage,

---

the door of it; the 'fruit' seal of the action performed with an eye to the three things named.

<sup>1</sup> Not at once, as in the case of sensuous pleasures.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. p. 51. The original has also been rendered by 'tranquillity of one's own mind.'

<sup>3</sup> Cf. p. 59.

<sup>4</sup> I.e. resulting from control of the mind, purity here is both external and internal. And see p. 119.



dexterity<sup>1</sup>, not slinking away from battle, gifts, exercise of lordly power<sup>2</sup>, this is the natural duty of Kshatriyas. Agriculture, tending cattle, trade, (this) is the natural duty of Vaisyas. And the natural duty of Sûdras, too, consists in service. (Every) man intent on his own respective duties obtains perfection<sup>3</sup>. Listen, now, how one intent on one's own duty obtains perfection. Worshipping, by (the performance of) his own duty, him from whom all things proceed, and by whom all this is permeated, a man obtains perfection. One's duty, though defective, is better than another's duty well performed<sup>4</sup>. Performing the duty prescribed by nature, one does not incur sin. O son of Kuntî! one should not abandon a natural duty though tainted with evil; for all actions are enveloped by evil, as fire by smoke<sup>5</sup>. One who is self-restrained, whose understanding is unattached everywhere, from whom affections have departed, obtains the supreme perfection of freedom from action<sup>6</sup> by renunciation. Learn from me, only in brief, O son of Kuntî! how one who has obtained perfection attains the Brahman, which is the highest culmination of knowledge. A man possessed of a pure understanding, controlling his self by courage, discarding sound and other objects of sense, casting off

<sup>1</sup> I. e. in battle, Nîlakantha seems to say. Sâṅkara says it means ready resource whenever occasion arises.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. 'power to restrain people from going astray,' Nîlakantha.

<sup>3</sup> Eligibility for the path of knowledge.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. p. 56.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. p. 121; the evil appears to be the quality of 'fettering' the soul.

<sup>6</sup> Sîdhâra compares p. 65 (V, 13) and distinguishes this from p. 64 (V, 8 seq.) Sâṅkara says the perfection here spoken of is emancipation, and it is obtained by true knowledge.

affection and aversion ; who frequents clean places, who eats little, whose speech, body, and mind are restrained, who is always intent on meditation and mental abstraction<sup>1</sup>, and has recourse to unconcern, who abandoning egoism<sup>2</sup>, stubbornness, arrogance, desire, anger, and (all) belongings, has no (thought that this or that is) mine, and who is tranquil, becomes fit for assimilation with the Brahman. Thus reaching the Brahman<sup>3</sup>, and with a tranquil self, he grieves not, wishes not ; but being alike to all beings, obtains the highest devotion to me. By (that) devotion he truly understands who I am and how great. And then understanding me truly, he forthwith enters into my (essence). Even performing all actions, always depending on me, he, through my favour, obtains the imperishable and eternal seat. Dedicating in thought<sup>4</sup> all actions to me, he constantly given up to me, (placing) your thoughts on me, through recourse to mental abstraction. (Placing) your thoughts on me, you will cross over all difficulties by my favour. But if you will not listen through egotism<sup>5</sup>, you will be ruined. If entertaining egotism, you think that you may not fight, vain, indeed, is that resolution of yours. Nature<sup>6</sup> will constrain you. That, O son of Kuntī ! which through delusion you do not wish to do, you will do involuntarily,

---

<sup>1</sup> Abstraction is concentrated and exclusive meditation, Sāṅkara. The other commentators take *dhyanayoga* as meditation simply,—as treated of in chapter VI, says *Nīlakanṭha*.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 52.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. comprehending his identity with the Brahman.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. p. 55.

<sup>5</sup> Pride of learning and cleverness, or of piety. See p. 124, note 5.

<sup>6</sup> The nature of a Kṣatriya, Sāṅkara.

tied down by your own duty, flowing from your nature. The lord, O Arguna! is seated in the region of the heart<sup>1</sup> of all beings, turning round all beings (as though) mounted on a machine, by his delusion. With him, O descendant of Bharata! seek shelter in every way<sup>2</sup>; by his favour you will obtain the highest tranquillity, the eternal seat. Thus have I declared to you the knowledge more mysterious than any mystery. Ponder over it thoroughly, and then act as you like. Once more, listen to my excellent words—most mysterious of all. Strongly I like you, therefore I will declare what is for your welfare. On me (place) your mind, become my devotee, sacrifice to me, reverence me, and you will certainly come to me. I declare to you truly, you are dear to me. Forsaking all duties<sup>3</sup>, come to me as (your) sole refuge. I will release you from all sins. Be not grieved. This<sup>4</sup> you should never declare to one who performs no penance<sup>5</sup>, who is not a devotee<sup>6</sup>, nor to one who does not wait on (some preceptor)<sup>7</sup>, nor yet to one who calumniates me. He who, with the highest devotion<sup>8</sup> to me, will proclaim this supreme mystery among my devotees, will come to me, freed from (all) doubts. No one

<sup>1</sup> Svetâsvatara-upanishad, pp. 333-345; Ka/ho panishad, p. 157.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. p. 114; by thought, word, and deed.

<sup>3</sup> Of caste or order, such as Agnihotra and so forth.

<sup>4</sup> All that has been taught in the Gîtâ.

<sup>5</sup> Sîdhara renders this to mean, 'who performs no pious acts.'

<sup>6</sup> I. e. of God and a preceptor. Cf. last stanza of Svetâsvatara-upanishad.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. p. 62. Saṅkara says all these elements must co-exist to give eligibility.

<sup>8</sup> I. e. belief that in disseminating it, he is serving me. Cf. Ka/ho panishad, p. 120.

amongst men is superior to him in doing what is dear to me. And there will never be another on earth dearer to me than he. And he who will study this holy dialogue of ours, will, such is my opinion, have offered to me the sacrifice of knowledge<sup>1</sup>. And the man, also, who with faith and without carping will listen (to this), will be freed (from sin), and attain to the holy regions of those who perform pious acts<sup>2</sup>. Have you listened to this, O son of Prithâ ! with a mind (fixed) on (this) one point only? Has your delusion (caused) by ignorance been destroyed, O Dhanañgaya ?

Arguna said :

Destroyed is my delusion ; by your favour, O undegraded one ! I (now) recollect<sup>3</sup> myself. I stand freed from doubts<sup>4</sup>. I will do your bidding.

Saṅgaya said :

Thus did I hear this dialogue between Vâsudeva and the high-minded son of Prithâ, (a dialogue) wonderful and causing the hair to stand on end. By the favour of Vyâsa, I heard this highest mystery, (this) devotion<sup>5</sup>, from Kṛishṇa himself, the lord of the possessors of mystic power, who proclaimed it in person. O king ! remembering and (again) remembering this wonderful and holy dialogue of Kesava and Arguna, I rejoice over and over again. And remembering and (again) remembering that

<sup>1</sup> Which is the best of sacrifices ; see p. 62.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. p. 72.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. understand my real essence, what I am, &c.

<sup>4</sup> As to whether the battle was right or not.

<sup>5</sup> The work is so called, as it refers to devotion.

---

excessively \* wonderful form of Hari also, great is my amazement, O king<sup>1</sup> and I rejoice over and over again. Wherever (is) *Kṛishna*, the lord of the possessors of mystic power, wherever (is) the (great) archer, the son of *Prithâ*, there in my opinion (are) fortune, victory, prosperity<sup>1</sup>, and eternal justice.

---

<sup>1</sup> Prosperity is the greater development of fortune.



SANATSUGÂTÎYA.





# INTRODUCTION

## TO

### S A N A T S U G Â T Î Y A.

THE Sanatsugâtîya is, like the Bhagavadgîtâ, one of the numerous episodes of the Mahâbhârata<sup>1</sup>. It is true, that it has never commanded anything like that unbounded veneration which has always been paid in India to the Bhagavadgîtâ. Still it is sometimes studied even in our days, and it has had the high distinction of being commented on by the great leader of the modern Vedântic school—Sankarâçârya<sup>2</sup>. The Sanatsugâtîya purports to be a dialogue mainly between Sanatsugâta on the one side and Dhṛitarâshṭra on the other. Sanatsugâta, from whom it takes its name, is said to be identical with Sanatku-mâra, a name not unfamiliar to students of our Upanishad literature. And Dhṛitarâshṭra is the old father of those Kauravas who formed one of the belligerent parties in the bellum plusquam civile which is recorded in the Mahâbhârata. The connexion of this particular episode with the main current of the narrative of that epos is one of the loosest possible character—much looser, for instance, than that of the Bhagavadgîtâ. As regards the latter, it can fairly be contended that it is in accordance with poetical justice for Arguna to feel despondent and unwilling to engage in battle, after actual sight of ‘teachers, fathers, sons,’ and all the rest of them, arrayed in opposition to him; and that therefore it was necessary for the poet to adduce some specific explanation as to how Arguna was ultimately enabled to get over such natural scruples. But as regards the Sanatsugâtîya, even such a contention as this

---

<sup>1</sup> Mahâbhârata, Udyoga Parvan, Adhyâya 41-46.

<sup>2</sup> Mâdhavâçârya, in speaking of Sankara’s works, describes him as having commented on the Sanatsugâtîya, which is ‘far from evil (persons)’ [asatsudura]. Sankara-vigaya, chapter VI, stanza 62.

can have no place. For this is how the matter stands. In the course of the negotiations for an amicable arrangement<sup>1</sup> between the Pândavas and the Kauravas, Sañgaya, on one occasion, came back to Dhṛitarâshtra, with a message from the Pândavas. When he saw Dhṛitarâshtra, however, he said that he would deliver the message in the public assembly of the Kauravas the next morning, and went away after pronouncing a severe censure on Dhṛitarâshtra for his conduct. The suspense thus caused was a source of much vexation to the old man, and so he sent for Vidura, in order, as he expresses it, that Vidura might by his discourse assuage the fire that was raging within him. Vidura accordingly appears, and enters upon an elaborate prelection concerning matters spiritual, or, perhaps, more accurately quasi-spiritual, and at the outset of the Sanatsugâtîya he is supposed to have reached a stage where, as being born a Sûdra, he hesitates to proceed. After some discussion of this point, between Vidura and Dhṛitarâshtra, it is determined to call in the aid of Sanatsugâta, to explain the spiritual topics which Vidura felt a delicacy in dealing with; and Sanatsugâta is accordingly introduced on the scene in a way not unusual in our epic and purânic literature, viz. by Vidura engaging in some mystic process of meditation, in response to which Sanatsugâta appears. He is received then with all due formalities, and after he has had some rest, as our poem takes care to note, he is catechised by Dhṛitarâshtra; and with one or two exceptions, all the verses which constitute the Sanatsugâtîya are Sanatsugâta's answers to Dhṛitarâshtra's questions<sup>2</sup>.

This brief statement of the scheme of this part of the Mahâbhârata shows, as already pointed out, that the connexion of the Sanatsugâtîya with the central story of that epic is very loose indeed; and that it might have been entirely omitted without occasioning any æsthetical or other defect. And therefore, although there is nothing positive

<sup>1</sup> See p. 3 supra.

<sup>2</sup> After this dialogue is over, the dawn breaks, and Dhṛitarâshtra and the Kaurava princes meet in general assembly.

tending to prove the Sanatsugâtiya to be a later addition to the original epos, still the misgivings which are often entertained upon such points may well, in this case, be stronger than in the case of the Bhagavadgîtâ. The text, too, of the Sanatsugâtiya is not preserved in nearly so satisfactory a condition as that of the Gîtâ. I have had before me, in settling my text, the editions of the Mahâbhârata respectively printed and published at Bombay<sup>1</sup>, Calcutta, and Madras, and three MSS., one of which was most kindly and readily placed at my disposal by my friend Professor Râmkrishna Gopâl Bhândârkar; the second by another friend, Professor Âbâgî Vishnu Kâthavate; and the third was a copy made for me at Sâgar in the Central Provinces, through the good offices of a third friend, Mr. Vâman Mahâdeva Kolhaskar. The copy lent me by Professor Bhândârkar comes from Puza, and that lent by Professor Kâthavate also from Puza. This last, as well as the Sâgar copy, and the edition printed at Madras, contains the commentary of Saṅkarâkârya. And the text I have adopted is that which is indicated by the commentary as the text which its author had before him. But the several copies of the commentary differ so much from one another, that it is still a matter of some doubt with me, whether I have got accurately the text which Saṅkara commented upon. For instance, the Sâgar copy entirely omits chapter V, while the other copies not only give the text of that chapter, but also a commentary upon it which calls itself Saṅkarâkârya's commentary<sup>2</sup>. Again, take the stanzas which stand within brackets at pp. 167, 168<sup>3</sup> of our translation. There is in none of the copies we have, any commentary of Saṅkarâkârya on them. And yet the stanzas exist in the text of the Mahâbhârata as given in those copies which do contain Saṅkara's commentary. The matter is evidently one for further investigation. I have not, however, thought it

<sup>1</sup> This contains Nilakantha's commentary, but his text avowedly includes the text of Saṅkara, and verses and readings contained in more modern copies.

<sup>2</sup> The commentary on the sixth chapter, however, takes up the thread from the end of the fourth chapter.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 182, where one of the lines recurs.

absolutely necessary to make such an investigation for the purposes of the present translation. But to be on the safe side, I have retained in the translation everything which is to be found in those copies of the Sanatsugâtīya which also contain Śaṅkara's commentary. As to other stanzas—and there are some of this description—which other MSS. or commentators vouch for, but of which no trace is to be found in the MSS. containing Śaṅkara's commentary<sup>1</sup>, I have simply omitted them.

These facts show that, in the case of the Sanatsugâtīya, the materials for a trustworthy historical account of the work are not of a very satisfactory character. The materials for ascertaining its date and position in Sanskrit literature are, indeed, so scanty, that poor as we have seen the materials for the Bhagavadgītā to be, they must be called superlatively rich as compared with those we have now to deal with. As regards external evidence on the points now alluded to, the first and almost the last fact falling under that head, is the fact of the work being quoted from and commented upon by Śaṅkarâkṛya. In his commentary on the Svetâsvatara-upanishad<sup>2</sup>, Śaṅkara cites the passage about the flamingo at p. 189, introducing it with the words, 'And in the Sanatsugâta also.' In the same commentary some other passages from the Sanatsugâtīya are also quoted, but without naming the work except as a Smṛiti, and mixing up together verses from different parts of the work.

This is really all the external evidence, that I am aware of, touching the date of the Sanatsugâtīya. There is, however, one other point, which it is desirable to notice, though not, perhaps, so much because it is of any very great value in itself, as because it may hereafter become useful, should further research into the Mahâbhârata and other works yield the requisite information. There are, then, eight stanzas in the thirty-sixth, thirty-seventh, thirty-ninth, and fortieth chapters of the Udyoga Parvan of the Mahâbhâ-

<sup>1</sup> See note 1, p. 137.

<sup>2</sup> P. 283.

<sup>3</sup> P. 252. See, too, Sâṅkara Bhâṣyâ, p. 828.

rata (the Sanatsugâtiya commencing at the forty-first chapter), seven of which are quoted in the *Pañkatantra*<sup>1</sup>, and the eighth in the *Mahâbhâshya*<sup>2</sup> of Patañjali. Of course, it almost goes without saying, that neither the *Pañkatantra* nor the *Mahâbhâshya* mentions the source from which it derives the verses in question. But I do not think it unallowable to make the provisional assumption, that they were derived from the *Mahâbhârata*, so long as we cannot produce any other, and more likely, source. It is true, that Professor Weber has, in another connexion, impugned the cogency of this argument. He seems to think, that the probability—in the case he was actually dealing with—of the *Râmâyana* having borrowed from the *Mahâbhâshya*, is quite as strong as the probability of the *Mahâbhâshya* having borrowed from the *Râmâyana*<sup>3</sup>. And doubtless, he would by parity of reason contend, in the case before us, that the probabilities, as between the *Mahâbhârata* on the one hand, and the *Mahâbhâshya* and the *Pañkatantra* on the other, bear the same mutual relation. I cannot accept this view. I am not now concerned to discuss the merits of the conclusion in support of which Professor Weber has advanced this argument<sup>4</sup>. I am only considering, how far it affects the question now before us. And as to that question, I may say, that the *Pañkatantra* expressly introduces the stanzas now under consideration with some such expression as, 'For it has been said,' indicating clearly that it was there quoting the words of another<sup>5</sup>. And so, too, does the *Mahâbhâshya*,

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Koegarten's *Pañkatantra*, p. 28 (I, 28, Bombay S. C. ed.), with Udyoga Parvan, chap. XI, st. 7 (Bombay ed.); *Pañkatantra*, pp. 112 and 209 (II, 10, IV, 5, Bombay ed.), with Udyoga Parvan, chap. XXXVIII, 9, p. 35 (I, 57, Bombay ed.) with chap. XXXVI, st. 34; p. 140 (II, 40, Bombay ed.) with chap. XXXVII, st. 15; p. 160 (III, 62, Bombay ed.) with chap. XXXVII, st. 17, 18; p. 106 (II, 2, Bombay ed.) with chap. XXXVI, st. 59.

<sup>2</sup> Udyoga Parvan, chap. XXXVIII, st. 1, and *Mahâbhâshya* VI, 1-4, p. 35 (Banâras ed.)

<sup>3</sup> See Indian Antiquary IV, 247. The parallel from Mâdhava which Professor Weber adduces is quite inconclusive and as far as it goes appears to me to militate against the Professor's own view.

<sup>4</sup> I may, however, admit at once, that I ought not to have expressed myself as strongly as I did in the note which Professor Weber criticises

<sup>5</sup> See p. 203 infra.

where the passage we refer to runs as follows: '(It is) laid down, (that there is) a sin in one of tender age not rising to receive (an elderly person), and (that there is) merit in rising to receive. How? Thus, "The life-winds of a youth depart upwards, when an elderly man approaches (him). By rising to receive (him), and salutation, he obtains them again."' It appears to me, that the indications of this being a quotation in the Bhâshya are very strong. But apart from that, I do demur to the proposition, that the probabilities are equal, of a work like the Mahâbhârata or Râmâyana borrowing a verse from the Mahâbhâshya, and vice versa. It appears to me perfectly plain, I own, that the probability of a grammatical work like the Bhâshya borrowing a verse from a standard work like the Bhârata or Râmâyana for purposes of illustration is very much the stronger of the two. And this, quite independently of any inquiry as to whether the Bhâshya does or does not show other indications of acquaintance with the Bhârata or the Râmâyana.

If these arguments are correct, it seems to me that they carry us thus far in our present investigation—namely, that we may now say, that we have reason to believe some parts, at all events, of the thirty-sixth, thirty-seventh, thirty-eighth, and fortieth chapters of the Udyoga Parvan of the Mahâbhârata to have probably been in existence prior to the sixth century A.C.<sup>1</sup>; and that some parts of the thirty-seventh chapter were probably extant in the time of Patañjali, viz. the second century B.C.<sup>2</sup> Now, internal evidence does not yield any indications tending to show that the several chapters here referred to must have been prior in time to the chapters composing the Sanatsugâtiya, which come so soon after them in the Mahâbhârata. On the contrary, it is not too much to maintain, that to a certain extent the style and language of the Sanatsugâtiya is, if anything, rather indicative of its priority in time over the five chapters immediately preceding it. And, therefore, so far as this argument goes, it enables us—provisionally only, it must be

<sup>1</sup> See p. 29 supra.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 32 supra.

remembered—to fix the second century B.C. as a *terminus ad quem* for the date of the Sanatsugâtiya.

This is all the external evidence available for a discussion of the question—when the Sanatsugâtiya was composed. We now turn to the internal evidence. Standing by itself, internal evidence is not, in my opinion, of much cogency in any case. Still in ascertaining, as best we can, the history of our ancient literature, even this species of evidence is not to be despised; it must only be used and received with caution. Under this head, then, we may note first the persons who are supposed to take part in the dialogue. Sanatsugâta<sup>1</sup>—or Sanatkumâra—as already pointed out, is a name already familiar to the readers of one of our older Upanishads—the *Khândogya*. Dhṛitarâshtra is not known in the Upanishads, but he is an important personage in the epic literature. And it is to be remarked, that his character as disclosed in the Sanatsugâtiya is not at all similar to that which has attached itself to his name, alike in the later literature of our country, and in that popular opinion which was probably formed by this later literature. In the dialogue before us, he figures as an earnest inquirer after truth; he is described as the ‘talented king Dhṛitarâshtra;’ and is addressed by Sanatsugâta as, ‘O acute sir!’ ‘O learned person!’ True it is, that Nilakantha in one place, as we have noticed in our note there<sup>2</sup>, endeavours to bring out the later view of Dhṛitarâshtra’s character<sup>3</sup>; but it seems to me that that endeavour, based as it is on a forced and far-fetched interpretation of a single word in our poem, is an unsuccessful one. None of the questions, which Dhṛitarâshtra puts to Sanatsugâta in the course of their dialogue, indicates the avaricious old man who wished to deprive his innocent nephews of their just rights in the interests of his own wicked and misguided sons. They rather indicate the bona fide student of spiritual lore, and thus point to what is, perhaps, an earlier view of Dhṛitarâshtra’s character.

<sup>1</sup> See Hall’s *Sāṅkhyasāra*, preface, pp. 14, 15.

<sup>2</sup> P. 151, note 2.

<sup>3</sup> Nilakantha himself, however, treats Dhṛitarâshtra’s question later on as showing that he had attained indifference to worldly concerns. That question does not occur in Sankara’s text, but is given at p. 158 *infra*.

If we look next to the general style of this poem, we find that it has none of that elaboration which marks what I have called the age of Kāvya and Nāṭakas. The remarks on this topic in the Introduction to the Gîtâ apply pretty accurately to this work also. We observe here the same paucity of long-drawn compounds, the same absence of merely ornamental adjectives, the same absence of figures and tropes<sup>1</sup>; in one word, the same directness and simplicity of style. Furthermore, there is a somewhat greater want of finish about the syntax of our poem than there is even in the Gîtâ. Such constructions as we find *inter alia* at chapter II, stanza 2, or 25, or at chapter III, stanza 14, or chapter IV, stanza 12, or in the early verses of the last chapter, indicate a period in the history of the language, when probably the regulations of syntax were not quite thoroughly established in practice.

If we turn to the metre of the poem, an analogous phenomenon strikes us there. Similar irregularities in the collocation of long and short syllables, similar superfluities and deficiencies of syllables, meet us in the Sanatsugâtîya and the Bhagavadgîtâ. And in the former work, as in the latter, the irregularities are less observable in the Anushṭubh<sup>2</sup> than in the other metres used. Probably the explanation, apart from the great elasticity of that metre, is that the Anushṭubh had been more used, and had in consequence become comparatively more settled in its scheme even in practical composition.

Looking now more particularly to the language of the work before us, we find one word to be of most frequent occurrence, namely, the word *vai*, which we have rendered 'verily.' It is not a common word in the later literature, while in the Upanishad literature we meet with great frequency, not merely *vai*, but the words, which I think are cognate with it, *vâ* and *vâva*. The former word, indeed,

<sup>1</sup> The five similes which occur, and which are nearly all that occur, in the poem, are the very primitive ones—of the hunter, of water on grass, the tiger of straw, death eating men like a tiger, dogs eating what is vomited, a branch of a tree and the moon, and birds and their nests.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. as to this the *Nṛsiṃha Tâpinî*, p. 105.



appears to me to stand in some passages of the Upanishads for vai by euphonic alterations. Thus in the passage *tvam vâ aham asmi bhagavo devate, aham vai tvam asi*, it is difficult not to suppose that the *vâ* of the first part of the sentence is the same word as the *vai* of the second part, only altered according to the rules of Sandhi in Sanskrit.

A second point of similarity between the language of the Upanishads and that of the Sanatsugâtîya is to be found in the phrase, 'He who knows this becomes immortal.' This sentence, or one of like signification, is, as is well known, of common occurrence in the Upanishads and in the Brâhmaṇas. In the Bhagavadgîtâ, the verses towards the end, which come after Kṛishṇa's summing-up of his instruction, seem to be of a somewhat analogous, though in some respects different, nature. And in the Purâṇas we meet sometimes with elaborate passages extolling the merits of a particular rite, or a particular pilgrimage, and so forth. This form of the Phalasruti, as it is called, appears to have been developed in process of time from the minute germ existing in the Brâhmaṇas and the Upanishads. In the Sanatsugâtîya, however, we are almost at the beginning of those developments; indeed, the form before us is identically the same as that which we see in the works where it is first met with. It is a short sentence, which, though complete in itself, still appears merely at the end of another passage, and almost as a part of such other passage.

There is one other point of a kindred nature which it may be well to notice here. As in the Gîtâ, so in the Sanatsugâtîya, we meet with a considerable number of words used in senses not familiar in the later literature. They are collected in the Index of Sanskrit words in this volume; but a few remarks on some of them will not, it is thought, be entirely out of place here. The word *mârga*<sup>1</sup>—in the sense of 'worldly life'—is rather remarkable. Saṅkara renders it by 'the path of *samsâra*' or worldly life. And he quotes as a parallel the passage from the *Khândogya-*

<sup>1</sup> I give no references here, as they can be found in the Index of Sanskrit word, at the end of this volume.

upanishad which speaks of returning to the 'path.' There, however, Saṅkara explains it to mean the 'path by which the self returns to worldly life,' namely, from space to the wind and so forth into vegetables, and food, ultimately appearing as a fœtus. Another remarkable word is 'varga,' which occurs twice in the Sanatsugâtiya. Saṅkara and Nilakant̥ha differ in their explanations of it, and Nilakant̥ha indeed gives two different meanings to the word in the two passages where it occurs. We may also refer here specially to *utsa*, *ṛitvig*, and *matvâ*. In Bochtlingk and Roth's Lexicon the only passages cited under 'utsa' are from Vedic works, except two respectively from Susruta and the Dasakumâra-karita. One passage, however, there cited, viz. *Vishnoh padē parame madhva utsaḥ*, is plainly the original of the passage we are now considering. As to *ṛitvig* in the sense it bears here, we see, I think, what was the earlier signification of that word before it settled down into the somewhat technical meaning in which it is now familiar. And *matvâ* in the sense of 'meditating upon' is to be found in the Upanishads, but not, I think, in any work of the classical literature. These words, therefore, seem to indicate that the Sanatsugâtiya was composed at a stage in the development of the Sanskrit language which is a good deal earlier than the stage which we see completely reached in the classical literature.

Coming now to the matter of the Sanatsugâtiya, it appears to me, that we there see indications pointing in a general way to the same conclusion as that which we have here arrived at. There is, in the first place, a looseness and want of rigid system in the mode of handling the subject, similar to that which we have already observed upon as characterising the Bhagavadgītâ. There is no obvious bond of connexion joining together the various subjects discussed, nor are those subjects themselves treated after any very scientific or rigorous method. Again, if the fourth chapter is a genuine part of the Sanatsugâtiya, we have an elaborate repetition in one part, of what has been said in another part of the work, with only a few variations in words, and

perhaps fewer still in signification. As, however, I am not at present prepared to stand finally by the genuineness of that chapter, I do not consider it desirable to further labour this argument than to point out, that similar repetitions, on a smaller scale, perhaps, are not uncommon in our older literature<sup>1</sup>.

Coming now to the manner in which the Vedas are spoken of in the work before us, there are, we find, one or two noteworthy circumstances proper to be considered here. In the first place, we have the reference to the four Vedas together with *Ākhyānas* as the fifth Veda. This is in conformity with the old tradition recorded in the various works to which we have referred in our note on the passage. The mention of the *Atharva-veda*, which is implied in this passage, and expressly contained in another, might be regarded as some mark of a modern age. But without dwelling upon the fact, that the *Atharva-veda*, though probably modern as compared with the other Vedas, is still old enough to date some centuries before the Christian era<sup>2</sup>, it must suffice to draw attention here to the fact that the *Kāṇḍogya-upanishad* mentions that Veda, and it is not here argued that the *Sanatsugâtīya* is older than the *Kāṇḍogya-upanishad*. We have next to consider the reference to the *Sāman* hymns as 'vimala,' or pure. The point involved in this reference has been already sufficiently discussed in the Introduction to the *Gîtâ*<sup>3</sup>; and it is not necessary here to say more than that, of the two classes of works we have there made, the *Sanatsugâtīya* appears from the passage under discussion to rank itself with the class which is prior in date.

The estimate of the value of the Vedas which is implied in the *Sanatsugâtīya* appears to coincide very nearly with that which we have shown to be the estimate implied in the *Bhagavadgîtâ*. The Vedas are not here cast aside as useless any more than they are in the *Bhagavadgîtâ*. For, I do not think the word *Anrikas* which occurs in one passage of the work can be regarded really as referring to those

<sup>1</sup> See p. 181, note 1 infra.

<sup>2</sup> P. 19 supra

<sup>3</sup> Pp. 19, 20.

who entirely reject the Vedic revelation. But without going as far as that, the Sanatsugâtīya seems certainly to join the Bhagavadgītā in its protest against those men of extreme views, who could see nothing beyond the rites and ceremonies taught in the Vedas. A study of the Vedas is, indeed, insisted on in sundry passages of the Sanatsugâtīya. But it is equally maintained, that the performance of the ceremonies laid down in the Vedas is not the true means of final emancipation. It is maintained, that action done with any desire is a cause of bondage to worldly life; that the gods themselves are ordinary creatures who have reached a certain high position owing to the practice of the duties of Brahma-kârins, but that they are not only not superior to, but are really under the control of, the man who has acquired the true knowledge of the universal self. On all these points, we have opinions expressed in the Sanatsugâtīya, which conclusively establish an identity of doctrine as between the Upanishads and the Bhagavadgītā<sup>1</sup> on the one hand, and the Sanatsugâtīya on the other. Lastly, we have an explicit statement, that the mere study of Vedic texts avails nothing, and that sin is not to be got rid of by one who merely 'studies the *Rik* and the *Yagus* texts, and the *Sâma-veda*.' It is not necessary to repeat here the chronological deductions which may be based upon this relation between the Sanatsugâtīya and the Vedas. We have already argued in the Introduction to the Bhagavadgītā, that such a relation points to a period of Indian religious history prior to the great movement of Gautama Buddha<sup>2</sup>.

There is, however, this difference, perhaps, to be noted between the Gītā and the Sanatsugâtīya—namely, that the latter work seems to afford more certain indications of the recognition, at the date of its composition, of a *Gñānakānda* as distinguished from a *Karmakānda* in the Vedas, than, we have seen, are contained in the Bhagavadgītā<sup>3</sup>. The passage, for instance, which speaks of the *Khandas* as

<sup>1</sup> Cf. p. 16 *supra*.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. pp. 25, 26. "

<sup>3</sup> P. 17

referring 'of themselves' to the Brahman, and the passage which refers to an understanding of the Brahman by means of the Vedas, according to the principle of the moon and the branch—these seem rather to point to a portion of the Vedas which was regarded as giving instruction in true knowledge, as distinguished from merely laying down various sacrifices and ceremonies for special purposes. In fact, in one passage we have the germ of the whole Vedântic theory as afterwards settled. For there we are told, that sacrifices and penances are laid down as the preliminary steps towards the acquisition of true knowledge. By those sacrifices one is purified of one's sins, and then acquires a knowledge of the supreme self as described in the Vedas — which, I apprehend, must mean the Upanishads.

There is but one other point on which we need say anything further. And that is connected with the definition of a Brâhmaṇa. That definition appears to me, to point to an earlier stage in religious progress than is indicated in Âpastamba and Manu. The true Brâhmaṇa is he who is attached to the Brahman. Perhaps, this marks some little advance beyond the more general doctrine of the Gîtâ, but it is still very far short of the petrified doctrine, if I may so call it, of the later law-givers. The Brâhmaṇa has not yet degenerated into the mere receiver of fees and presents, but is still in possession of the truth.

We thus see, that the external and internal evidence bearing upon the question of the position of the Sanatsugâtiya in Sanskrit literature, seems to point to nearly the same period and place for it as for the Bhagavadgîtâ. It is plain enough, that the evidence under both heads is extremely scanty and meagre. But such as it is, it appears to us to justify a provisional conclusion, that the Sanatsugâtiya dates from a period prior to the rise of Buddhism, and forms part of that same movement in the religious history of ancient India of which the Gîtâ is another embodiment. More than this, we are not at present in a position to assert. To this extent, the evidence enables us, I think, to go. And we accordingly hold, that unless

other and further evidence requires a reversal of this judgment, the Sanatsugâtîya may be treated as a work nearly contemporary with the Bhagavadgîtâ, and occupying generally the same point of view.

One word, finally, about the translation. As stated already, the text adopted is that which appears to have been before Saṅkarâkârya. And the translation follows mainly his interpretations in his commentary. Sometimes we have followed *Nilakantha*, whose commentary has been consulted as well as a very incorrect copy of another commentary by one *Sarvagña Nârâyana*, contained in the MS. from *Puṇa* lent me by Professor *Bhândārkar*. In some places even the commentators have failed to clear up obscurities, and there we have given the best translation we could suggest, indicating the difficulties. There has been an endeavour made here, as in the case of the Bhagavadgîtâ, to keep the translation as close and faithful to the text as the exigencies of the English language permitted. The exegetical notes are mostly taken from the commentaries, even where the name of the commentator is not specified; while the references to parallel passages have been collected, mostly by myself, in the same way as in the case of the Bhagavadgîtâ.

# SANATSUGÂTÎYA.

## CHAPTER I.

Dhṛītarāshṭra said :

If, O Vidura! there is anything not (yet) said by you in (your) discourse, then do impart it to me who wish to hear, for you have spoken marvellous (things).

Vidura said :

O Dhṛītarāshṭra! the ancient youth Sanatsugâta, (otherwise called) Sanâtana<sup>1</sup>, who declared that death exists not—he, O descendant of Bharata! the best of all talented men, will explain all the doubts of your mind, both those (which are) secret<sup>2</sup>, and those openly declared.

Dhṛītarāshṭra said :

What, do you not yourself know more about this (subject), that Sanâtana should explain (it) to me? Explain (it) yourself, O Vidura! if there is any remnant of intelligence (left) in you.

---

<sup>1</sup> So Nilakanṭha. Sankara says Sanatsugâta is Sanatkumâra, and the component parts of the name he paraphrases by 'born from Brahman.' For Sanâtana, see *Bṛhadâraṇyaka*, p. 506, and note 1, p. 141 supra.

<sup>2</sup> I.e. relating to subjects which may be freely discussed by all, and those which may not. Nilakanṭha adopts a different reading, which he interprets to mean 'doctrines exoteric and esoteric,' e. g. self-restraint, &c., and the acquisition of mystic power, &c., respectively. The expression 'doubts of the mind' occurs, however, further on.

Vidura said :

I am born of a Sûdra womb, and do not like to say more than what (*I have said*). But the intelligence of that youth, I believe to be eternal<sup>1</sup>. He who has come of a Brâhmaṇa womb, even though he may proclaim a great mystery, does not thereby become liable to the censure of the gods. Therefore do I say this to you.

Dhṛitarâshṭra said :

Do you, O Vidura ! speak to the ancient Sanâtana for me, so that there may be a meeting even here, between (myself in) this body (and him).

Vaisampâyaṇa<sup>2</sup> said :

(Then) Vidura meditated on that sage whose vows are laudable<sup>3</sup>. And he, too, O descendant of Bharata<sup>4</sup> knowing of such meditation, made his appearance. And he<sup>4</sup>, too, received him with the ceremonies prescribed in the ordinances. After he had been comfortably seated, and had taken rest, Vidura then spoke to him : 'Venerable sir ! there is some doubt in Dhṛitarâshṭra's mind, which cannot

<sup>1</sup> I. e., I suppose, never-failing, and such as can deal with all sorts of topics. Sanatkumâra, it need scarcely be stated, is the teacher of Nârada in the famous dialogue in the *Āṇḍogyopaniṣad*, p. 473.

<sup>2</sup> Vaisampâyaṇa is the narrator of the grand story of which pieces like the present form parts.

<sup>3</sup> The reading is sometimes different, so as to mean 'of rigid vows,' as at *Gîtâ*, p. 61 *supra*.

<sup>4</sup> The pronouns here are too numerous. Does 'he' here refer to Dhṛitarâshṭra ? Vidura seems more likely, though the express mention of him in the next sentence might be treated as pointing the other way.



be explained by me. Do you be pleased to explain (it) to him. Hearing it (explained), this lord of men may cross beyond all misery, so that gain and loss <sup>†</sup>, (what is) agreeable and (what is) odious, old age and death, fear and vindictiveness, hunger and thirst, frenzy and worldly greatness, disgust and also laziness, desire and wrath, ruin and prosperity, may not trouble him.'

## CHAPTER II.

Vaishampâya said :

Then the talented king, Dhṛitarâshṭra, bowed <sup>2</sup> to those words uttered by Vidura, and <sup>†</sup> in a secluded place <sup>3</sup>, interrogated Sanatsugâta regarding the highest knowledge <sup>4</sup>, wishing to become (a) high-souled (man) .

Dhṛitarâshṭra said :

O Sanatsugâta ! which of the two is correct, your teaching <sup>5</sup>, about which I have heard, that death exists not, or that the gods and demons practised

<sup>1</sup> Comp. Gîtâ passim ; diss. ist, scil. that resulting from a general dissatisfaction with everything. As to 'ruin and prosperity,' Nilakantha adds, 'and their causes, sin and merit.'

<sup>2</sup> Literally 'respected.' Nilakantha says it means 'rejoiced over,' for Dhṛitarâshṭra thought, that in spite of his treachery he was safe, as death was taught by Sanatsugâta to have no existence.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. free from the presence of ignorant and vulgar people. Cf. Gîtâ, p. 68 supra.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. knowledge concerning the supreme Self.

<sup>5</sup> Sankara's construction seems different, but is not quite clear. He says, 'wishing to become—Brahman—the meaning is wishing to acquire the self lost through ignorance'

<sup>6</sup> I. e. imparted to your pupils, Sankara adds ; 'heard,' scil. from Vidura.

<sup>7</sup> The construction is imperfect, but the sense is clear. Is your

the life of Brahmaçârins<sup>1</sup>, for freedom from death?

Sanatsugâta said :

Some (say), that freedom from death (results) from action<sup>2</sup>; and others that death exists not. Hear me explain (this), O king! have no misgiving about it<sup>3</sup>. Both truths, O Kshatriya! have been current from the beginning<sup>4</sup>. The wise maintain what (is called) delusion (to be) death. I<sup>5</sup> verily call heedlessness death, and likewise I call freedom from heedlessness immortality. Through heedlessness, verily, were the demons<sup>6</sup> vanquished; and through freedom

view correct, or the view involved in the practice of gods and demons?

<sup>1</sup> See *Gitâ*, p. 69 *supra*, *Kaṭhopanishad*, p. 102, *Prasna*, p. 162. As to the gods being afraid of death see *Aṅgandogya*, p. 50, and *Nṛsiṃha Tâpni*, p. 32, and as to gods and demons practising the life of Brahmaçârins, see *Aṅgandogya*, p. 571, and cf. *Bṛhadâraṇyaka*, p. 964.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. action prescribed in the Vedas.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. as to how I shall be able to reconcile the seeming contradiction between the 'two truths.'

<sup>4</sup> I. e. of creation.

Sanatsugata says he differs from 'the wise,' delusion = thinking the not-self to be the self, heedlessness = falling off from one's natural condition is the Brahman — which is the cause of delusion (Sankara). See p. 153 *infra*, *Kaṭh*, p. 152, and *Taittirîya-upanishad* p. 80.

<sup>5</sup> Sankara suggests that demons might mean creatures attached to worldly objects and gods those who are pleased in their own self; and he cites a stanza in support of this suggestion. The allusion, however, seems to be plainly to the story at *Aṅgandogya*, p. 571 *seq.*, where the idea and expression of 'being vanquished' also occurs (p. 583). That word Sankara interprets in connexion with his suggested interpretation to mean 'are born in lower species.' See *Aṅgandogya*, p. 585, and *Maitrî*, p. 211, about asuras or demons. It is interesting to note that in the Introduction to the *Mahâbhâshya*, there is an allusion to a story of the 'demons' being 'vanquished' in consequence of their grammatical blunders.

from heedlessness the gods attained to the Brahman. Death, verily, does not devour living creatures like a tiger; for, indeed, his form is not to be perceived. Some<sup>1</sup> say that death is different from this, (named) Yama, who dwells in the self<sup>2</sup>; the (practice of the) life of Brahmaçârins (being) immortality. That god governs his kingdom in the world of the *Pitris*, (being) good to the good, and not good to (those who are) not good. That death, (or) heedlessness, develops in men as desire, and afterwards as wrath, and in the shape of delusion<sup>3</sup>. And then travelling in devious paths<sup>4</sup> through egoism, one does not attain to union<sup>5</sup> with the self. Those who are deluded by it<sup>6</sup>, and who remain under its influence, depart from this (world), and there again fall down<sup>7</sup>. Then the deities<sup>8</sup> gather around them. And then he undergoes death after death<sup>9</sup>. Being attached to the fruit of action, on action presenting itself, they follow after it<sup>10</sup>, and do not cross

<sup>1</sup> Those deluded by worldly objects, 'this' means 'heedlessness.'

Sankara cites a stanza from *Munu*, which says that king Yama Vaivasvata dwells in the heart of every one. Cf. *Āitareya-upanishad*, p. 187. The following clause he understands to contain two epithets of Yama, meaning 'immortal, and intent on the Brahman.' I follow *Nīlakantha*, but not very confidently.

Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 57. Here we have the developments, the varying forms, of death or heedlessness.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. paths contrary to *Śruti* and *Smṛiti*.

Concentration of mind on the self or Brahman.

I. e. the egoism spoken of before.

<sup>7</sup> I. e. to this mortal world. Cf. *Gîtâ* p. 84, and *Bṛhadâranyaka*, pp. 855, 856. There = from the next world. Sankara says, 'having lived there.'

<sup>8</sup> I. e. the senses. Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 123, and inter alia *Īsopanishad*, p. 10.

<sup>9</sup> Cf. *Kaṭha*, p. 129, and *Bṛhadâranyaka*, p. 889.

<sup>10</sup> I. e. the fruit. Cf. *Kaṭha*, p. 155, and *Mundaka*, p. 317.

beyond death. And the embodied (self), in consequence of not understanding union<sup>1</sup> with the real entity, proceeds on all hands<sup>2</sup> with attachment to enjoyments. That<sup>3</sup>, verily, is the great source of delusion to the senses; for by contact<sup>4</sup> with unreal entities, his migrations<sup>5</sup> are (rendered) inevitable; because having his inner self contaminated by contact with unreal entities, he devotes himself to objects of sense on all sides, pondering on them (only). (That) pondering, verily, first ruins<sup>6</sup> him; and soon afterwards desire and wrath, after attacking him. These<sup>7</sup> lead children to death. But sensible men cross beyond death by their good sense. He who pondering (on the self) destroys<sup>8</sup> (the) fugitive (objects of sense), not even thinking of them through contempt (for them), and who being possessed of knowledge destroys desires in this way, becomes, as it were, the death of death (itself), and swallows (it) up<sup>9</sup>. The being who

<sup>1</sup> I. e. its identity with the Brahman.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. in various forms of life, *Nilakantha*.

<sup>3</sup> The going about in search of enjoyments.

<sup>4</sup> The contact leads to pondering on them, and that to desire, &c., as described further on.

<sup>5</sup> Through various lives. Birth and death are certain for him.

<sup>6</sup> I. e. causes oblivion of his real nature, *Saṅkara*. Cf. the whole train of cause and effect at *Gîtâ*, p. 50 *supra*.

<sup>7</sup> I. e. the pondering, desire, wrath, &c. As to 'children,' cf. *Kaṭha*, pp. 96 and 123, where *bâla* is contrasted with *dhîra*, as here. The 'good sense' is of help in withstanding the temptations of worldly objects.

<sup>8</sup> Destroys=abandons; pondering, just before this, is rendered by *Saṅkara* to mean 'thinking of the objects as transient, impure,' &c.

<sup>9</sup> *Saṅkara* cites on this a stanza of unknown authorship, which says, 'The learned and clever man who knows the self, and by discrimination destroys all objects of sense, is said to be the death of death.' See too p. 178 *infra*.

pursues desires, is destroyed (in pursuing) after the desires<sup>1</sup>. But casting away desires, a being gets rid of all taint<sup>2</sup> whatever. This body, void of enlightenment<sup>3</sup>, seems (to be) a hell for (all) beings. Those who are avaricious run about<sup>4</sup>, going headlong to a ditch. A man, O Kshatriya! who contemns everything else<sup>5</sup> learns nothing. To him (the body is) like a tiger made of straw<sup>6</sup>. And this internal self (joined to) delusion and fear<sup>7</sup> in consequence of wrath and avarice, within your body,—that verily is death<sup>8</sup>. Understanding death<sup>9</sup> to be thus produced, and adhering to knowledge, one is not afraid of death<sup>10</sup> in this (world).<sup>\*</sup> In his province death is destroyed, as a mortal (is destroyed) on arriving in the province of death.

Dhṛitarāshṭra said :

'The good, eternal, and most holy worlds<sup>11</sup>, which

<sup>1</sup> On this *Nīlakanṭha* quotes these lines, 'The antelope, elephant, butterfly, bee, and fish—these five are destroyed by the five,' i.e. the five objects of sense, sound, &c. See *Sānti Parvan* (*Mokṣa Dharma*), chap. 174, st. 45.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. misery, *Nīlakanṭha* = merit or sin, *Saṅkara*.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. void of discrimination between the real and unreal, *Nīlakanṭha*; result of ignorance, *Saṅkara*. 'A hell, as being full of filth,' says *Saṅkara*, 'such as phlegm, blood, excursions.' Cf. *Maitrī*, p. 48.

<sup>4</sup> As blind men groping about fall into a ditch, so do these, *Saṅkara*.

<sup>5</sup> I. e. other than the sensual objects he loves; 'learns nothing' about the supreme Self which he disregards.

<sup>6</sup> Useless for any good purpose.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. *Taittirīya-upanishad*, p. 102.

<sup>8</sup> As being ruinous to oneself. *Saṅkara* compares *Gītā*, p. 68. Cf. also *Taittirīya-upanishad*, p. 103, and see *Bṛhadāraṇyaka*, p. 61.

<sup>9</sup> I. e. heedlessness and its developments as stated.

<sup>10</sup> *Saṅkara* cites on this *Taittirīya-upanishad*, p. 78.

<sup>11</sup> Such as *Satyaloka*, &c.\*

are mentioned (as attainable) by the twice-born by means of worship<sup>1</sup>, those, say the Vedas, are the highest aim<sup>2</sup>. How is it, then, that one who understands this does not resort to action?

Sanatsugâta said :

(Thinking) so, an ignorant man does resort to action. The Vedas likewise do lay down various benefits<sup>3</sup> (for him). But that<sup>4</sup> (man) comes not hither<sup>5</sup>. (Becoming) the supreme self<sup>6</sup>, he attains the supreme, by the (right) path destroying the wrong paths<sup>7</sup>.

Dhṛitarâshtra said :

Who<sup>8</sup> is it that constrains this unborn primeval (self), if it is (itself) all this severally<sup>9</sup>? And what

<sup>1</sup> Gyotish/oma. Asvamedha, and other rites.

<sup>2</sup> As leading to final emancipation.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. objects for which various ceremonies (or 'actions') should be performed.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. the man of knowledge.

<sup>5</sup> I. e. into the sphere of action. Cf. Gîtâ, p. 48.

<sup>6</sup> Knowing the supreme self is identical with becoming the supreme self, *Mundaka*, p. 323.

<sup>7</sup> I. e. getting rid of the paths which keep one away from the Brahman by means of contemplation of the Brahman, &c. *Nîlakantha* renders 'right path' to mean the Sushumna passage by which the soul proceeds to final emancipation, see *Khândogya*, p. 570; *Kaṭha*, p. 157.

<sup>8</sup> Saṅkara says : 'Having shown that true death is heedlessness, and having shown that heedlessness in its forms of anger &c. is the cause of all evil, and having also shown that death is destroyed by true knowledge, and having shown further that heaven &c. are really not man's highest goal; the author has also implied the unity of the supreme and individual self. On that arises a doubt, which is stated in this passage.'

<sup>9</sup> All this=all the developments of the Brahman, i. e. space, wind, fire, water, earth, vegetation, food, living creatures; see *Taittiriyaopaniṣad*, p. 68.

has it to do, or what is its unhappiness<sup>1</sup>? Tell me all that accurately, O learned person!

Sanatsugâta said:

There is great danger<sup>2</sup> in attributing distinctions to it. The everlasting<sup>3</sup> (principles) exist by connexion with the beginningless<sup>4</sup> (principle). So that his greatness is not lost at all<sup>5</sup>, and beings exist by connexion with the beginningless<sup>4</sup> (principle). That which is the real—the supreme Being<sup>5</sup>—is eternal. He creates the universe by means of changes<sup>7</sup>, for such is his power held to be; and for such connexions of things the Vedas are (authority)<sup>8</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> What is the purpose of its existence, and what misery does it undergo on entering the course of worldly life?

<sup>2</sup> 'The danger,' says Saṅkara, 'is that of contravening Vedic texts such as "I am the Brahman," "Thou art that," &c.' May it not rather be that pointed out at Kaṭhopanishad, p. 129, viz. never attaining final emancipation? Cf. also Nṛsiṃha Tâpinî, p. 223.

<sup>3</sup> The individual selfs, Saṅkara.

<sup>4</sup> Nature or mâयâ.

<sup>5</sup> The appearance of degradation to an inferior state being delusive.

<sup>6</sup> The original word implies the possession of aisvarya, dharma, yasas, śrî, vairâgya, moksha. See Svetâsvatara, p. 329 (where the list is slightly different). For another definition, see Maitrî, p. 6 (gloss).

<sup>7</sup> See note 9, p. 156.

<sup>8</sup> Saṅkara says: 'The question of Dhṛitarâsh/ra having suggested a difference between two principles, one of which constrains, and the other of which is constrained, the answer is—Such a difference ought not to be alleged, as it involves danger.' Then the question arises, How is the difference, which does appear, to be explained? The reply is, It is due to the beginningless principle—delusion or ignorance. The next sentence shows that the universe as it appears is also a result of delusion.' Nîlakantha says expressly, changes=delusion. He renders the original which we have translated by 'beginningless' first, to mean 'collection of objects of enjoyments.' Saṅkara's explanation seems tautological as regards the words 'connexion with the beginningless,' which occur twice in the above. Nîla-

Dhr̥itarāsh̥tra said :

Since some practise piety<sup>1</sup> in this world, and some likewise practise impiety in this world ; is the piety destroyed by the sin, or else does the piety destroy sin ?

Sanatsugâtā said :

Whichever<sup>2</sup> he adheres to, the man of understanding always destroys both by means of knowledge; (that is) settled<sup>3</sup>. Likewise, in the other case<sup>4</sup>, the embodied (self) obtains merit; and to such a one sin (also) accrues; (that too is) settled<sup>5</sup>. Departing (from this world), he enjoys by his actions both (kinds of) fruit, which are not enduring<sup>6</sup>—of actions (which are) pure, and of (those which are) sinful. The man of understanding casts aside sin by piety in this (world), for know that his piety is more powerful<sup>6</sup>. Those Brâhmaṇas, in whom there is emulation<sup>7</sup> about (their) piety, as there is in strong men about (their) strength, after departing from this world, become glorious in heaven<sup>8</sup>. And

*kantha's* is not quite clear. May the expression on the second occasion mean, that the connexion by which beings are stated before to exist has had no beginning—has existed from eternity ? The translation should then run thus : 'And beings exist by a connexion which had no beginning ;' (see Sâṁkhya Bhâṣya, p. 494.) Connexions of things=creation of universe by his power.

<sup>1</sup> E. g. Agnishōma, &c., Saṅkara.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. impiety or piety, sin or merit.

<sup>3</sup> In *Sūtrīs* and *Smṛitis*, which Saṅkara quotes. *Khândogya*, p. 622 ; *Mundaka*, p. 309 ; *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 911. See, too, *Maitrî*, p. 131.

<sup>4</sup> Of the man devoid of knowledge.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 76, and *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 636.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 164, note 9 *infra*.

<sup>7</sup> The feeling of one's own superiority over others in piety.

<sup>8</sup> 'In the shape of Nakshatras,' says Saṅkara, which is not quite intelligible. See *Khândogya*, p. 258, and *Anugîtâ* *infra*, p. 240.



to those in whom there is no emulation about (their) piety, that (piety) is a means of (acquiring) knowledge<sup>1</sup>. Such Brâhmanas released from this (world), go to the heaven which is free from the threefold source of pain<sup>2</sup>. People who understand the Vedas call his conduct good. (But) people closely connected<sup>3</sup>, as well as strangers, do not pay much regard to him. Wherever he may believe food and drink for a Brâhmana to exist in abundance, like water on grass in the autumn, there would he live and not be vexed<sup>4</sup>. (To him) only that person is good, and no other (as a companion), who does nothing in excess, and who occasions fear and injury to a taciturn man<sup>5</sup>. And his food is acceptable to the good, who does not vex the self of a taciturn man, and who does not destroy the property of a Brâhmana<sup>6</sup>. A Brâhmana should hold, that living in the midst of kinsmen, his actions should be always unknown<sup>7</sup>; and he should not

<sup>1</sup> According to the Vedântic theory, the acts of piety purify the inner man, and are thus a stepping-stone to knowledge. See Introduction, p. 147 supra. Cf. Gîtâ, p. 122; and *Bṛhadâraṇyaka*, p. 899.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. physical, mental, and such as is caused by superhuman agency. This is Saṅkara's explanation. It is somewhat far-fetched, but I can find none better. Cf. Gîtâ, p. 49. And see also *Bṛhadâraṇyaka*, p. 876, and the commentary of Saṅkara there with Ānandagiri's gloss.

<sup>3</sup> E. g. wife, children, &c.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. vexed as to how his livelihood is to be earned, &c.

<sup>5</sup> Excess, e. g. too much obsequiousness towards a 'taciturn man,' owing to his holiness, &c. Taciturn man = ascetic. Injury = disrespect, &c. Perhaps the protest against worldliness is here carried to an extreme. Saṅkara cites *Manu* as a parallel, 'A Brâhmana should be afraid of (worldly) respect as of poison.'

<sup>6</sup> E. g. the Kusa grass, deerskin, &c., mentioned at Gîtâ, p. 68.

<sup>7</sup> I. e. he should not parade his actions. Saṅkara compares *Vasiṣṭha* and a Vedic text. See, too, the quotation at *Taitt. Âraṇ.* p. 902.

think<sup>1</sup> (about them). What Brâhmana ought to think of the inner self, which is void of symbols<sup>2</sup>, immovable, pure, and free from all pairs of opposites, in this way<sup>3</sup>? What sin is not committed by that thief, who steals away his own self<sup>4</sup>, who regards his self as one thing, when it is a different thing. The far-seeing Brâhmana, who knows the Brahman, is not wearied<sup>5</sup>, he receives nothing<sup>6</sup>; he is honoured, free from trouble<sup>7</sup>, and wise, but acts as if he was not wise<sup>8</sup>. As dogs eat what is vomited, so do they, enjoying their own bravery<sup>9</sup>, eat what is vomited, always with disaster (to themselves). Those twice-born persons, who are not

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 103. Saṅkara suggests an alternative explanation of this stanza, which will make it mean that one performing the operations of the senses, should devote oneself nevertheless to the unknown principle, and not consider the senses to be the self.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. beyond the reach of inference; 'subtle,' says Saṅkara. Cf. *Svetâsvatara*, p. 364; *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 855; *Maitrî*, p. 182; and *Kaṭha*, p. 149, where Saṅkara suggests a somewhat different meaning. As to immovable, cf. *Îsa*, p. 10, and Gîtâ, p. 104. Saṅkara renders it by 'void of activity;' and pure he paraphrases by 'free from ignorance and other taints.'

<sup>3</sup> It is difficult to say what 'in this way' refers to. Saṅkara renders it by 'as possessing qualities appertaining to the two kinds of body.' On Saṅkara's suggested meaning of the stanza preceding (see note 1), it would refer to the confusion of the senses with the self.

<sup>4</sup> Such a person is called a destroyer of his own self at *Îsopaniṣad*, p. 9.

<sup>5</sup> I. e. by the troubles of worldly life.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. 'without belongings' at Gîtâ, p. 128.

<sup>7</sup> Anger and other obstacles to concentration of mind.

<sup>8</sup> I. e. unintelligent. The text of *Vasishṭha* referred to in note 7, p. 159, says he should act like an unintelligent man. Cf. also *Gauḍapâda-kârikâs*, p. 443, and *Sâṁkhya Bhâṣya*, p. 1041.

<sup>9</sup> I. e. singing the praises of their own greatness and worth, instead of keeping their 'conduct unknown.'

first<sup>1</sup> in respect of human wealth, but who are first in the Vedas<sup>2</sup>, are unconquerable, not to be shaken<sup>3</sup>; they should be understood to be forms of the Brahman. Whosoever may in this (world) know all the gods<sup>4</sup>—doers of favours—he is not equal to a Brâhmana, (nor even) he<sup>5</sup> for whom he exerts himself. The man who makes no efforts<sup>6</sup>, and is respected, does not, being respected, think himself respected<sup>7</sup>, nor does he become vexed in consequence of disrespect. One who is respected<sup>8</sup> should think it to be a natural operation of people, like their opening or closing of the eyelids, that the learned respect him in this world. One who is not respected should think, that the deluded people who do not understand piety, and who are devoid of (knowledge of) the world and the Sâstras, will never respect one who is worthy of respect. Respect and taciturnity<sup>9</sup>, verily, never dwell together; for this world is (the field) for respect, the next for taciturnity, as is understood<sup>10</sup>. For worldly wealth dwells in the

<sup>1</sup> Highly esteemed for or strongly attached to, Saṅkara. Human wealth = wife, offspring, property, &c. Cf. *Khândogya*, p. 319; *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 262.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. veracity and other duties taught by the Vedas.

<sup>3</sup> 'They need fear nought,' says Nīlakanṭha.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. may sacrifice to them, Saṅkara.

<sup>5</sup> Not even the deity to whom the sacrifice is offered is equal to one who knows the Brahman. Cf. *Taittirīya*, p. 23, and *Anugītā*, p. 250.

<sup>6</sup> I. e. one who is 'taciturn' and does not parade his greatness.

<sup>7</sup> He does not care for the respect shown him.

<sup>8</sup> Because he knows the Brahman.

<sup>9</sup> I. e. restraint of all senses, not of speech only. For the contrast compare that between *sreya* and *preya* at *Kaṭha*, p. 92.

<sup>10</sup> I. e. by all men of understanding. Saṅkara's rendering is different: 'The next, which is known as *Tad*, is for taciturnity.' He cites for this *Gītā*, p. 120.

sphere of respect<sup>1</sup>, and that, too, is an obstacle<sup>2</sup>. While the Brahmic wealth<sup>3</sup>, O Kshatriya! is difficult to be attained by any one devoid of knowledge. The ways (to it) are stated by the good to be of various descriptions, and difficult to reach—truth, straightforwardness, modesty<sup>4</sup>, restraint (of senses), purity, knowledge, which are the six impediments (in the way) of respect and delusion.

### CHAPTER III.

Dhṛitarâshṭra said :

Who possesses this taciturnity<sup>5</sup>, and which of the two<sup>6</sup> is taciturnity? Describe, O learned person! the condition of taciturnity here. Does a learned man reach taciturnity<sup>7</sup> by taciturnity? And how, O sage! do they practise taciturnity in this world?

<sup>1</sup> I. e. they both follow on devotion to worldly life.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. in the way to final emancipation.

<sup>3</sup> The enjoyment of supreme felicity, Brahmananda (Sāṅkara); the greatness consisting of a knowledge of *Rik*, Yagus, Sâman, and the substance of their teaching, which is worthy of a Brâhmana (Nīlakanṭha). See, too, Anugītā, p. 232.

<sup>4</sup> Modesty=being ashamed of doing wrong; restraint (of senses) =mental restraint; and purity is both internal and external,—Sāṅkara; knowledge is, of course, knowledge of the Brahman.

<sup>5</sup> I. e. that spoken of in the last chapter.

<sup>6</sup> Viz. mere silence, or the contemplation of the self after restraining all the senses. In the *Bṛhadâraṇyaka-upanishad*, Sāṅkara (p. 605) renders the original word, *mauna*, to mean, 'The fruit of the destruction of the consciousness of anything other than the self. And his commentator makes it clearer thus: 'The conviction in the mind that one is the self—the supreme Brahman—and that there is nothing else existing but oneself.'

<sup>7</sup> I. e. the highest seat—the Brahman; for mind, sense, &c. are all non-existent there. Cf. *Kaṭha*, p. 151, and *Maitrî*, p. 161.

Sanatsugâta said :

Since the Vedas, together with the mind <sup>1</sup>, fail to attain to him, hence (is he) taciturnity <sup>2</sup>—he about whom the words of the Vedas were uttered <sup>3</sup>, and who, O king! shines forth as consubstantial <sup>4</sup> with them.

Dhṛitarâshṭra said :

Does <sup>5</sup> the twice-born person who studies the *Rik* and the Yagur texts, and the Sâma-veda, committing sinful (acts), become tainted, or does he not become tainted ?

Sanatsugâta said :

Not the Sâman texts, nor yet the *Rik* texts, nor the Yagur texts <sup>6</sup> save him, O acute sir! from sinful

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Kenopanishad, p. 39; *Kaṭha*, p. 152; *Taittirîya*, p. 119.

<sup>2</sup> 'Taciturnity is his name,' says *Nilakanṭha*.

<sup>3</sup> Or, says *Śaṅkara*, 'who is the author of the Vedas.'

<sup>4</sup> I. e. 'with the Vedas,' says *Nilakanṭha*, Om, the quintessence of the Vedas, being a name of the Brahman (as to which cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 79, and *Maitrî*, p. 84). *Śaṅkara* takes the whole expression to mean *gyotirmaya*, consisting of light. *Nilakanṭha* says this stanza answers the five following questions put in the stanza preceding, viz. of what use is taciturnity? which of the two is taciturnity? &c., as above. The first four questions are answered by the first two lines of this stanza—the substance of the answer being, that the use of taciturnity is to attain the seat which is not to be grasped even by the mind, that taciturnity includes both restraint of mind and of the external senses. By means of such restraint, the external and internal worlds cease to be perceived as existing, and the highest goal is attained.

<sup>5</sup> This question arises naturally enough on *Nilakanṭha*'s interpretation of the preceding stanza, the meaning of which is in substance that the Vedas cannot grasp the Brahman fully, but they are of use towards a rudimentary comprehension of it, as is said further on, see p. 172 *infra*.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. *Svetâsvatara-upanishad*, p. 339; see, too, *Nṛsiṃha Tâpinî*, pp. 81-98.

has for its root that penance about which you question me. By penance<sup>1</sup>, those conversant with the Vedas attained immortality, after departing from this world.

Dhṛitarâshṭra said :

I have heard about penance free from sin, O Sanatsugâta ! Tell me what is the sin (connected) with penance, so that I may understand the eternal mystery<sup>2</sup>.

Sanatsugâta said :

The twelve beginning with wrath, and likewise the seven cruelties, are the defects (connected) with it; and there are (stated) in the Sâstras twelve merits (connected) with it, beginning with knowledge, which are known to the twice-born, and may be developed. Wrath, desire<sup>3</sup>, avarice, delusion<sup>4</sup>, craving<sup>5</sup>, mercilessness, censoriousness, vanity, grief<sup>6</sup>, attachment<sup>7</sup>, envy<sup>8</sup>, reviling others—these twelve should always be avoided by a man of high quali-

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *Bṛhadâraṇyaka*, p. 899. Tapas is variously rendered. See inter alia, *Prasna*, pp. 162-170, *Śvetâsvatara*, p. 307; *Mundaka*, pp. 270-280, 311-314, *Khândogya*, p. 136, *Anugîtâ*, pp. 247, 339.

<sup>2</sup> I e. *Brahma-vidyâ*, or science of the Brahman, *Nīlakantha*; the Brahman itself, *Sankara*.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. lust.

<sup>4</sup> Want of discrimination between right and wrong.

<sup>5</sup> Desire to taste worldly objects.

<sup>6</sup> For the loss of anything desired.

<sup>7</sup> Desire to enjoy worldly objects. The difference between this and craving, according to *Sankara*, appears to be between merely tasting and continual enjoyment. According to *Nīlakantha*, the former is a desire which is never contented, the latter is merely a general liking.

<sup>8</sup> Impatience of other people's prosperity; censoriousness being the pointing out of flaws in other people's merits; and reviling being an ignoring of the merits and merely abusing.

fications<sup>1</sup>. These, O king of kings! attend each and every man, wishing to find some opening<sup>2</sup>, as a hunter (watches) animals. [Boastful, lustful, haughty, irascible, unsteady<sup>3</sup>, one who does not protect (those dependent<sup>4</sup> on him), these six sinful acts are performed by sinful men who are not afraid (even) in the midst of great danger<sup>5</sup>.] One whose thoughts are (all) about enjoyments, who prospers by injuring (others), who repents of generosity, who is miserly, who is devoid of the power<sup>6</sup> (of knowledge), who esteems the group<sup>7</sup> (of the senses), who hates his wife<sup>8</sup>—these seven, different (from those previously mentioned), are the seven forms of cruelty. Knowledge, truth, self-restraint, sacred learning, freedom from animosity (towards living beings), modesty<sup>9</sup>, endurance<sup>10</sup>, freedom from censoriousness, sacrifice, gift, courage<sup>11</sup>, quiescence<sup>12</sup>,—these are the twelve great observances<sup>13</sup> of a Brâhmaṇa. Whoever is not devoid of these twelve can govern this whole world, and those who are

<sup>1</sup> Scil. for attaining to the Brahman.

<sup>2</sup> Some weak point by which they may attack a man.

<sup>3</sup> Fickle in friendship, &c.

<sup>4</sup> Such as a wife, &c.

<sup>5</sup> Connected with this or the next world, *Nilakanṭha*. This and a stanza further on I place within brackets, as it is not quite certain whether Śaṅkara's copy had them, though they are now in some of our copies of the text with his commentary. See Introduction.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. *Mundaka*, p. 319; *Khândogya*, p. 494.

<sup>7</sup> See note 2, at page 165.

<sup>8</sup> The wife having no other protector.

<sup>9</sup> See note 4, at page 162.

<sup>10</sup> Of pairs of opposites, such as heat and cold, &c.

<sup>11</sup> Restraint of senses in presence of their objects.

<sup>12</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, pp. 69, 70.

<sup>13</sup> Which are serviceable in attaining the highest goal.

likewise freedom from all belongings<sup>1</sup>. Thus have the defects of self-restraint been stated; one should avoid those defects. Freedom from (those) defects is freedom from heedlessness; and that, too, is deemed to have eight characteristics<sup>2</sup>. Let truth be your (very) self, O king of kings! On truth all the worlds rest<sup>3</sup>. Truth is said to be their main (principle). Immortality depends on truth<sup>4</sup>. Getting rid of (these) defects, one should practise the observance of penance. This is the conduct prescribed by the Creator. Truth is the solemn vow of the good. The pure penance, which is free from these defects, and possessed of these characteristics, becomes developed, and well developed<sup>5</sup>. I will state to you, in brief, O king of kings! what you ask of me. This (observance)<sup>6</sup> is destructive of sin, and pure, and releases (one) from birth and death and old age<sup>7</sup>. If one is free from the five senses, and also from the mind<sup>8</sup>, O descendant of Bharata! also from (thoughts regarding) the past and the future<sup>9</sup>, one becomes happy.

Dhṛitarâshṭra said :

Some people make great boasts in consequence of (their knowing) the Vedas with the Âkhyânas as

tinence by the commentators, as also at *Mundaka*, p. 311 inter alia. See also *Khândogya*, p. 533.

<sup>1</sup> Son, wife, home, &c.; as to which cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 103, and *Nṛsiṃha Tâpinî*, p. 198, commentary.

<sup>2</sup> The eight mentioned already. <sup>1</sup> Cf. *Taitt. Âtan.* p. 885.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. *Mundaka*, p. 312; *Sânti Parvan* (Moksha), chap. 199, st. 64 seq. Immortality=final emancipation.

<sup>5</sup> P. 165 supra.

<sup>6</sup> Of penance, that is to say.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 109 for the collocation.

<sup>8</sup> *Kâthopanishad*, p. 151; *Maitrî*, p. 161. Sankara seems to take the five and the senses separately: the five meaning the five classes of sensuous objects.

<sup>9</sup> Past losses and future gains, *Nîlakantha*.



the fifth<sup>1</sup>; others, likewise, are (masters) of four Vedas; others, too, of three Vedas; others are (masters) of two Vedas, and of one Veda; and others of no Veda<sup>2</sup>. Tell me which of these is the greatest, whom I may know (to be) a Brâhmana.

Sanatsugâta said :

Through ignorance of the one Veda<sup>3</sup>—the one truth—O king of kings! numerous Vedas came into existence. Some<sup>4</sup> only adhere to the truth. The fancies of those who have fallen away from the truth are abortive, and through ignorance of the truth, ceremonies become amplified<sup>5</sup>. One should understand a Brâhmana, who (merely) reads much, to be a man of many words<sup>6</sup>. Know him only to be the (true) Brâhmana, who swerves not from the truth<sup>7</sup>. O you who are the highest among men<sup>8</sup>! the *Khandas*, indeed, refer of themselves<sup>9</sup> to it. There-

<sup>1</sup> Cf., as to this, Max Muller's *Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, p. 38 seq.; and *Khândogya*, pp. 164, 474, 493; *Bṛhadâraṇyaka*, pp. 456, 687, 926; *Maitrî*, p. 171; *Nṛsiṃha Tâpinî*, p. 105.

<sup>2</sup> The original is 'void of *Riks*.' The commentators give no explanation. Does it mean those who abandon the karma-mârگا? Heretics who reject all Vedas are scarcely likely to be referred to in this way. *Nilakantha*'s interpretation of all this is very different. See his gloss.

<sup>3</sup> Sankara gives various interpretations of this. Perhaps the best is to take it as meaning knowledge. 'The one knowledge—the one truth'—would then be like the famous text—*Taittirîya*, p. 56—'The Brahman is truth, knowledge,' &c.

<sup>4</sup> For this phrase cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 73.

<sup>5</sup> Those who do not understand the Brahman lose their natural power of obtaining what they wish, and so go in for various ceremonies for various special benefits. Cf. *Khândogya*, p. 541; *Gîtâ*, p. 47; and p. 184 *infra*.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. *Bṛhadâraṇyaka*, p. 893.

<sup>7</sup> *Ibid.* p. 636.

<sup>8</sup> Literally, 'highest among bipeds,' a rather unusual expression.

<sup>9</sup> *Nilakantha* says, 'The part of the Vedas which teaches the

fore, studying them, the learned persons who understand the *Kṛāṇḍas*, attain to the Veda, not that which is to be known<sup>1</sup>. Among the Vedas, there is none which understands<sup>2</sup>. By the unintelligent<sup>3</sup>, one understands not the Veda, nor the object of knowledge<sup>4</sup>. He who knows the Veda knows the object of knowledge. He who knows the object of knowledge<sup>5</sup> knows not the truth. He who understands the Vedas understands also the object of knowledge; but that<sup>6</sup> is not understood by the Vedas or by those who understand the Vedas. Still the Brāhmaṇas who understand the Vedas, understand the Veda by means of the Vedas<sup>7</sup>. As the branch of a tree with regard to the part of a portion of the glorious<sup>8</sup> one, so, they declare, are the Vedas with

---

knowledge of the supreme is enough by itself for its purpose; it is not like the part about rites, &c., which rites must be performed before they serve any useful purpose.' The *Gṛāṇakāṇḍa* is enough by itself for understanding the Brahman. Sankara compares *Gītā*, p. 113, and *Kaṭha*, p. 102.

<sup>1</sup> The Veda=the Brahman, as above, cf. *Svetâsvalāra*, p. 372 and commentary; that which is to be known=the material world, which is a subject for human knowledge.

<sup>2</sup> Scil. understands the Veda—the Brahman.

<sup>3</sup> 'The mind,' says *Nilakaṇṭha*; literally, 'that which is to be understood.'

<sup>4</sup> Because a real knowledge of it requires a knowledge of the Brahman. As to the next clause cf. inter alia *Kṛāṇḍogya*, p. 384; *Bṛhadâraṇyaka*, p. 450.

<sup>5</sup> This is the converse of the last sentence, as to which cf. *Bṛhadâraṇyaka*, p. 925.

<sup>6</sup> The supreme.

<sup>7</sup> The apparent contradiction is explained in the next sentence.

<sup>8</sup> I. e. the moon. This refers to the well-known *sâkhâṇḍra*-*nyâya*. As the small digit of the moon, which cannot be perceived by itself, is pointed out as being at the tip of a branch of a tree pointing towards the moon, so the Vedas are of use as pointing towards the Brahman, though inaccurately and imperfectly.

regard to the subject of understanding the supreme self. I understand him to be a Brâhmana who is ingenious, and explains<sup>1</sup> (Vedic texts). He who apprehends (those texts) thus<sup>2</sup>, does verily know that supreme (principle). One should not go in search of it among (things) antagonistic<sup>3</sup> to it at all. Not looking (for him there) one sees that Lord by means of the Veda<sup>4</sup>. Remaining quiet, one should practise devotion, and should not even form a wish in the mind<sup>5</sup>. To him the Brahman presents<sup>6</sup> itself, and directly afterwards he attains to the perfect<sup>7</sup> (one). By taciturnity<sup>8</sup>, verily, does one become a sage; (one does) not (become) a sage by dwelling in a forest<sup>9</sup>. And he is called the highest sage, who understands that indestructible (principle). One is called an analyser<sup>10</sup> (also) in consequence of

<sup>1</sup> Scil. in the manner just indicated.

<sup>2</sup> As giving an idea of the Brahman. The first step to a knowledge of the Brahman is to 'hear' about it from Vedic texts. Cf. *Brhadâraṇyaka*, p. 925.

<sup>3</sup> Such as the body, the senses, &c., which must be distinguished as quite distinct from the self, though most often confounded with it.

<sup>4</sup> Such passages, namely, as 'Thou art that, I am the Brahman,' &c.

<sup>5</sup> About the objects of the senses.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. *Kaṭha*, p. 155.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. *Khândogya*, p. 516. The Bhûman there is the same as the Bahu here, viz. the Brahman. Sankara says expressly in his comment on the Upanishad text, that Bahu and Bhûman, among other words, are synonyms.

<sup>8</sup> Self-restraint, as explained before at p. 163.

<sup>9</sup> Though this is not unimportant, as may be seen from the contrast between town and forest at *Khândogya*, p. 340. See also *Mâitri*, p. 100; *Mundaka*, p. 240. As to the 'highest sage,' see *Brhadâraṇyaka*, p. 899, where the passage about 'sacrifice, gift, penance' should be compared with *Gîtâ*, p. 122.

<sup>10</sup> The construction in the original is not quite clear. I understand the sense to be as follows: In the science of the soul, the

analysing all objects. The analysis (is) from that as the root; and as he makes (such an) analysis, hence is he so (called). The man who sees the worlds directly sees everything<sup>1</sup>. A Brâhmana, verily, adhering to the truth, understands it, and becomes omniscient. I say to you, O learned man! that adhering to knowledge and the rest<sup>2</sup> in this way, one sees the Brahman, O Kshatriya! by means of a course (of study) in the Vedas<sup>3</sup>.

#### CHAPTER IV.

Dhṛitarâshṭra said :

O Sanatsugâta! since you have spoken these words of highest significance, relating to the Brahman, and of numerous forms<sup>4</sup>, give me that advice which is excellent, and difficult to obtain in the

analyser (the word is the same as the word for grammarian) is he who analyses objects, not words merely. Now the true analysis of objects reduces them all to the Brahman (cf. *Khândogya*, p. 407; *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 152); and the sage understands this, and makes the analysis accordingly, so he is rightly called an analyser.

<sup>1</sup> This again is not clear, and the discrepancies of the MSS. make it more perplexing. The meaning, I take to be, that a man may perceive all material things, such as the worlds, Bhûr, &c. (as the commentators put it), but to be really omniscient, you must have knowledge of the truth—the Brahman. See Sabhâ Paivan, chapter V, stanza 7. And see, too, *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 613.

<sup>2</sup> P. 167 supra.

<sup>3</sup> 'Hearing the Vedântas—Upânishads,' &c., says Saṅkara. See note 2 supra, p. 173.

<sup>4</sup> Does this mean referring to many aspects of the Brahman? Saṅkara merely says nânârûpâ. Nīlakanṭha takes it differently, and as meaning that in which everything is elucidated; 'relating to the Brahman' Nīlakanṭha takes to mean 'leading to the Brahman,' or 'instrument for attaining to the Brahman.'

midst of these created objects <sup>1</sup>. Such is my request, O youth!

Sanatsugâta said :

This Brahman, O king! about which you question me with such perseverance, is not to be attained by anybody who is in a hurry. When the mind is absorbed in the understanding <sup>2</sup>, then can that knowledge, which must be deeply pondered over, be attained by living the life of a Brahmakârin <sup>3</sup>. For you are speaking of that primordial knowledge <sup>4</sup>, which consists in the truth; which is obtained by the good by living the life of Brahmakârins <sup>5</sup>; which being obtained, men cast off this mortal world; and which knowledge, verily, is to be invariably (found) in those who have been brought up under preceptors <sup>6</sup>.

Dhrîtarâshtra said :

Since that knowledge is capable of being truly acquired by living the life of a Brahmakârin, therefore tell me, O Brâhmaṇa! of what description the life of a Brahmakârin is <sup>7</sup>.

Sanatsugâta said :

Those who entering (as it were) the womb <sup>8</sup> of a

<sup>1</sup> In this material world, the highest knowledge is not to be got. Cf. *Kaṭha*, p. 96.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. withdrawn from objects and fixed on the self only. Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 79, and *Maitrî*, p. 179, where, however, we have *hrîd* for *buddhi*.

<sup>3</sup> *Viroḥana* and *Indra* do so according to the *Kṣhândogya*, p. 570. See also *Mundaka*, p. 311.

<sup>4</sup> The object of which is the primal Brahman.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. *Kṣhândogya*, p. 534; and *Gîtâ*, pp. 78, 79, and the passage from the *Kaṭha* there cited.

<sup>6</sup> *Kṣhândogya*, pp. 264-459.

<sup>7</sup> See *Kṣhândogya*, p. 553 seq.

<sup>8</sup> I. e. attending closely upon him; *fœtus*=pupil.

preceptor, and becoming (as it were) a foetus, practise the life of Brahma $\acute{k}$ ârins, become even in this world authors of Sâstras<sup>1</sup>, and they repair to the highest truth<sup>2</sup> after casting off (this) body. They subjugate desires here in this world, practising forbearance in pursuit of the Brahmic state<sup>3</sup>; and with courage, they even here remove the self out of the body<sup>4</sup>, like the soft fibres from the Mu $\tilde{n}$ ga. Father and mother, O descendant of Bharata! only form the body. But the birth<sup>5</sup> obtained from the preceptor, that verily is true<sup>6</sup>, and likewise immortal. He perfects<sup>7</sup> (one), giving (one) immortality. Recognising what he has done (for one), one should not injure him. The disciple should always make obeisance to the preceptor<sup>8</sup>; and, free from heedlessness, should always desire sacred instruction. When the pure man obtains knowledge by this same course of discipleship<sup>9</sup>, that is the first quarter of his life as a Brahma $\acute{k}$ ârin. As (is) his conduct

<sup>1</sup> Learned, men of knowledge, Sa $\acute{n}$ kara.

<sup>2</sup> The supreme, which is described as 'truth, knowledge,' &c. In our ancient works the truth often means the real.

<sup>3</sup> The state of being absorbed in the Brahman. Cf. Gîtâ, p. 52.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Ka $\acute{t}$ ha, p. 158.

<sup>5</sup> Sa $\acute{n}$ kara cites Âpastamba (p. 11) in support of this, and Prasna-upanishad, p. 256. The consciousness of being one with the Brahman is a new birth. See, too, Mundaka, p. 282.

<sup>6</sup> That birth is not merely delusive, and does not result in death.

<sup>7</sup> Immortality or final emancipation is not to be achieved without knowledge, which can only be got from a preceptor. And one is not perfect without that immortality; one is limited by the conditions of human existence. See Nirukta (Roth's ed.), p. 41.

<sup>8</sup> Sa $\acute{n}$ kara compares Svetâsvatara, p. 374; see also p. 203 infra. The necessity of having a Guru is often insisted on even in the Upanishads. Cf. Mundaka, p. 282; K $\acute{h}$ ândogya, p. 264.

<sup>9</sup> Stated at the beginning of this speech. Sa $\acute{n}$ kara.

always towards his preceptor, so likewise should he behave towards the preceptor's wife, and so likewise should he act towards the preceptor's son—(that) is said to be the second quarter. What one, recognising what the preceptor has done for one, and understanding the matter<sup>1</sup> (taught), feels with a delighted heart regarding the preceptor—believing that one has been brought into existence<sup>2</sup> by him—that is the third quarter of life as a Brahmaçârin. One should do what is agreeable to the preceptor, by means of one's life and riches, and in deed, thought, and word<sup>3</sup>—that is said to be the fourth quarter. (A disciple) obtains a quarter by time<sup>4</sup>, so likewise a quarter by associating with the preceptor, he also obtains a quarter by means of his own energy; and then he attains to a quarter by means of the Śâstras. The life as a Brahmaçârin of that man, whose beauty<sup>5</sup> consists in the twelve beginning with knowledge, and whose limbs are the other (qualifications mentioned), and who has

---

<sup>1</sup> The meaning of the Vedic texts, &c., Saṅkara in one copy; the highest aim of man, according to another copy.

<sup>2</sup> See note 5 on p. 176.

<sup>3</sup> I keep the order of the original, though I do not translate quite literally; 'thought and word' should be literally 'mind and speech.' See, on the collocation, Gîtâ, p. 123 *inter alia*.

<sup>4</sup> Time=maturity of understanding which comes by time; energy=intellectual power; Śâstras=consultation about Śâstras with fellow-students—Saṅkara, who adds that the order is not material as stated, and quotes a stanza which may be thus rendered, 'The pupil receives a quarter from the preceptor, a quarter by his own talent; he receives a quarter by time; and a quarter through fellow-Brahmaçârins.'

<sup>5</sup> The body being disregarded, these qualities are attributed to the self in this way. For the twelve, see p. 167; the others are abandonment, truthfulness, &c., p. 169.

strength<sup>1</sup>, bears fruit, they say, by association with a preceptor, in (the shape of) contact with that entity—the Brahman. Whatever wealth may come to a man who lives in this way, he should even pay that over to the preceptor. He would thus be adopting the conduct of the good which is of many merits; and the same conduct is (to be adopted) towards the preceptor's son. Living thus, he prospers greatly<sup>2</sup> on all sides in this world; he obtains sons and position; the quarters<sup>3</sup> and sub-quarters shower (benefits<sup>4</sup>) on him, and men pass their lives as Brahmaçârins under him. By this life as a Brahmaçârin, the divinities obtained their divinity. And the sages, too, became great by living the life of Brahmaçârins. By this same (means), too, the Apsarasas, together with the Gandharvas, achieved for themselves beautiful forms. And by this life as a Brahmaçârin, the sun illuminates (the universe). That man of knowledge, O king! who practising penance, may by penance pierce through or tear off his body, crosses beyond childhood<sup>5</sup> by means of this (life as a Brahmaçârin), and at the time of the termination (of life) overcomes death<sup>6</sup>. Those who understand this (life as a Brahmaçârin) attain to a

<sup>1</sup> To observe the duties referred to, Sankara. But see, too, p. 167, note 6.

<sup>2</sup> 'Obtains wealth, learning, and greatness,' says a commentator. For similar benefits, cf. *Khândogya*, p. 122.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *Khândogya*, p. 132.

<sup>4</sup> 'Wealth,' says Nîlakantha, as well as another commentator.

<sup>5</sup> Ignorance; cf. note 7 at p. 154 supra. Nîlakantha reads 'reaches' instead of 'crosses beyond,' and interprets 'bâlya' to mean 'freedom from affection, aversion,' &c. Cf. *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 605. As to the divinity of divinities, cf. Taitt. Âraṇ. p. 886.

<sup>6</sup> Nîlakantha reads 'vanquishes death.' The meaning is, he reaches final emancipation. Cf. p. 154 supra.



condition like that of those who ask (for what they want) from the wish-granting stone<sup>1</sup>, when they obtain the thing desired. By performing action, O Kshatriya! people conquer (for themselves only) perishable worlds<sup>2</sup>. (But) the man of understanding attains by knowledge to the everlasting glory—for there is no other way to it<sup>3</sup>.

Dhṛitarāshṭra said :

Where a Brāhmaṇa possessed of knowledge, perceives it, does it appear as white<sup>4</sup>, as red, or again as black, or again as grey or tawny? What is the colour of that immortal, indestructible goal?

Sanatsugāta said :

It appears not as white, as red, nor again as black, nor again as grey, nor tawny<sup>5</sup>. It dwells not on earth, nor in the sky; nor does it bear a body in this ocean<sup>6</sup> (-like world). It is not in the stars, nor does it dwell in the lightning; nor is its form<sup>7</sup> to be seen in the clouds, nor even in the air, nor in the deities; it is not to be seen in the moon, nor in the sun. It is not to be seen in *Rik* texts, nor in

<sup>1</sup> Called *Kintāmani*. The effect of *Brahmaṇya* is that those who practise it can get what they desire.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *Gītā*, p. 76; *Khândogya*, p. 538; *Mundaka*, p. 279.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *Svetâsvatara*, p. 327.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 877.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. *Kaṭha*, p. 119; and *Mundaka*, p. 267. As to its not dwelling in earth, sky, &c., Saṅkara refers to *Khândogya*, p. 518, as implying that.

<sup>6</sup> Literally, 'it bears no water in the ocean.' 'Water' is said by the commentators to mean the five elements of which the body is composed. See *Manu* I, 5, and *Khândogya*, p. 330. In the *Svetâsvatara* it signifies mind (see p. 388). For ocean meaning world, or *samsâra*; cf. *Aitareya-upanishad*, p. 182.

<sup>7</sup> Here I do not render *rûpa* by colour, as before.

Yagus texts; nor yet in the Atharvan texts, nor in the pure Sâman texts; nor yet, O king, in the Rathantara or Bṛihadhratha<sup>1</sup> hymns. It is seen in the self of a man of high vows<sup>2</sup>. It is invincible, beyond darkness<sup>3</sup>, it comes forth from within<sup>4</sup> at the time of destruction. Its form is more minute than the most minute (things), its form is larger even than the mountains<sup>5</sup>. That is the support<sup>6</sup> (of the universe); that is immortal; (that is) all things perceptible<sup>7</sup>. That is the Brahman, that is glory<sup>8</sup>. From that all entities were produced<sup>9</sup>, in that they are dissolved. All this shines forth as dwelling in it in the form of light<sup>10</sup>. And it is perceived by means of knowledge<sup>11</sup> by one who understands the self; on it depends this whole universe. Those who understand this become immortal.

<sup>1</sup> See Muir, Sanskrit Texts, vol. 1, p. 16; Tândya-brâhmana, p. 838, Gîtâ, p. 90; and Kaushîtaki, p. 21. Bṛihadhratha=Bṛihad-sâman (?).

<sup>2</sup> The twelve great vows—knowledge, &c, mentioned above, see p. 167. Nilakantha takes Mahâvrata to refer to the sacrifice of that name. It is described in the Atareya Âtanyaka.

<sup>3</sup> See Gîtâ, p. 78, note 4.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 82, and Îsopanishad, p. 12.

<sup>5</sup> See Gîtâ, p. 78, note 3.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 113; Katha, p. 99.

<sup>7</sup> So Nilakantha. The original word ordinarily means 'worlds.'

<sup>8</sup> Cf. Svetâsvatara, p. 347.

<sup>9</sup> Cf. the famous passage in the Taittiriya, p. 123 and also Mundaka, p. 289.

<sup>10</sup> The explanations of the commentators are not quite clear as to the word ahnâ, 'in the form of light.' Probably the meaning is: The universe depends on the Brahman, and is, as it were, the light of the Brahman. Sankara compares the passages referred to at Gîtâ, p. 112, note 1.

<sup>11</sup> 'Not by means of action,' says Sankara.

CHAPTER V<sup>1</sup>.

Grief and wrath, and avarice, desire, delusion, laziness, want of forgiveness, vanity, craving, friendship<sup>2</sup>, censoriousness, and reviling others—these twelve great enormities are destructive of a man's life. These, O king of kings! attend on each and every man. Beset by these, a man, deluded in his understanding, acts sinfully. A man full of attachments, merciless, harsh (of speech), talkative, cherishing wrath in his heart, and boastful—these are the men of cruel qualities; (such) persons, even obtaining wealth, do not always enjoy (it)<sup>3</sup>. One

<sup>1</sup> The whole of this chapter is wanting in one of our copies of Saṅkara's commentary. In the copy published in the *Mahābhārata* (Madras edition) there is, however, this passage: 'Wrath &c. have been already explained, still there are some differences here and there, and those only are now explained.' The chapter is for the most part a repetition of what we have already had. For such repetitions cf. *Bṛihadāraṇyaka*, pp. 317-1016; 444-930. The same copy of Saṅkara's commentary gives this general statement of the object of this and the next chapter: 'The course of study of the science of the Brahman, in which knowledge is the principal thing, and concentration of mind &c. are subsidiary, has been described. Now is described the course of study in which concentration of mind is principal, and knowledge subsidiary. The first mode consists in understanding the meaning of the word "you" by means of concentration of mind, and then identifying it with the Brahman by means of a study of the Upanishads; the second, in first intellectually understanding the identity of the individual self and Brahman, by such study of the Upanishads, and then realising the identity to consciousness by contemplation, &c. In both modes the fruit is the same, and the means are the same; and to show this, the merits and defects already stated are here again declared.' This explanation is verbatim the same in *Nilakantha's* commentary.

<sup>2</sup> The original is 'pity,' which is explained to mean 'friendship' by Saṅkara and *Nilakantha*.

<sup>3</sup> 'Owing to there being in it no enjoyment for the self,' says one

whose thoughts are fixed on enjoyments, who is partial<sup>1</sup>, proud<sup>2</sup>, boastful when he makes a gift, miserly, and devoid of power<sup>3</sup>, who esteems the group (of the senses), and who hates (his) wife—thus have been stated the seven (classes of) cruel persons of sinful dispositions. Piety, and truthfulness, and penance, and self-restraint, freedom from animosity, modesty, endurance, freedom from censoriousness, liberality, sacred learning, courage, forgiveness—these are the twelve great observances of a Brâhmaṇa. Whoever does not swerve from these twelve may govern this whole world. And one who is possessed of three, two, or even one, of these, must be understood to have nothing of his own<sup>4</sup>. Self-restraint, abandonment, freedom from delusion, on these immortality depends<sup>5</sup>. These are possessed by those talented Brâhmaṇas to whom the Brahman is the principal<sup>6</sup> (thing). A Brâhmaṇa's speaking ill of others, whether true or false, is not commended.

copy of Śaṅkara's commentary. Another reading, which is in the Madras edition and in *Nīlakanṭha*, may be rendered, 'even obtaining benefits, they do not respect one (from whom they obtain them).'

<sup>1</sup> The commentary says the meaning is the same as that of the expression used in the corresponding place before, viz. one who prospers by injuring others.

<sup>2</sup> One copy of Śaṅkara's commentary takes this to mean one who thinks the not-self to be the self. I adopt the other meaning, however, as agreeing with that of *atimânî*, which is the reading of some copies instead of *abhimânî*.

<sup>3</sup> *Nīlakanṭha* reads *durbala* and does not explain it. See p. 167.

<sup>4</sup> One commentator says this means that he should not be supposed to have incurred the demerit of having any attachment to this world. *Nīlakanṭha* says, he gives up everything in the pursuit of even one of these observances. <sup>5</sup> See p. 168.

<sup>6</sup> I. e. the goal to be reached. The commentary takes Brahman to mean the Vedas, and the whole phrase to mean those who devote themselves to the performance of actions stated in the Vedas.

The men who act thus have their places in hell. Frenzy has eighteen defects—as already described here—hatred of men, factiousness<sup>1</sup>, censoriousness<sup>2</sup>, untruthful speech, lust, wrath, want of self-control<sup>3</sup>, speaking ill of others, backbiting, mismanagement in business<sup>4</sup>, quarrelsomeness, animosity, troubling living creatures, want of forgiveness, delusion, flippancy, loss of reason<sup>5</sup>, censoriousness<sup>6</sup>; therefore a wise man should not be subject to frenzy, for it is always censured. Six characteristics should be understood as (belonging) to friendship—that one should rejoice at (anything) agreeable; and feel grieved at (anything) disagreeable; that with a pure heart one, when asked by a deserving (man), should give to him who asks what can<sup>6</sup> certainly be given, (though it) may be beneficial to oneself, and even though it ought not to be asked, (namely) one's favourites, sons, wealth, and one's own wife; that one should not dwell there where one has bestowed (all one's) wealth, through a desire (to get a return for one's liberality); that one should enjoy

<sup>1</sup> One copy of Saṅkara's commentary says this means 'obstructing other people's acts of piety,' &c.

<sup>2</sup> One copy of Saṅkara's commentary says this means 'being given up to intoxicating drinks,' &c.; another copy says, 'doing another's bidding without thought.'

<sup>3</sup> One copy says this means 'inattention to any work undertaken,' another renders the original by 'destruction of property, i.e. squandering it on dancers,' &c.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. discrimination between right and wrong.

<sup>5</sup> This seems to be some error, for 'censoriousness' has occurred before. But neither the texts nor the commentaries give any help to correct the error. Perhaps the latter is to be distinguished as referring to the habit, and the former only to sporadic acts, of censoriousness. These qualities, I presume, constitute frenzy; they are not the 'defects.'

<sup>6</sup> I. e. where the power to give exists.

## CHAPTER VI.

That pure<sup>1</sup>, great light<sup>2</sup>, which is radiant; that great glory<sup>3</sup>; that, verily, which the gods worship<sup>4</sup>; that by means of which the sun shines forth<sup>5</sup>—that eternal divine being is perceived by devotees. From (that) pure (principle) the Brahman<sup>6</sup> is produced; by (that) pure (principle) the Brahman is developed<sup>7</sup>; that pure (principle), not illumined among all radiant (bodies), is (itself) luminous and illuminates (them)<sup>8</sup>. That eternal divine being is perceived by devotees. The perfect is raised out of the perfect. It (being raised) out of the perfect is called the perfect. The perfect is withdrawn from the perfect, and the perfect only remains<sup>9</sup>. That eternal divine being is perceived by devotees.

<sup>1</sup> Free from ignorance and other taints. See *Kaṭha*, p. 144.

<sup>2</sup> Śaṅkara compares *Kaṭha*, p. 142. See, too, *Mundaka*, p. 303; and note 4 infra.

<sup>3</sup> *Svetâsvatara*, p. 347, and p. 180 supra.

<sup>4</sup> Śaṅkara refers to *Bṛhadâraṇyaka*, p. 887.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 112, note 1.

<sup>6</sup> 'Named *Hiranyagarbha*,' Śaṅkara. Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 107; *Svetâsvatara*, p. 354; *Mundaka*, p. 309; *Maitrî*, p. 130; *Taitt. Âraṇ.* p. 894.

<sup>7</sup> 'In the form of *Virâg*,' says Śaṅkara. As to these two, cf. *Mundaka*, pp. 270-272; and Śaṅkara's and Ânandagiri's notes there. See also *Svetâsvatara*, pp. 324, 325; and *Nṛsiṃha Tâpinî*, pp. 233, 234; Colebrooke, *Essays*, pp. 344, 368 (Madras reprint). The *Virâg* corresponds rather to the gross material world viewed as a whole; the *Hiranyagarbha* to the subtle elements similarly viewed, an earlier stage in the development. Cf. the *Vedântasâra*.

<sup>8</sup> Cf. *Mundaka*, p. 303, and *Gîtâ*, p. 112.

<sup>9</sup> The individual self is part of the supreme (*Gîtâ*, p. 112); perfect = not limited by space, time, &c.; as being part of a thing perfect in its essence, the individual soul also is perfect. The individual self is withdrawn from the perfect, viz. the whole aggregate of body, senses, &c. presided over by the self, and when so withdrawn it appears to be the pure self only. Cf. *Bṛhadâraṇyaka*, p. 948.

(From the Brahman), the waters <sup>1</sup> (are produced); and then from the waters, the gross body. In the space within that <sup>2</sup>, dwelt the two divine (principles). Both enveloping the quarters and sub-quarters, support earth and heaven <sup>3</sup>. That eternal divine being is perceived by devotees. The horse <sup>4</sup> (-like senses) lead towards heaven him, who is possessed of knowledge and divine, (who is) free from old age, and who stands on the wheel of this chariot (-like body), which is transient, but the operations of which are imperishable <sup>5</sup>. That eternal divine being <sup>6</sup> is perceived by devotees. His form has no parallel <sup>7</sup>; no one sees him with the eye <sup>8</sup>. Those who apprehend him by means of the understanding, and also the mind and heart, become immortal <sup>9</sup>. That eternal

<sup>1</sup> 'The five elements,' says Saṅkara, cf. Aitareya, p. 189; and for 'gross body,' the original is literally 'water;' see supra, p. 179, note 6; and see, too, Īsopanishad, p. 11, and Svetâsvatara, p. 368, for different but kindred meanings.

<sup>2</sup> Viz. the lotus-like heart. Cf. *Khândogya*, p. 528.

<sup>3</sup> The two principles between them pervade the universe, the individual self being connected with the material world, the other with heaven; 'divine' is, literally, 'the brilliant,' says Saṅkara, who quotes *Kaṭha*, p. 305, as a parallel for the whole passage.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. *Kaṭha*, p. 111; *Maitrî*, pp. 19-34; and *Mahâbhârata* *Stûi Parvan*, chap. VII, st. 13. Heaven = the Brahman here (see *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 876); divine = not vulgar, or unrefined — Saṅkara, who adds that though the senses generally lead one to sensuous objects, they do not do so when under the guidance of true knowledge.

<sup>5</sup> The body is perishable, but action done by the self while in the body leaves its effect.

<sup>6</sup> To whom, namely, the man of knowledge goes, as before stated.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. *Svetâsvatara*, p. 347.

<sup>8</sup> Cf. *Kaṭha*, p. 152, and comment there, where the eye is said to stand for all the senses.

<sup>9</sup> *Kaṭha*, p. 149; *Svetâsvatara*, pp. 346-348, also p. 330 (should it be *manîshâ* there instead of *manvîso*?). The meanings of the three words are difficult to fix accurately. Saṅkara varies in his interpre-

divine being is perceived by devotees. The currents of twelve collections<sup>1</sup>, supported by the Deity, regulate the honey<sup>2</sup>; and those who follow after it move about in (this) dangerous (world). That eternal divine being<sup>3</sup> is perceived by devotees. The bee<sup>4</sup> drinks that accumulated honey for half a month<sup>5</sup>. The Lord created the oblation for all beings<sup>6</sup>. That eternal divine being is perceived by devotees. Those who are devoid of wings<sup>7</sup>, coming

tations. Probably the meaning he gives here is the best. Mind and understanding have been explained at Gîtâ, p. 57. The heart is the place within, where the self is said to be, and it may be taken as indicating the self, the meaning would then be—a direct consciousness in the self of its unity with the Supreme. See, too, Taitt. Âtan. p. 896.

<sup>1</sup> The five organs of action, the five senses of perception, the mind and understanding make the twelve.

<sup>2</sup> Each current has its own honey regularly distributed to it under the supervision of the Deity, the Supreme. Honey=material enjoyment. Cf. Kaṭha, p. 126, where Saṅkara renders it by *karmaphala*, 'fruit of action.'

<sup>3</sup> Who supervises the distribution as stated. Cf. Vedânta-sûtra III, 2, 28-31.

<sup>4</sup> Bhramara, which the commentators interpret to mean 'one who is given to flying about—the individual self.'

<sup>5</sup> I.e. in one life in respect of actions done in a previous life.

<sup>6</sup> Saṅkara says this is in answer to a possible difficulty that action performed here cannot have its fruit in the next world, as the fruit is 'so far removed in time from the action. The answer is, The Lord, the Supreme, can effect this, and taking his existence into account there is no difficulty. Oblation=food, &c., Saṅkara. The meaning of the whole passage, which is not very clear, seems to be that the Lord has arranged things so that each being receives some of this honey, this food, which is the fruit of his own action. Then the question arises, Do these beings always continue taking the honey and 'migrating,' or are they ever released? That is answered by the following sentence.

<sup>7</sup> 'The wings of knowledge,' says Saṅkara, citing a Brâhmaṇa text, 'those, verily, who have knowledge are possessed of wings, those who are not possessed of knowledge are devoid of wings.'



to the Asvattha of golden leaves<sup>1</sup>, there become possessed of wings, and fly away happily<sup>2</sup>. That eternal divine being<sup>3</sup> is perceived by devotees. The upward life-wind swallows up the downward life-wind; the moon swallows up the upward life-wind; the sun swallows up the moon<sup>4</sup>; and another<sup>5</sup> swallows up the sun. Moving about above the waters, the supreme self<sup>6</sup> does not raise one leg<sup>7</sup>. (Should he raise) that, which is always performing sacrifices<sup>8</sup>, there will be no death, no immortality<sup>9</sup>. That eternal divine being<sup>10</sup> is perceived by devotees.

<sup>1</sup> So, literally; Śaṅkara explains 'golden' to mean 'beneficial and pleasant,' by a somewhat fanciful derivation of the word *hiranya*. He refers to *Gītā*, p. 111, about the leaves of the Asvattha. Nīlakaṇṭha takes the leaves to be son, wife, &c., which are 'golden,' attractive at first sight. 'Coming to the Asvattha,' Śaṅkara says, 'means being born as a Brāhmaṇa,' &c. 'Flying away' = obtaining final emancipation.

<sup>2</sup> The 'selves' are compared to birds in the famous passage at *Mundaka*, p. 306 (also *Svetāsvatara*, p. 337). See also *Bṛhadāraṇyaka*, p. 499.

<sup>3</sup> Knowledge of whom leads to 'flying away happily.'

<sup>4</sup> Cf. *Khândogya*, p. 441. Śaṅkara says that the author here explains the yoga by which the Supreme is to be attained. As to the life-winds, cf. *Gītā*, p. 61. 'The moon,' says Śaṅkara, 'means the mind, and the sun the understanding, as they are the respective deities of those organs' (cf. *Bṛhadāraṇyaka*, pp. 521-542, and *Aitareya*, p. 187, where, however, the sun is said to appertain to the eye).

<sup>5</sup> I.e. the Brahman; the result is, one remains in the condition of being identified with the Brahman.

<sup>6</sup> Literally, flamingo. Cf. *Svetāsvatara*, pp. 332, 367; see also p. 289; *Maitrī*, p. 99; and the commentary on *Svetāsvatara*, p. 283.

<sup>7</sup> Viz. the individual self, Śaṅkara; that is, as it were, the bond of connexion between the Supreme and the world. Cf. *Gītā*, p. 112.

<sup>8</sup> This is the meaning, though the word in the original is *Ritvig*, which in the later literature only means priest.

<sup>9</sup> As the whole of the material world is dissolved, when the self is dis severed from the delusion which is the cause of it.

<sup>10</sup> Viz. who moves about on the waters, as above stated.

The being which is the inner self, and which is of the size of a thumb<sup>1</sup>, is always migrating in consequence of the connexion with the subtle body<sup>2</sup>. The deluded ones do not perceive that praiseworthy lord, primeval and radiant, and possessed of creative power<sup>3</sup>. That eternal divine being is perceived by devotees. Leading mortals to destruction by their own action<sup>4</sup>, they conceal themselves like serpents in secret recesses<sup>5</sup>. The deluded men then become more deluded<sup>6</sup>. The enjoyments afforded by them cause delusion, and lead to worldly life<sup>7</sup>. That eternal divine being<sup>8</sup> is perceived by devotees. This<sup>9</sup> seems to be common to all mankind—whether possessed of resources<sup>10</sup> or not possessed of resources—it is common to immortality and the other<sup>11</sup>. Those who are possessed (of them)<sup>12</sup> attain there to the source of the honey<sup>13</sup>. That eternal divine being is perceived by devotees. They go,

<sup>1</sup> Svetâsvatara, pp. 330–355; Taitt. Âraṇ. p. 858, and comments there.

<sup>2</sup> The life-winds, the ten organs or senses, mind, and understanding. See the same word similarly interpreted at Svetâsvatara, p. 306, and Sâṅkhya-sûtra III, 9.

<sup>3</sup> According to Saṅkara, he who makes the distinct entities, after entering into them; he alludes apparently to *Khândogya*, p. 407.

<sup>4</sup> Namely, that of giving the poison of sensuous objects.

<sup>5</sup> I.e. the eye, ear, &c., like the holes of serpents.

<sup>6</sup> I.e. can appreciate nought but those sensuous objects.

<sup>7</sup> One reading is, 'lead to danger' = which means 'to hell,' according to *Nīlakanṭha*.

<sup>8</sup> Scil. delusion about whom leads to 'danger' or 'worldly life.'

<sup>9</sup> The quality of being one with the Brahman in essence.

<sup>10</sup> Self-restraint, tranquillity, &c.

<sup>11</sup> I.e. whether in the midst of worldly life, or in the state of perfect emancipation.

<sup>12</sup> Viz. the resources spoken of before.

<sup>13</sup> Viz. the supreme Brahman. 'There' Saṅkara takes to mean 'in the supreme abode of Vishṇu.' See Introduction.

pervading both worlds by knowledge<sup>1</sup>. Then the Agnihotra though not performed is (as good as) performed<sup>2</sup>. Your (knowledge) of the Brahman, therefore, will not lead you to littleness<sup>3</sup>. Knowledge is (his)<sup>4</sup> name. To that the talented ones attain. That eternal divine being is perceived by devotees. The self of this description absorbing the material cause<sup>5</sup> becomes great. And the self of him who understands that being is not degraded here<sup>6</sup>. That eternal divine being is perceived by devotees. One should ever and always be doing good. (There is) no death, whence (can there be) immortality<sup>7</sup>? The real and the unreal have both the same real (entity) as their basis. The source of the existent and the non-existent is but one<sup>8</sup>. That eternal divine being is perceived by devotees. The

---

<sup>1</sup> Sankara does not explain this. Nīlakantha says pervading = fully understanding; both worlds = the self and the not-self. Is the meaning something like that of the passage last cited by Sāṅkara under Vedānta-sūtra IV, 2, 14?

<sup>2</sup> He obtains the fruit of it, Sāṅkara. See as to Agnihotra, *Khândogya*, p. 381 seq.; and Vedānta-sūtra IV, 1, 16.

<sup>3</sup> I.e. this mortal world, as action &c. would do.

<sup>4</sup> I.e. of one who understands himself to be the Brahman. See Aitareya-upanishad, p. 246.

<sup>5</sup> Sāṅkara says, 'the cause in which all is absorbed.' Cf. a similar, but not identical, meaning given to Vaisvānara at *Khândogya*, p. 264; and see Vedānta-sūtra I, 2, 24. Becomes great = becomes the Brahman, Sāṅkara.

<sup>6</sup> Even in this body, Sāṅkara; degradation he takes to mean departure from the body, citing *Bṛihadāraṇyaka*, p. 540.

<sup>7</sup> There is no worldly life with birth and death for one who does good, and thinks his self to be the Brahman; hence no emancipation from such life either.

<sup>8</sup> The Brahman is the real, and on that the unreal material world is imagined. Cf. *Taittirīya*, p. 97, and Sāṅkara's comments there, which are of use in understanding this passage.

being who is the inner self, and who is of the size of a thumb, is not seen, being placed in the heart<sup>1</sup>. He is unborn, is moving about day and night, without sloth. Meditating on him, a wise man remains placid<sup>2</sup>. That eternal divine being is perceived by devotees. From him comes the wind<sup>3</sup>; in him, likewise, is (everything) dissolved. From him (come) the fire and the moon; and from him comes life<sup>4</sup>. That is the support (of the universe); that is immortal; that is all things perceptible<sup>5</sup>; that is the Brahman, that glory. From that all entities were produced; and in that (they) are dissolved<sup>6</sup>. That eternal divine being is perceived by devotees. The brilliant (Brahman) supports the two divine principles<sup>7</sup> and the universe, earth and heaven, and the quarters. He from whom the rivers flow in (various) directions, from him were created the great oceans<sup>8</sup>. That eternal divine being is perceived by devotees. Should one fly, even after furnishing oneself with thousands upon thousands of wings, and even though one should have the velocity of thought<sup>9</sup>, one would never reach the end of the (great) cause<sup>10</sup>. That eternal divine

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *Kaṭha*, pp. 130, 157; and *Bṛhadâraṇyaka*, p. 360.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *Svetâsvatara*, p. 342; *Kaṭha*, pp. 100, 107; *Maitrî*, p. 134.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *Taittirîya*, p. 67; *Kaṭha*, p. 146; *Mundaka*, p. 293.

<sup>4</sup> *Kaṭha*, p. 298; *Mundaka*, p. 288.

<sup>5</sup> See p. 180, note 7.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 180 *supra*.

<sup>7</sup> 'The individual soul, and God,' say the commentators, the latter being distinct from the supreme self. 'The universe,' says *Nilakanṭha*, 'means earth,' &c., by which I suppose he means earth, heaven, quarters, mentioned directly afterwards.

<sup>8</sup> *Kaṭha*, p. 293.

<sup>9</sup> This figure is implied in the *Îsopanishad*, p. 10.

<sup>10</sup> 'Therefore it is endless,' says *San̥kara*; and as to this, cf. *Taittirîya*, p. 51.

being is perceived by devotees. His form dwells in the unperceived<sup>1</sup>; and those whose understandings are very well refined<sup>2</sup> perceive him. The talented man who has got rid (of affection and aversion) perceives (him) by the mind. Those who understand him<sup>3</sup> become immortal. When one sees this self in all beings stationed in various places<sup>4</sup>, what should one grieve for after that<sup>5</sup>? The Brâhmana has (as much interest) in all beings, as in a big reservoir of water, to which waters flow from all sides<sup>6</sup>. I alone am your mother<sup>7</sup>, father;

<sup>1</sup> 'In a sphere beyond the reach of perception,' says Saṅkara, who also quotes *Kaṭha*, p. 149, or *Svetâsvatara*, p. 347, where the same line also occurs.

<sup>2</sup> The original for understandings is *sattva*, which Saṅkara renders to mean *antaḥkarana*. 'Refined,' he says, 'by sacrifices and other sanctifying operations.' In the *Kaṭha* at p. 148 *sattva* is rendered by Saṅkara to mean *buddhi*—a common use of the word.

<sup>3</sup> 'As being,' says Saṅkara, 'identical with themselves.' It will be noted that the form of expression is slightly altered here. It is not 'those who understand this.'

<sup>4</sup> I.e. in different aggregates of body, senses, &c. Cf. *Gîtâ*, pp. 104 and 124; also *Khândogya*, pp. 475-551.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 882; Saṅkara also refers to *Îsopanishad*, p. 14.

<sup>6</sup> The words are pretty nearly the same as at *Gîtâ*, p. 48. Saṅkara says, the Brâhmana 'who has done all he need do' has no interest whatever in any being, as he has none in a big reservoir, and he cites *Gîtâ*, p. 54, in support of this. One copy of Saṅkara, however, differs from this; that runs thus: 'As a person who has done all he need do, has no interest in a big reservoir of water, so to a Brâhmana who sees the self in all beings, there is no interest in all the actions laid down in the Vedas, &c.; as he has obtained everything by mere perception of the self.' Nîlakantha's reading is exactly the same as at *Gîtâ*, p. 48.

<sup>7</sup> Saṅkara says that Sanatsugâta states here his own experiences, like Vâmadeva (about whom there is a reference at *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 216) and others, to corroborate what he has already said. Cf. also *Gîtâ*, p. 83, as to the whole passage.

and I too 'am the son. And I am the self of all this—that which exists and that which does not exist<sup>1</sup>. (I am) the aged grandfather of this, the father, and the son, O descendant of Bharata! You dwell in my self only<sup>2</sup>. You are not mine, nor I (yours). The self only is my seat<sup>3</sup>; the self too is (the source of) my birth<sup>4</sup>. I am woven through and through<sup>5</sup> (everything). And my seat is free from (the attacks of) old age<sup>6</sup>. I am unborn, moving about day and night, without sloth. Knowing (me), verily, a wise man remains placid<sup>7</sup>. More minute than an atom<sup>8</sup>, possessed of a good mind<sup>9</sup>, I am stationed within all beings<sup>10</sup>. (The wise) know the father of all beings to be placed in the lotus<sup>11</sup> (-like heart of every one).

<sup>1</sup> See Gîtâ, p. 84. Nīlakantha takes what exists to mean 'present,' and what does not exist to mean 'past and future.' Cf. *Khândogya*, p. 532.

<sup>2</sup> See Gîtâ, p. 82, where there is also a similar apparent contradiction.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *Khândogya*, p. 518.

<sup>4</sup> That is to say he is 'unborn,' says Nīlakantha. Saṅkara seems to take 'my' with 'seat' only, and not with birth; for he says, 'everything has its birth from the self.'

<sup>5</sup> Cf. *Mundaka*, p. 298; *Maitrî*, p. 84, and comment there.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, pp. 77, 109, and *Khândogya*, pp. 535, 550.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 192, note 2.

<sup>8</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 78, and note 3 there.

<sup>9</sup> I.e. a mind free from affection and aversion, hatred, &c., Saṅkara.

<sup>10</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 113, and note 3; and also *Īsopaniṣad*, p. 12.

<sup>11</sup> *Khândogya*, p. 528; and cf. Gîtâ, p. 113.

ANUGÎTÂ

him away from them was happily terminated. *Arguna*, of course, was unable to resist the execution of this wish ; but he requested *Krishna*, before leaving for *Dvârakâ*, to repeat the instruction which had been already conveyed to him on 'the holy field of *Kurukshetra*,' but which had gone out of his 'degenerate mind.' *Krishna* thereupon protests that he is not equal to a verbatim recapitulation of the *Bhagavad-gîtâ*, but agrees, in lieu of that, to impart to *Arguna* the same instruction in other words, through the medium of a certain 'ancient story'—or *purâtana itihâsa*. And the instruction thus conveyed constitutes what is called the *Anugîtâ*, a name which is in itself an embodiment of this anecdote.

Now the first question which challenges investigation with reference to this work is, if we may so call it, the fundamental one—how much is properly included under the name? The question is not one quite easy of settlement, as our authorities upon it are not all reconcilable with one another. In the general list of contents of the *Asvamedha Parvan*, which is given at the end of that *Parvan* in the edition printed at Bombay, we read that the first section is the *Vyâsa Vâkya*, and the second the *Samvartamaruttîya*. With neither of these have we aught to do here. The list then goes on thus : ' *Anugîtâ*, *Vâsudevâgamana*, *Brâhmaṇa Gîtâ*, *Gurusishyasamvâda*, *Uttankopâkhyâna*,' and so forth. With the later sections, again, we are not here concerned. Now let us compare this list with the list which may be obtained from the titles of the chapters in the body of the work itself. With the sixteenth chapter, then, of the *Asvamedha Parvan*, begins what is here called the *Anugîtâ Parvan* ; and that chapter and the three following chapters are described as the sixteenth, seventeenth, eighteenth, and nineteenth chapters respectively of the *Anugîtâ Parvan*, which forms part of the *Asvamedha Parvan*. The title of the twentieth chapter contains a small, but important, addition. It runs thus, 'Such is the twentieth chapter of the *Anugîtâ Parvan*, forming part of the *Asvamedha Parvan*—being the *Brahma Gîtâ*.' This form is continued down to the thirty-fourth chapter, only *Brâhmaṇa*



Gîtâ being substituted for Brahma Gîtâ. At the close of the thirty-fifth chapter, there is another alteration caused by the substitution of Gurusishyasaṁvâda for Brâhmaṇa Gîtâ ; and this continues down to the fifty-first chapter, where the thread of the narrative is again taken up—the philosophical parenthesis, if I may so say, having come to an end. With the fifty-first chapter our present translation also ends. Now it appears from the above comparison, that the list of contents set out above is accurate, save in so far as it mentions Vâsudevâgamaṇa as a distinct section of the Asvamedha Parvan. No such section seems to be in existence. And there appears to be nothing in the Asvamedha Parvan to which that title could be appropriately allotted. The edition printed at Madras agrees in all essential particulars with the Bombay edition ; with this difference, that even at the close of the twentieth chapter, the name is Brâhmaṇa Gîtâ, and not Brahma Gîtâ as it is in the Bombay edition. The Calcutta edition also agrees in these readings. Turning now to a MS. procured for me by my excellent friend Professor Âbâgî Vishṇu Kâthavate at Ahmedabad, and bearing date the 15th of Phâlguna Vadya 1823, Sunday, we find there at the end of the Asvamedha Parvan a list of contents like that which we have seen in the printed edition. The relevant portion of that list is as follows : ‘ Samvartamarut-tiya, Anugîtâ, Gurusishyasaṁvâda, and Uttankopâkhyâna.’ Here we find neither the erroneous entry of Vâsudevâgamaṇa, nor the correct entry of Brahma Gîtâ, which are both contained in the other list. In another MS. which I have now before me, and which has been lent me by Professor Bhândârkar, who purchased it in Puna for the Government of Bombay—in this MS., which contains the commentary of Arguna Misra, the earlier chapters are described not as chapters of the Anugîtâ Parvan, but of the Anugîtâ contained in the Asvamedha Parvan, and they are numbered there as they are numbered in our translation, not continuously with the numbering of the previous chapters of the Asvamedha Parvan. At the close of chapter IV, we have an explicit statement that the Anugîtâ ends there. Then the Brahma Gîtâ begins. And the first chapter is

the conclusion to be derived from it must be, that Saṅkara and Vigñāna must have considered the chapters of the *Asvamedha Parvan* from which their respective quotations are taken as not forming part of the *Anugîtâ*.

The testimony we have thus collected is apparently of considerable weight. Against it, however, we have to weigh some testimony which appears to me to be entitled, upon the whole, to even greater weight. In the *Sāṅkhya-sāra* of Vigñāna Bhikshu, to which we have already referred, we have two quotations<sup>1</sup> from the *Anugîtâ* which are distinctly stated to be taken from that work. The first occurs in our translation at p. 332, the second at p. 313. Now, if we adopt the conclusion above referred to, regarding the correct titles of the thirty-six chapters which we have translated, it is a mistake to attribute the passages in question to the *Anugîtâ*. They would, on that view, form part of the *Gurusishyasamvāda*. Again, in his commentary on the *Sanatsugâtīya*, Saṅkara refers to sundry passages which he expressly says are taken from the *Anugîtâ*, but which are not contained in the *Anugîtâ* as limited by the evidence we have considered above. One of the passages referred to is taken from chapter XI of our translation, and others are contained in the comments on *Sanatsugâtīya* I, 6, and on I, 20 and I, 41<sup>2</sup>. It is difficult to resist the conclusion to which this positive evidence leads. One cannot possibly explain this evidence upon the view which we have first stated; while, on the other hand, the points which apparently support that view are capable of some explanation on the theory that the *Anugîtâ* includes all the chapters here translated. And that in this wise. The passages which we have referred to as cited by Saṅkara and Vigñāna from a *Purāṇa* and from the *Bhārata* may have been actually taken from some other work than the *Anugîtâ*. Even waiving the fact that the readings are different,—though in regard especially to the quotation given by Saṅkara it is not one to be entirely lost sight of,—there is this fact which is of great and almost conclusive weight on such a point as

<sup>1</sup> Pp. 15, 21. The latter corresponds to Saṅkara's quotation above referred to.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 206 note.

this, namely, that we have many instances of passages common, almost verbatim et literatim, to the Mahābhārata and other works. For one instance, take the very passage on which a chronological argument has been founded by us in the Introduction to the Sanatsugâtīya<sup>1</sup>. It ought to have been there pointed out, that the stanza about a young man being bound to rise to receive an elderly person, occurs in the Manu Smṛiti<sup>2</sup> also in exactly the same words. The omission to note this circumstance in its proper place in the Introduction to the Sanatsugâtīya was due to a mere inadvertence. But the conclusion there hinted at was expressed in very cautious language, and with many qualifications, out of regard to circumstances such as those which we are now considering. Similar repetitions may be pointed out in other places. The passage about the Kshetragña and Sattva and their mutual relations (see p. 374) occurs, as pointed out in the note there, in at least two other places in the Mahābhārata. The passage likewise which occurs in Gītā, p. 103, about the 'hands, feet, &c., on all sides,' is one which may be seen, to my own knowledge, in about half a dozen places in the Mahābhārata. Such cases, I believe, may be easily multiplied; and they illustrate and are illustrated by Mr. Freeman's proposition respecting the epic age in Greece, to which we have already alluded. It follows, consequently, that the quotations from Saṅkara and Vigñāna, to which we have referred above, do not militate very strongly against the final conclusion at which we have arrived. The testimony of the MSS. and the commentators is of considerably greater force. But Nilakantha, whatever his merits as an exegete—and even these are often marred by a persistent effort to read his own foregone conclusions into the text he comments on—Nilakantha is but an indifferent authority in the domain of historical criticism. In his commentary on the Sanatsugâtīya, for instance, he tells us that he has admitted into his text sundry verses which were not in the copy used by Saṅkara, and for which he had none but a very modern voucher, and he very naively adds that he has done so on the principle of collecting all

<sup>1</sup> P. 139, and cf. p. 176 with Vishnu XXX, 44 seq.

<sup>2</sup> See II, 120.

good things to a focus. Arguna Misra is a very much more satisfactory commentator. But he is not likely to be a writer of a very remote date. I assume, that he must be more recent than Saṅkarâkârya, though I cannot say that I have any very tenable ground for the assumption. But assuming that, I think it more satisfactory to adopt Saṅkarâkârya's nomenclature, and to treat the thirty-six chapters here translated as constituting the Anugîtâ. It is not improbable, if our assumption is correct, that the division of the thirty-six chapters in the manner we have seen may have come into vogue after the date of Vigñâna Bhikshu, who, according to Dr. F. E. Hall, 'lived in all probability in the sixteenth or seventeenth century, and whom there is some slight reason for carrying back still further <sup>1</sup>.'

Do these thirty-six chapters, then, form one integral work? Are they all the work of one and the same author? These are the questions which next present themselves for consideration. The evidence bearing upon them, however, is, as might be expected, excessively scanty. Of external evidence, indeed, we have really none, barring Saṅkara's statement in his commentary on the *Bṛihadâraṇyaka-upanishad*<sup>2</sup> that the verse which he there quotes from the Anugîtâ has Vyâsa for its author. That statement indicates that Saṅkara accepted the current tradition of Vyâsa's authorship of the Anugîtâ; and such acceptance, presumably, followed from his acceptance of the tradition of Vyâsa's authorship of the entire Mahâbhârata. If that tradition is incorrect, and Vyâsa is not the author of the Anugîtâ, we have no means of ascertaining who is the author. And as to the tradition in question, it is difficult, in the present state of our materials, to form any satisfactory judgment. We therefore proceed at once to consider whether the Anugîtâ is really one work. And I must admit at the outset that I find it difficult to answer this question. There are certainly some circumstances connected with the work which might be regarded as indicating a different authorship of different parts of it. Thus

<sup>1</sup> See Preface, Sâṅkhya-sâra, p. 37.

<sup>2</sup> P. 234.

in an early portion of the work, we find the first personal pronoun is used, where the Supreme Being is evidently intended to be signified, and yet the passage is not put into the mouth of *Kṛishṇa*, but of the *Brāhmaṇa*. A similar passage occurs a little later on also. Now it must be taken to be a somewhat strained interpretation of the words used in the passages in question to suppose that the speaker there used the first personal pronoun, identifying himself for the nonce with the Supreme Being<sup>1</sup>. Again, in a passage still further on, we have the vocative O *Pārtha*! where the person addressed is not *Arguna* at all, but the *Brāhmaṇa*'s wife. Now these lapses are susceptible of two explanations—either we are to see in them so many cases of ‘Homer nodding,’ or we may suppose that they are errors occasioned by one writer making additions to the work of a previous writer, without a vivid recollection of the framework of the original composition into which his own work had to be set<sup>2</sup>. I own, that on balancing the probabilities on the one side and the other, my mind rather leans to the hypothesis of one author making a slip in the plexus of his own story within story, rather than the hypothesis of a deliberate interpolator forgetting the actual scheme of the original work into which he was about to foist his own additions<sup>3</sup>. And this the rather, that we find a similar slip towards the very beginning of the work, where we have the *Brāhmaṇa* *Kāśyapa* addressed as *Parantapa*, or destroyer of foes—an epithet which, I think, is exclusively reserved for *Kshatriyas*, and is, in any case, a very inappropriate one to apply to a humble seeker for spiritual light. This slip appears to me to be incapable of explanation on any theory of interpolation<sup>4</sup>. And hence the other slips above noted can hardly be regarded as supporting any such theory. Another circumstance, not indeed bearing

<sup>1</sup> In fact the *Brāhmaṇa* is not identified with the Supreme Being afterwards. But that fact has not much bearing on the question here.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Wilson's *Dasakumārakarita*, Introd. p. 22.

<sup>3</sup> The third alternative, that a work independently written was afterwards bodily thrown into the *Mahābhārata*, is one which in the circumstances here seems to me improbable.

<sup>4</sup> See also pp. 235, 252, 299.

out that theory, but rendering interpolations possible, deserves to be noted. The scheme of the Anugîtâ certainly lends itself to interpolations. A story might without much difficulty be added to the series of story joined to story which it contains. Against this, however, it must not be forgotten, that the Sânti Parvan of the Mahâbhârata and the Yogavâsishtha exhibit a precisely similar framework of contents, and that the Pañkatantra and the Kathâsaritsâgara, among other works, follow the same model. And from this fact it may be fairly argued, that while there is, doubtless, room for suspecting interpolations in such cases, there is this to be remembered, that with respect to any particular one of these cases, such suspicion can carry us but a very short way. And further, it is to be observed, *valeat quantum*, that the connexion of the several chapters of the Anugîtâ one with the other is not altogether a loose one, save at one or two points only, while they are all linked on to the main body of the narrative, only in what we have treated as the last chapter of the Anugîtâ, without any trace of any other connecting link anywhere else. Upon the whole, therefore, we here conclude, though not without doubt, that the whole of the Anugîtâ is the work of one author.

The next question to be discussed is the important one of the age of the work. The quotations already given above from Saṅkarâkârya's works, and one other which is referred to in the note below<sup>1</sup>, suffice to show that the Anugîtâ must have been some few centuries old in the time of Saṅkarâkârya. For whether we treat the Anugîtâ as a part of the original Mahâbhârata or not, it is not likely that such a scholar as Saṅkara would have accepted the book as a genuine part of the Mahâbhârata, and as a work of Vyâsa, if it had not been in his day of some respectable antiquity, of antiquity sufficient to have thrown the real author into oblivion, and to have substi-

<sup>1</sup> See Sankara, Sârinaka Bhâshya, p. 726. That, however, may be a quotation from some other work. It may be noted that the passages quoted in the Bhâshya on Sanatsugâtîya I, 20 and I, 41 are not to be traced in our copies, though expressly stated there to have been taken from the Anugîtâ.

tuted in his place Vyâsa, who lived at the junction of the Dvâpara and Kali ages<sup>1</sup>, upwards of thirty centuries before the Christian era. The calculation is avowedly a very rough one, but I think we may, as the result of it, safely fix the third century of the Christian era as the latest date at which the Anugîtâ can have been composed. Let us now endeavour to find out whether we can fix the date as lying within any better defined period. It is scarcely needful to say, that the Anugîtâ dates from a period considerably subsequent to the age of the Upanishads. The passages relating to the Prânasamvâda and so forth, which occur originally in the Upanishads, are referred to in the Anugîtâ as 'ancient stories'—an indication that the Upanishads had already come to be esteemed as ancient compositions at the date of the latter work. It is not necessary, therefore, to go through an elaborate examination of the versions of the ancient stories alluded to above, as contained in the Upanishads and in the Anugîtâ, more especially because it is possible for us to show that the Anugîtâ is later than the Bhagavadgîtâ, which latter work, as we have seen, is later than the Upanishads. And to this point we shall now address ourselves. We have already observed upon the story referred to at the opening of this Introduction, which, historically interpreted, indicates the priority of the Bhagavadgîtâ to the Anugîtâ. This conclusion is confirmed by sundry other circumstances, which we must now discuss in some detail, as they are also of use in helping to fix the position of the work in the history of Sanskrit literature and philosophy. First, then, it seems to me, that the state of society mirrored in the Anugîtâ indicates a greater advance in social evolution than we have already seen is disclosed in the Bhagavadgîtâ. Not to mention decorations of houses and so forth, which are alluded to in one passage of the Anugîtâ, we are here told of royal oppressions, of losses of wealth accumulated with great difficulty, and of fierce captivities; we are told, to adapt the language of a modern English poet, of laws grinding the weak, for strong men rule the

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Sâtraka Bhâshya, p. 913.

law; we have references to the casting of images with liquefied iron, and to the use of elephants as vehicles<sup>1</sup>; and we meet with protests against the amusements of music and dancing, and against the occupation of artisans<sup>2</sup>. True it is, that all these indications put together, fail to constitute what, according to the standard of modern times, would be called a highly artificial state of society. But it seems to me to mark a very perceptible and distinct advance beyond the social condition when mankind was divided into four castes or classes, with such a division of duties, to put it briefly, as that of preparation for a future world, government of this world, agriculture and trade, and service respectively<sup>3</sup>. Artisans, it will be observed, are not even referred to in the Bhagavadgîtâ, nor is there any trace of royal oppressions, or unequal laws. Then as regards music, it may be noted, that there are references to it in the Brâhadâraṇyaka and Kaushîtaki-upanishads<sup>4</sup>, without any indications of disapprobation. The protest against music, therefore, and the sister art of dancing, is probably to be explained as evoked by some abuses of the two arts which must have come into prevalence about the time of the composition of the Anugîtâ. A similar protest is found recorded in the Dharmasâstras of Manu and Âpastamba and Gautama<sup>5</sup>. We shall consider in the sequel the chronological positions of the Anugîtâ with reference to those Dharmasâstras. But we have already pointed out that the Gîtâ stands prior to them both<sup>6</sup>.

Look again at the views on caste which are embodied in the Anugîtâ and the Bhagavadgîtâ respectively. The reference to the Kshatriya as representing the quality of passion, while the Brâhmaṇa represents the quality of goodness<sup>7</sup>, seems to place a considerably larger distance between the Brâhmaṇa and the Kshatriya than is suggested by the Bhagavadgîtâ, and thus marks an advance in the direction of the later doctrine on the subject. And in connexion

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Lalita Vistara, p. 17.

<sup>2</sup> See pp. 325-365.

<sup>3</sup> See Gîtâ, p. 126.

<sup>4</sup> See Brâhadâraṇyaka, p. 454, and Kaushîtaki, p. 68.

<sup>5</sup> See Buhler's Âpastamba I, 1, 3, 11, Gautama II, 13, and Manu II, 178.

<sup>6</sup> P. 21 seq.

<sup>7</sup> P. 329.



with this, perhaps, the discrepancy between the reading of the *Bhagavadgītā* at p. 85, and that of the *Anugītā* at p. 255, is not entirely without significance, though much weight would not be due to it, if it stood alone. The expression 'devoted royal sages,' which we find in the one work, makes way for 'well-read Kshatriyas who are intent on their own duties' in the other. Again, although the passage at p. 353 is undoubtedly susceptible of a different interpretation, it seems to me, that the word 'twice-born' there employed, was meant to be interpreted as meaning the *Brāhmaṇas*, and not the three twice-born castes; and if this interpretation is correct, we have here the very proposition upon the absence of which in the *Bhagavadgītā* we have already made some observations<sup>1</sup>. That twice-born in the passage in question means *Brāhmaṇa* only, is, of course, not a proved fact. But having regard to the passages noted above and to the passage at p. 320, where reference is made to disparagement of *Brāhmaṇas*—it is not twice-born there—and in the same clause with disparagement of gods and Vedas, it seems to me that the interpretation we have suggested must be taken to be the true one. And it is to be further noted, that this conclusion is corroborated by a comparison of the passage now under consideration with a passage occurring in the *Sānti Parvan*<sup>2</sup>, in the *Rāgadharma* section of it, where we read that 'the cow is the first among quadrupeds, gold among metals, a mantra among words, and the *Brāhmaṇa* is the first among bipeds.' The cow and gold occur in the passage in the *Anugītā* also, very near the clause we are now discussing. And it is allowable to argue, that reading the two together, twice-born in the *Anugītā* must be interpreted to be synonymous with *Brāhmaṇa* in the *Rāgadharma*. And the same conclusion is, to my mind, confirmed indirectly by comparing the clause 'the twice-born among men' of the *Anugītā* with 'the ruler of men among men' of that *Bhagavadgītā*, the teaching of which the former work professes to recapitulate.

---

<sup>1</sup> P. 24 supra.

<sup>2</sup> See note at p. 353.

A similar inference seems to be derivable from a comparison of the specific doctrines as to the duties of Brâhmaṇas which are enunciated in the Gîtâ and the Anugîtâ. In the latter work, the famous six duties are expressly mentioned. We have already argued in our Introduction to the Gîtâ, that a comparison of the teaching of that work upon this point with the teaching of Âpastamba and Manu shows the former to have been older than the latter. The six duties mentioned in the Anugîtâ are those also mentioned by Manu and Âpastamba. It follows, therefore, that the Gîtâ is prior to the Anugîtâ also. Whether the Anugîtâ is prior or subsequent to Manu and Âpastamba, is a question which will have to be discussed in the sequel.

The net result of the whole of this comparison appears to me to clearly show the Anugîtâ to be a work of considerably more recent date than the Bhagavadgîtâ. What interval of time lay between the two, is a most interesting, but also a most difficult, question. The differences we have noted appear to me to indicate a pretty wide interval. If I am right in regarding the Gîtâ as a work of what may be called, for practical purposes, the age of the older Upanishads, I am inclined to think that the interval between the Gîtâ and the Anugîtâ must have been one of larger extent than even three or four centuries. For as we have already pointed out, the description of the various 'Itihâsas' mentioned in the Anugîtâ as 'purâtana'—ancient—points to at least three or four centuries having elapsed between the close of the Upanishad period and the composition of the Anugîtâ. It is obvious, however, that this result is not one with which we can rest satisfied. Even if it were more precise and accurate, it would only fix the age of the Anugîtâ with reference to the age of another work itself of unknown and unascertained date. We must therefore endeavour to compare the Anugîtâ with some other work, the date of which is better known. For this purpose, it seems to be not of any great use to refer to the Sâṅkhya and Yoga-sûtras, although it is not improbable that some materials might be forthcoming for a useful comparison between them and the Anugîtâ. Neither the Sâṅkhya nor the Yoga-sûtras can

be said to have their ages fixed with even any approach to accuracy. And in the case of the Sāṅkhya-sūtras, there is the further difficulty presented by the circumstance, that there is room for very serious doubts as to whether the current Sūtras are really of the authorship of Kapila, or whoever else was the original founder of the system. With regard to the Yoga, one or two observations from a different point of view may not, however, be entirely out of place. At p. 248 the Yoga Sāstra is referred to *eo nomine*. What Sāstra is here alluded to? Is it Patañjali's, or some other Sāstra dealing with similar topics? Or, again, is it an entirely different matter that is alluded to, and are we not to see in the expression in question an allusion to any system formally propounded? I own, as stated in the note on the passage, that my mind inclines to the last view. There is not very much to say on either side of the question, as far as I am able to understand it. But the view I incline to appears to have one small circumstance in its favour. At p. 249 we have an allusion to persons who understand the Yoga, and to a certain illustration propounded by them. Now who are these persons? My limited knowledge of Yoga literature has not enabled me to trace the illustration anywhere else than in the Kaṭhopanishad, and in the Sanatsugâtiya. It seems to me very unlikely, that the illustration can have been put forward in any work older than the Kaṭhopanishad. And we may, I think, assume it as most probable that the Sanatsugâtiya borrowed it from that work. If so, it is not likely that the Anugîtâ can have referred to any other master of the Yoga than the author of the Kaṭhopanishad. And then it would seem to follow, that the Anugîtâ must have been composed at a time when, although the Upanishads were looked on with reverence and as works of authority, they were not yet regarded as part and parcel of the Vedic revelation<sup>1</sup>. It is impossible not to perceive, that the train of reasoning here is at every stage hedged round with difficulties and doubts. And the inference therefore to which we are led by it must be accepted with proportionate

<sup>1</sup> This seems to be also the implication of the passage at p. 309, where the rules for final emancipation are alluded to. •

which was the view of a school esteemed heretical by the author and his co-religionists. This passage, therefore, also fails to furnish any tangible ground for a chronological inference, at all events in the present state of our knowledge. Lastly, we come to the allusion to those who indulge in constant talk in disparagement of Vedas and Brāhmaṇas, the two being thus bracketed together in the original. That seems, at the first blush, to be a somewhat more distinct allusion to Buddhism than any of those we have noted above. But even that is not unambiguous. If the stanzas quoted by Mādhavâkârya, in his Sarvadarsanasaṅgraha in its first section, are the composition of the original founder of the Kârvâka school, or even if they correctly represent the earliest opinions of that school, it is at least quite as likely that the Kârvâkas were the target for the denunciations of the Anugītā in the passage in question as that the Buddhists were so. To me, indeed, it appears to be more likely. For Buddha's opinion with regard to the Vedas is, that they are inadequate; with regard to the Brāhmaṇas, that they are in no sense the chosen of God as they claim to be. The opinion of the Kârvâkas, on the other hand, is a far more aggressive one, so to say. According to Mādhavâkârya, they taught that the Vedas were either simple fatuity or imposture, and that the Brāhmaṇas were impostors. It seems to me much more likely, that this, which I have called a comparatively aggressive attitude, was the one at which the remarks of the Anugītā were levelled; and more especially does this appear to be correct when we remember, that the view taught by Gautama Buddha regarding the Vedas and the Brāhmaṇas was propounded by him only in its strongest form; and that even before his time, the doctrine of the inadequacy of the Vedas for the purpose of securing the *sum'mum bonum* of humanity had been taught by other teachers. It is further to be recollected, that we have evidence showing that other thinkers also than Buddha, or Brîhaspati, had in early days attacked the authority of the Vedas. Kautsa is the name of one who was probably the most distinguished among them. It is certainly possible that his followers

were the people branded as of 'the dark quality' by the Anugîtâ in the passage in question. We have, therefore, at least two different recognised bodies of thinkers, and one individual thinker, to whom the words under discussion may apply, and it is plainly unsafe, under these circumstances, to draw any chronological inference based on the hypothesis of one particular body out of those three being the one intended by the author. Before closing this part of the investigation, it may be interesting to note, that the phrase 'turning the wheel,' a phrase now so familiar to us as one of the household words of Buddhism, is used in the Anugîtâ with respect to king Ganaka. I do not think, however, that either alone, or even coupled with the word Nirvâna, that phrase can be made the basis of any legitimate deduction in favour of the priority of the Anugîtâ to Buddhism. At the outside, the only deduction admissible, if any deduction were admissible, would be, that the Anugîtâ was composed prior to the recognition, of Nirvâna and Kâkrapravartana as specially Buddhistic words. But priority to such recognition is not, I apprehend, necessarily synonymous with priority to the rise of Buddhism.

The net result of this part of the investigation appears to be, that we have pretty strong grounds for holding the Anugîtâ to belong to a period very considerably removed from the period of the Upanishads and the Bhagavadgîtâ ; but that we have no tangible grounds on which to base any deduction regarding its priority or otherwise to the Sâṅkhya and Yoga systems of philosophy, or to the great movement of Gautama Buddha. There is only one other point, which we can establish in a not entirely unsatisfactory way, and which enables us to draw closer the limits within which the Anugîtâ must have been composed. That point is the position of the Anugîtâ with reference to Âpastamba's Dharma-sûtra. I need not say again, that I accept here the proposition about the age of Âpastamba which has been laid down by Dr. Buhler, as a sufficiently satisfactory working hypothesis. And accepting that proposition, I venture to suggest the fourth cêntury B.C. as a not unlikely date for the Anugîtâ. It appears to me, that a comparison of

to Brâhmanas are the famous six referred to in our Introduction to the Bhagavadgîtâ, and two others superadded, namely, inheritance and gleanings in the fields. These last are not mentioned in the Anugîtâ, or in Manu either, and are, even according to Âpastamba, common to Brâhmanas with Kshatriyas and Vaisyas. But as regards the six above referred to, it is worthy of note, that the Anugîtâ apparently groups them into two distinct sets of three. The first set of three consists of those which, in our Introduction to the Bhagavadgîtâ, we have characterised as constituting rather the rights than the duties of Brâhmanas, and which the Anugîtâ describes as 'means of livelihood for Brâhmanas.' The other set of three consists of real duties, and these the Anugîtâ speaks of as 'pious duties.' This grouping appears to me to furnish powerful corroboration of the view put forward in our Introduction to the Bhagavadgîtâ. It would seem, that the possession of the moral and spiritual merits which, according to the Gîtâ, constituted the duty of Brâhmanas, in the simple and archaic society there disclosed, was developed, in a more advanced and artificial state of society, into the performance of the 'pious duties' of the Anugîtâ and the duties which are 'the means of livelihood.' Then in the further social evolution, in the course of which the old spiritual view began to be forgotten, and the actual facts of the past began to be transmuted into the dogmatic rules of the future, the occupations of receiving presents, imparting instruction, and officiating at sacrifices, became the special occupations of the Brâhmanas, and the distinction between these occupations from their higher duties was thrown into the background; and accordingly we find no allusion to any such distinction in Âpastamba or Manu, or, as far as I know, in any other later embodiment of the current ideas on the subject<sup>1</sup>. If all this has been correctly argued, the conclusion derivable from it is in entire accord with that which we have already drawn, namely, that the Bhagavadgîtâ, the Anugîtâ, and the Dharma-sûtra of Âpastamba, belong to different

<sup>1</sup> In Gautama X, 1-3, the 'pious duties' are called 'obligatory,' the others 'additional for Brâhmanas.' See the note on the passage in Bühler's edition, and cf. Gautama VIII, 9, 10.

stages of ancient Indian history, and that the stage to which the *Gîtâ* belongs is the earliest, and that to which *Âpastamba* belongs, the latest of such stages.

I am unable to find anything else in the way of internal evidence bearing upon the date of the *Anugîtâ*. It appears to me, that the date to which the investigation we have now gone through leads us, is one which, in the present state of our information, may be fairly accepted as a provisional hypothesis. It does not appear to me to conflict with any ascertained dates, while it is pointed to as probable by the various lines of testimony which we have here considered. We now proceed to discuss one or two other points which may have a bearing upon this topic, but which at present cannot yield us any positive guidance in our search for the date of the *Anugîtâ*. And first among these, let us consider the various names of deities that occur in different parts of the work. We have, then, *Vishnu*, *Sambhu*, *Gishnu*, *Soma*, *Âditya*, *Sûrya*, *Mitra*, *Agni*, *Kandra*, *Rudra*, *Siva*, *Varuna*, *Pragâpati*, *Maghavat*, *Purandara*, *Indra*, *Brahman*, *Satakratu*, *Dharma*, *Nârâyana*, *Vâyu*, *Yama*, *Tvashtri*, *Hari*, *Îsvara*, and lastly *Umâ* under three different names, namely, *Umâ*, *Mâhesvari*, and *Pârvatî*. Now, leaving aside for the moment the three names of *Umâ*, which appear from the passage where they are used to be all three the names of the same goddess, there is no doubt that in the list above set out, some of the names are merely used in different passages, but still to indicate the same being. Thus, *Indra*, *Satakratu*, *Purandara*, and *Maghavat* are really the names of one and the same deity. But when *Soma* is mentioned as the deity presiding over the tongue, and *Kandramas* as the deity presiding over the mind, it becomes doubtful whether the two names do really indicate the same deity, albeit in later Sanskrit *Soma* and *Kandramas* both signify the moon. Similarly, when *Arka* is said to be the deity presiding over the eye, and *Mitra* over another organ, it seems open to question whether *Arka* and *Mitra* both signify the sun there, as they undoubtedly do in classical Sanskrit. True it is, that even in such a recent work as the *Sâṅkhya-sâra*, this mention

of Arka and Mitra as presiding deities of two several organs does occur. But it is plain, that that circumstance can have no bearing on the inquiry before us, for the Sâṅkhya-sâra is avowedly a compilation based on older authorities, and in the particular part under consideration, really reproduces a passage from some older work. It cannot, therefore, be argued, that because Arka and Mitra were identified with one another at the time of the Sâṅkhya-sâra, and yet are mentioned as deities of two separate organs, therefore, they must have also been regarded as one in the older original work where they are also mentioned as deities of two separate organs. And it may, perhaps, be remarked here in passing, that the Vedânta Paribhâṣhâ has *Mṛityu* instead of *Mitra*, which would get rid of the difficulty here altogether ; while as regards *Soma* and *Kandramas*, the passage in the Sâṅkhya-sâra reads *Praketas* instead of *Soma*, which would get rid of the other difficulty above pointed out. Whether these discrepancies are owing to any tampering with the lists of organs and deities, at a time when the later identifications between different deities took place, or whether they are to be explained on some other theory, it is impossible at present to say. And, therefore, it is also unnecessary to pursue the inquiry here any further. It must suffice for the present to have drawn attention to the matter.

Akin to this point, though quite distinct from it, is one which arises on a passage where the emancipated being is identified with *Vishṇu*, *Mitra*, *Agni*, *Varuṇa*, and *Pragâpati*<sup>1</sup>. Now it is reasonable to suppose, that the deities thus specified here must have been among those held in highest repute at the time, the whole significance of the passage where they are mentioned requiring that that should be so. But in our Pantheon as disclosed by our later literature, *Mitra* and *Agni* and *Varuṇa* occupy but a very subordinate position. Even in *Kâlidâsa*<sup>2</sup>, the subordination of these deities to our celebrated Trinity seems to be quite

<sup>1</sup> See p. 345.

<sup>2</sup> See inter alia, *Kumâra* II, 20 seq., and VII, 44 seq., and cf. our *Bhartsrîhari* (Bombay Sanskrit Classics), Introd. p. xix.



fully established. But, on the other hand, in the Vedic theogony, they are among the most prominent deities. In the Taittirîya-upanishad, we have in the very first sentence Mitra, Varuna, Vishnu, and Brahman (who may be identified with Pragâpati) all mentioned together, and their blessings invoked. This does not help in fixing a date for the Anugîtâ; but it lends some support to the conclusion already arrived at on that point, by showing that the theogony of the Anugîtâ is not yet very far removed from the theogony of the Vedic times, while it is separated by a considerable interval from the theogony disclosed in the works of even such an early writer of the classical period as Kâlidâsa.

Another point of similar bearing on our present investigation is the mode in which the story of Parasurâma is dealt with in the Anugîtâ. There is in the first place no allusion to his being an incarnation of Vishnu, nor to the encounter between him and his namesake, the son of Dasaratha and the hero of the Râmâyana. We have, on the contrary, an explicit statement, that after the advice of the 'Pitris' he entirely abandons the slaughter of the Kshatriyas, and resorting to penance thereby achieves final emancipation. We have elsewhere argued<sup>1</sup>, that the theory of Parasurâma being an incarnation of Vishnu, must have probably originated prior to the time of Bhartrihari, but later than the time of Kâlidâsa. The allusion to Parasurâma in the work before us does not, however, enable us to judge of its chronological position with reference to Kâlidâsa. But the last point discussed renders it unnecessary to consider this question further. It may be noted, by the way, that the Anugîtâ represents Parasurâma, although living in the Âsrama or hermitage of his father, who was a Rishi, as mounting a chariot for the purpose of sweeping away the kinsmen of Kârtavîrya. Whence he obtained a chariot in a hermitage, the Anugîtâ does not explain.

In connexion with the episode of Parasurâma, may be noted the list which occurs in the course of it, of the

<sup>1</sup> See 'Was the Râmâyana copied from Homer?' pp. 56, 57.

degraded Kshatriya tribes, of Dravîḍas, Sabaras, &c. I am unable to see that those names can give us any further help in our present investigation than in so far as they show that, at the time of the Anugîtâ, there must have been some information about the south of India available in the districts where the author of the Anugîtâ lived. Some of the tribes mentioned appear to have been located far in the south of the Indian peninsula. But this is a point on which we shall have to say something more in discussing the next item of internal evidence to which we shall refer. Here it is enough to point out that some of the tribes mentioned in the Anugîtâ are also referred to in no less a work than the Aitareya-brâhmaṇa<sup>1</sup>.

We come next to the enumeration of the principal mountains which is contained in one passage of the Anugîtâ. Those mountains are the Himâlaya, the Pâriyâtra, the Sahya, the Vindhya, the Trikûṭavat, the Sveta, the Nîla, the Bhâsa, the Koshîṭavat, the Mahendra, the Mâlyavat, and perhaps the Guruskandha. I am not sure whether the last name is intended to be taken as a proper name, or only as an epithet of Mahendra. Now compared with the mountains mentioned in the Bhagavadgîtâ, this is certainly a remarkable list. The Gîtâ mentions only Meru<sup>2</sup> and Himâlaya; while here we have in the Anugîtâ the Sahya, and Malaya, and Trikûṭavat, and Nîla (the same, I presume, with the modern Nilgiri, the Sanatorium of the Madras Presidency), which take us far to the west and south of the Indian peninsula; and the Mahendra and Mâlyavat, which, coupled with the mention of the river Ganges, cover a considerable part of the eastern districts. The Pâriyâtra and Vindhya occupy the regions of Central India. The Anugîtâ, therefore, seems to belong to that period in the history of India, when pretty nearly the whole,

<sup>1</sup> Haug's ed., p. 183. And see generally on these tribes, Wilson's *Vishṇu Purâṇa* (Hall's ed.), vol. II, p. 170 seq., and *Sânti Parvan* (Moksha), chap. 207, st. 42.

<sup>2</sup> This is also mentioned in the Anugîtâ, but in a different passage. The Nîla is said by Professor Wilson to be a mountain in Orissa. But our suggestion has, I find, been already made by Dr. F. E. Hall also; see on this, and generally, Wilson's *Vishṇu Purâṇa*, vol. II, p. 141 seq. (ed. Hall). See also Indian Antiquary, VI, 133 seq.

if not absolutely the whole, of the Indian continent was known to the Sanskrit-speaking population of the country. When was this knowledge reached? It is difficult to fix the precise period; and even if it could be fixed, it would not help us to fix satisfactorily any point of time to which the *Anugîtâ* could be attributed. But it may be pointed out here, that in *Patañjali's* *Mahâbhâshya* we have evidence of such knowledge having been possessed by the *Âryas* in the second century B.C. In truth, the evidence available in the *Mahâbhâshya* is even fuller than this in the *Anugîtâ*. For *Patañjali* tells us of a town or city in the south named *Kânîkîpura*<sup>1</sup>; he speaks of the dominions of the *Pândya* kings, and of the *Kôla* and *Kerala* districts<sup>2</sup>; he refers also to the large tanks of the south; and he makes allusions to linguistic usages current in the southern and other provinces<sup>3</sup>. Before *Patañjali's* time there had taken place *Mahendra's* invasion of *Ceylon*, and the invading army must have penetrated through the southern provinces. And there had been also put up the great Inscriptions of *Asoka*, which have attracted so much interest, and are proving such prolific sources of information in various departments of knowledge. One of these inscriptions was at *Gaṇḍam*, which is not very far from the *Mahendra* mountain alluded to in the *Anugîtâ*<sup>4</sup>. All these facts support the conclusion drawn by *General Cunningham* from the correctness of the information given to *Alexander the Great* by the *Hindus* of his time, namely, that 'the *Indians*, even at that early date in their history, had a very accurate knowledge of the form and extent of their native land<sup>5</sup>.' And not only do they support that conclusion, they show that the knowledge covered other facts regarding

<sup>1</sup> *Banâras* ed., p. 74 (IV, 2, 2).

<sup>2</sup> P. 60 (IV, 1, 4). See also p. 65.

<sup>3</sup> See *Mahâbhâshya*, p. 82 (I, 1, 5), p. 16 (I, 1, 1); and cf. *Muir, Sanskrit Texts*, vol. ii, pp. 152, 355.

<sup>4</sup> See *Cunningham's Corpus Inscriptionum*, I, p. 1.

<sup>5</sup> See *Ancient Geography of India*, p. 3. And compare also the information collected in the *Periplus of the Eurythraean Sea* (translated by Mr. *McRindle*), pp. 112-136, where a large number of ports is mentioned as existing on the Indian coasts. The *Periplus* seems to date from about 90 A. D. (see *ibid.* p. 5). •

*their native land than its form and extent. It follows consequently that this enumeration of mountains does not require the date of the Anugītā to be brought down to a later period than the fourth century B.C., and leaves it open to us, therefore, to accept whatever conclusion the other evidence available may seem to justify. On the other hand, it is plain also, that it affords no positive information as to when the Anugītā was composed, and therefore we need not dwell any further upon the point on the present occasion.*

There are a few other points which arise upon the contents of the Anugītā, but which are not, in the present condition of our knowledge, capable of affording any certain guidance in our present investigation. Thus we have the story of Dharma appearing before king Ganaka disguised as a Bāhmanya. I am not aware of any case of such disguises occurring in any of the Upanishads, although there are numerous parallel instances throughout the Purāṇik literature<sup>1</sup>. It is, however, difficult to draw any definite chronological inference from this fact. There is further the reference to the attack of Rāhu on the sun. It is difficult, in the present state of our knowledge, to say for certain, when the theory of eclipses there implied was prevalent. In the *Kāṇḍogya-upanishad*<sup>2</sup> we have the emancipated self compared to the moon escaped from the mouth of Rāhu. And a text of the *Rig-veda*, quoted by Mr. Yagñesvara Sāstrin in his *Ārya-vidyāsudhākara*<sup>3</sup>, speaks of the demon Rāhu attacking the sun with darkness. Here again we have another matter of some interest; but I cannot see that any safe deduction can be derived from it, without a more ample knowledge of other relevant matters than is at present accessible. Take again the references to certain practices which look very much like the practices of the *Gaiṇas* of the present day. Is the Anugītā, then, earlier or later than the rise of the *Gaiṇa* system? It is not safe, I think, to found an answer to this question upon the very narrow basis afforded by the

<sup>1</sup> And see, too, Kālidāsa Kumāra V, st. 84.

<sup>2</sup> P. 622.

<sup>3</sup> P. 26. In Kālidāsa's *Raghuvamśa* the true explanation of eclipses is alluded to. See Canto XIV, 40.

passage referred to. But it may be observed, that the precepts laid down in the passage in question are laid down as precepts for orthodox Hindus, and not as the doctrines of a heretical sect. They are also very general, and not so minute as those which the *Gainas* of the present day observe as binding upon them. If, therefore, any conclusion is to be drawn from these precepts, it must be that the *Anugîtâ* must have been composed prior to the rise of *Gainism*; and that *Gainism* must have appropriated and developed this doctrine which it obtained from the current *Brâhmanism*<sup>1</sup>. If this is so, the *Anugîtâ* must be a very ancient work indeed. It is not, however, necessary to further work out this line of argument, having regard to the opinions recently expressed by Mr. Thomas<sup>2</sup>, rehabilitating the views enunciated long ago by Colebrooke and others. If those views are correct, and if *Gainism* was a dominant system in this country prior even to the time of Gautama Buddha, and if, further, we are right in the suggestion—for it is no more, it must be remembered—that the *Anugîtâ* dates from a period prior to the rise of *Gainism*, then it would seem to follow that the *Anugîtâ* belongs to some period prior to the sixth century B.C. All this, however, is at present very hypothetical, and we draw attention to it only that the question may be hereafter considered when fuller materials for expressing a final judgment upon it become accessible. Meanwhile, having regard to the views above alluded to as so elaborately put forward by Mr. Thomas, it is possible for us still to hold that, in the present state of our knowledge, the third or fourth century B.C. is not too early a date to assign to the *Anugîtâ*, even on the assumption that the precepts contained in that work regarding the care to be taken of worms and insects were borrowed by it from the *Gaina* system. With this negative result, we must for the present rest contented.

One other fact of similar nature to those we have now

<sup>1</sup> As the Buddhists did in sundry instances Cf. inter alia Buhler's *Gautama*, pp. lv and 191. And cf. also 'Was the *Râmâyana* copied from Homer?' pp. 48, 49.

<sup>2</sup> See Mr. Thomas's very elaborate discussion of the whole subject in the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* (New Series), vol. ix, p. 155 seq.

dealt with may, perhaps, be also noticed here. We allude to the stanzas which we find in the Anugîtâ and also in the Sânti Parvan of the Mahâbhârata and in the Manusmṛiti. There is also one which the Anugîtâ has in common with the Paṛisishṭa of Yâska's Nirukta<sup>1</sup>. It is not possible, I conceive, to say finally whether one of these works borrowed these stanzas from the other of them; while, on the other hand, it is quite possible, as already argued by us in the Introduction to the Gîtâ, that all these works were only reproducing from some entirely different work, or that the stanzas in question were the common property of the thinkers of the time. We have no means available for deciding between these conflicting hypotheses.

We have thus noticed all the salient points in the evidence, external and internal, which is available for determining the position of the Anugîtâ in our ancient literature. Nobody who has seen even a little of the history of that literature will be surprised at the quantity or quality of that evidence, or the nature of the conclusions legitimately yielded by it. We have endeavoured to express those conclusions in language which should not indicate any greater certainty attaching to them than can fairly be claimed for them. The net result appears to be this. The Anugîtâ may be taken with historical certainty to have been some centuries old in the time of the great Saṅkarâcârya. It was very probably older than the Dharma-sûtras of Âpastamba, but by what period of time we are not in a position at present to define. It was, perhaps, older also than the rise of Buddhism and Jainism, and of the Yoga philosophy; but on this it is impossible to say anything with any approach to confidence. It is, on the other hand, almost certain that it belongs to a period very considerably removed from the older Upanishads; probably removed by a distance of some centuries, during which 'stories' not contained in the Upanishads had not only obtained currency, but also come to be regarded as belonging to antiquity<sup>2</sup>. And yet the period to

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Anugîtâ I, 36 with Yâska (ed. Roth), p. 190.

<sup>2</sup> Some of the Purâṇa Itihâsas, e.g. that of Nârada and Devamata, are not traceable in any Vedic work known to us. Devamata's name I do not find referred to anywhere else.

which the work belongs was one in which the Upanishads were only revered as the authoritative opinions of eminent men, not as the words of God himself<sup>1</sup>. In this respect, it may be said that the Anugîtâ seems rather to belong to an earlier stratum of thought than even the Sanatsugâtiya, in which a *Gñânakânda*, as forming a part of the Vedic canon, seems to be recognised<sup>2</sup>. But it is abundantly clear, that the Anugîtâ stands at a very considerable chronological distance from the Bhagavadgîtâ.

Such are the results of our investigation. We have not thought it necessary to discuss the verse or the language of the work. But it must in fairness be pointed out, that upon the whole, the verse and language are both pretty near the classical model. There are, it is true, a few instances of the metrical anomalies we have noticed elsewhere, but having regard to the extent of the work, those instances are far from being very numerous. The language and style, too, are not quite smooth and polished; though, judging from them alone, I should rather be inclined to place the Sanatsugâtiya prior to the Anugîtâ. But that suggests a question which we cannot now stop to discuss.

One word, in conclusion, about the translation. The text used has been chiefly that adopted in the commentary of Arguna Misra, a commentary which on the whole I prefer very much to that of Nilakant̥ha, which has been printed in the Bombay edition of the Mahâbhârata. Arguna Misra, as a rule, affords some explanation where explanation is wanted, and does not endeavour to suit his text to any foregone conclusion. His comments have been of the greatest possible help to me; and my only regret is that the only copy of his commentary which was available to me, and the use of which I owe to the kindness of my friend Professor Bhândârkar, was not as correct a one as could be desired. I have also looked into the Vishamaslokî, a short work containing notes on difficult passages of the Mahâbhârata.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 211 supra.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 146 supra. The Buddhists seem to have borrowed the division of Karma and *Gñânakânda*s. See Dr. Ragendralâla Mitra's *Lalita Vistara* (transl.), p. 21. The division, therefore, was probably older than the first century B. C.

form of yours <sup>1</sup>. But that, O Kesava ! which through affection (for me) you explained before <sup>2</sup>, has all disappeared, O tiger-like man ! from my degenerate mind. Again and again, however, I feel a curiosity about those topics. But (now), O Mâdhava ! you will be going at no distant date to Dvâarakâ.'

Vaisampâyana said :

Thus addressed, that best of speakers, Kṛishna, possessed of great glory, replied in these words after embracing Arguna.

Vâsudeva said :

From me, O son of Prithâ ! you heard a mystery, and learnt about the eternal <sup>3</sup> (principle), about piety in (its true) form, and about all the everlasting worlds <sup>4</sup>. It is excessively disagreeable to me, that you should not have grasped it through want of intelligence. And the recollection (of it) now again is not possible (to me). Really, O son of Pându ! you are devoid of faith and of a bad intellect. And, O Dhanañgaya ! it is not possible for me to repeat in full (what I said before). For that doctrine was perfectly adequate for understanding the seat <sup>5</sup> of the Brahman. It is not possible for me to state it again in full in that way. For then accompanied by my mystic power <sup>6</sup>, I declared to you the Supreme Brahman. But I shall relate an ancient story upon

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Bhagavadgîtâ, chapters X and XI passim.

<sup>2</sup> I.e. in the Bhagavadgîtâ.

<sup>3</sup> This may also be taken with piety thus. 'and learnt about the eternal piety in (its true) form.'

<sup>4</sup> As to the plural, see Saṅkara on *Mundaka*, p. 320.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 78. For 'understanding' here we might, perhaps, substitute 'attaining.' The original word means both understanding and attaining.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 82.



that subject, so that adhering to this knowledge, you may attain the highest goal. O best of the supporters of piety! listen to all that I say. (Once), O restrainer of foes! there came from the heavenly world and the world of Brahman<sup>1</sup>, a Brâhmaṇa difficult to withstand<sup>2</sup>, and he was (duly) honoured by us. (Now) listen, without entertaining any misgivings, O chief of the descendants of Bharata! O son of Prithâ! to what he said on being interrogated by us according to heavenly rules<sup>3</sup>.

The Brâhmaṇa said:

O *Kṛishṇa*! O destroyer of Madhu! I will explain to you accurately what you, out of compassion for (all) beings<sup>4</sup>, have asked me touching the duties (to be performed) for final emancipation. It is destructive of delusion, O Lord! Listen to me with attention<sup>5</sup>, as I relate it, O Mâdhava! A certain Brâhmaṇa named Kâsyapa, who had performed (much) penance, and who best understood piety, approached a certain twice-born (person) who had learnt the Scriptures relating to (all) duties<sup>6</sup>, having heard (of him, as one) who had over and over again gone through all knowledge and experience about coming and going<sup>7</sup>, who was well versed in the true nature of all worlds<sup>8</sup>,

<sup>1</sup> This seems to mean not the Supreme Brahman, but the Creator.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Sanatsugâtîya, p. 161, 'not to be shaken.'

<sup>3</sup> I suppose this to mean according to the forms proper in the case of such a being as the one in question. Cf. Gîtâ, p. 62, and note there.

<sup>4</sup> This is not easy to understand. Perhaps the allusion is to the doctrine at Gîtâ, pp. 54, 55. <sup>5</sup> Cf. *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 447.

<sup>6</sup> I.e. all prescribed acts of piety.

<sup>7</sup> As to knowledge and experience, cf. Gîtâ, p. 57; and as to coming and going, cf. *ibid.* p. 84.

<sup>8</sup> I.e. as stated, for instance, at Gîtâ, p. 79, or *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 613.

course of worldly life, through indifference (to worldly objects), and taking refuge with the formless (principle)<sup>1</sup>. Having learnt about this path in this world, I exercised myself (in it), and hence, through favour of the self<sup>2</sup>, have I acquired this perfection<sup>3</sup>. I shall not come here again<sup>4</sup>; I am surveying the worlds, and the happy migrations<sup>5</sup> of (my) self from the creation of beings to (my attaining) perfection. Thus, O best of the twice-born! have I obtained this highest perfection. From here I go to the next<sup>6</sup> (world), and from there again to the still higher (world)—the imperceptible seat of the Brahman. Have no doubt on that, O terror of your foes<sup>7</sup>! I shall not come back to this mortal world. I am pleased with you, O you of great intelligence! Say, what can I do for you? The time is now come for that which you desired in coming to me. I know for what you have come to me. But I shall be going away in a short time, hence have I given

<sup>1</sup> Taking refuge, says *Nîlakantha*, in the belief of my being identical with the Brahman, which is to be comprehended by means of the profound contemplation called *Asampragñâta Samâdhi*.

<sup>2</sup> I.e., says *Nîlakantha*, the mind, and he cites *Maitî*, p. 179. Cf. *Kaṭha*, p. 108. The rendering at p. 192 *supra* will also suit (through the self becoming placid). This placidity is defined at *Sânti Parvan* (*Moksha Dharma*) CCXLVII, 11, with which cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 69. See *Gîtâ*, p. 51.

<sup>3</sup> As above described.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. *Khândogya*, p. 628; see also *ibid.* p. 282.

<sup>5</sup> He calls them happy because they have ended happily, I presume. 'Surveying the worlds' *Nîlakantha* takes to be an index of omniscience. Cf. *Sanatsugâtîya*, p. 174. See also *Yoga sūtras* III, 25, and commentary there.

<sup>6</sup> I.e. the world of Brahman, or the *Satyalo*ka; and the next step is assimilation into the Brahman.

<sup>7</sup> So read all the copies I have seen, though *Kâsyapa* is the person addressed.

this hint to you. I am exceedingly pleased, O clever one ! with your good conduct. Put (your) questions without uneasiness, I will tell (you) whatever you desire. I highly esteem your intelligence, and greatly respect it, inasmuch as you have made me out<sup>1</sup>; for, O Kâsyapa ! you are (a) talented (man).

## CHAPTER II.

Vâsudeva<sup>2</sup> said :

Then grasping his feet, Kâsyapa asked questions very difficult to explain, and all of them that (being), the best of the supporters of piety, did explain.

Kâsyapa said :

How does the body perish, and how, too, is it produced ? How does one who moves in this harassing course of worldly life become freed ? And (how) does the self, getting rid of nature, abandon the body (produced) from it<sup>3</sup> ? And how, being freed from the body, does he attain to the other<sup>4</sup> ? How does this man enjoy the good and evil acts done by himself ? And where do the acts of one who is released from the body remain ?

The Brâhmaṇa said :

Thus addressed, O descendant of *Vṛishni* ! that Siddha answered these questions in order. Hear me relate what (he said).

<sup>1</sup> This was difficult, as the Siddha possessed extraordinary powers, such as that of concealed movement, &c. <sup>2</sup> Sic in MSS.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. as to getting rid of nature, *Gîtâ*, pp. 75-106. As to the body produced from nature, cf. *ibid.* p. 112, and pp. 317-318 *infra*.

<sup>4</sup> I.e. the Brahman, says *Nīlakanṭha*.

The Siddha said :

When those actions, productive of long life and fame<sup>1</sup>, which a man performs here, are entirely exhausted, after his assumption of another body, he performs (actions of an) opposite character, his self being overcome at the exhaustion of life<sup>2</sup>. And his ruin being impending, his understanding goes astray. Not knowing his own constitution<sup>3</sup>, and strength, and likewise the (proper) season, the man not being self-controlled, does unseasonably what is injurious to himself. When he attaches himself to numerous very harassing (actions); eats too much<sup>4</sup>, or does not eat at all; when he takes bad food, or meat<sup>5</sup>, or drinks, or (kinds of food) incompatible with one another, or heavy food in immoderate quantities, or without (previously taken food) being properly digested; or takes too much exercise, or is incontinent; or constantly, through attachment to action, checks the regular course (of the excretions<sup>6</sup>); or takes juicy food<sup>7</sup>; or sleeps by day<sup>8</sup>; or (takes food) not thoroughly prepared; (such a man) himself aggravates the dis-

<sup>1</sup> One reading omits 'fame,' as to which cf. *Taittirīya-upanishad*, p. 129; *Khândogya*, pp. 122-227. As to long life, cf. *Khândogya*, p. 272; exhausted, i. e. by enjoyment of fruit in another world.

- Cf. *Sârîraka Bhâshya*, p. 753 seq., where we have a slightly different view.

<sup>3</sup> Arguna Misra renders the original, *sattva*, by *svabhâva*.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. for all this, *Gîtâ*, pp. 62, 69, 118, which passages, however, are from a slightly different point of view. See also *Khândogya*, p. 526.

<sup>5</sup> A various reading here excludes meat. But cf. *Âpastamba I*, 1, 2, 23; *Gautama II*, 13.

<sup>6</sup> So says *Nilakantha*.

<sup>7</sup> I. e. which turns to juice in digestion, much juice being a cause of indigestion, say the commentators.

<sup>8</sup> This is doubtful. The sense may be, 'who takes juicy or not thoroughly prepared food by day and night.' But see *Âsvalâyana Grrhya-sûtra*, p. 90; *Âpastamba I*, 1, 2, 24; *Gautama II*, 13.

orders (in the body) when the time comes<sup>1</sup>. By aggravating the disorders (in) his own (body), he contracts a disease which ends in death, or he even engages in unreasonable (acts), such as hanging<sup>2</sup> (oneself). From these causes, the living<sup>3</sup> body of that creature then perishes. Learn about that correctly as I am about to state it. Heat being kindled in the body, and being urged by a sharp wind<sup>4</sup>, pervades the whole frame, and, verily, checks the (movements of all the) life-winds. Know this truly, that excessively powerful heat, if kindled in the body, bursts open the vital parts—the seats of the soul<sup>5</sup>. Then the soul, full of torments, forthwith falls away from the perishable (body). Know, O best of the twice-born! that (every) creature leaves the body, when the vital parts are burst open, its self being overcome with torments. All beings are constantly distracted with birth and death; and, O chief of the twice-born! are seen abandoning (their) bodies, or entering the womb on the exhaustion of (their previous) actions<sup>6</sup>. Again, a man suffers similar torments, having his joints broken and suffering from

<sup>1</sup> The time of destruction says *Aṅgula Misra*.

<sup>2</sup> Which, say the commentators, leads to death, even without any disease.

<sup>3</sup> So I construe the original, having regard to the question, 'how does the body perish?' The other reading, which is in some respects better, is equivalent to 'the life falls away from the body of that creature.'

<sup>4</sup> This is different, as the commentators point out, from the ordinary life-winds.

<sup>5</sup> The original here is *gīva*, not *âtman*, which we have rendered 'self.' This refers rather to the vital principle. As to the seats, cf. *Yāgñavalkya Smṛiti* III, 93 seq.

<sup>6</sup> I adopt the reading *karmanâm*, which I find in one of the MSS. I consulted. I think it probable that that was the reading before the commentators. The other reading is *marmanâm*.

cold, in consequence of water<sup>1</sup>. As the compact association of the five elements is broken up, the wind in the body, distributed within the five elements<sup>2</sup>, between the upward and downward life-winds, being aggravated by cold, and urged by a sharp wind<sup>3</sup>, goes upwards<sup>4</sup>, abandoning the embodied (self) in consequence of pain. Thus it<sup>5</sup> leaves the body, which appears devoid of breath. Then devoid of warmth, devoid of breath, devoid of beauty, and with consciousness destroyed, the man, being abandoned by the Brahman<sup>6</sup>, is said to be dead. (Then) he ceases to perceive (anything) with those very currents<sup>7</sup> with which the supporter of the body<sup>8</sup> perceives objects of sense. In the same way, it is the eternal soul which preserves in the body the life-winds which are produced from food<sup>9</sup>. Whatever (part of the body) is employed in the collection<sup>10</sup> of that, know

<sup>1</sup> Having spoken of heat, he now speaks of the effects of cold. I am not sure if the water here refers to the water of the 'juicy' substances before referred to.

<sup>2</sup> This means, I presume, within the dissolving body. Cf. Maitrî-upanishad, p. 42.

<sup>3</sup> See note 4, last page.

<sup>4</sup> To the head, Arguna Misra.

<sup>5</sup> That is, the wind, I suppose, and then the breath departs from the body, and the man is said to die. 'Devoid of beauty,' further on, means, disfigured in the state of death.

<sup>6</sup> I. e. the mind, Arguna Misra.

<sup>7</sup> The senses. Cf. Svetâsvatara, p. 288.

<sup>8</sup> See and cf. p. 262 infra.

<sup>9</sup> This, says Arguna Misra, is, in answer to the possible question why this 'sharp wind' does not work with the life-winds. The answer is, that such working requires the presence of the soul, which Arguna Misra says here means 'mind.' As to 'production from food,' cf. *Khândogya*, p. 421 seq., and *Taittirîya Âranyaka*, p. 893.

<sup>10</sup> Collection of that = turning the food into semen, says Arguna Misra, who adds, 'in those vital parts, which are useful for this purpose, the life-wind dwells.'

that to be a vital part, for thus it is seen (laid down) in the Scriptures. Those vital parts being wounded, that (wind) directly comes out therefrom, and entering the bosom of a creature obstructs the heart<sup>1</sup>. Then the possessor of consciousness knows nothing<sup>2</sup>. Having his knowledge enveloped by darkness<sup>3</sup>, while the vitals are still enveloped, the soul<sup>4</sup>, being without a fixed seat, is shaken about by the wind. And then he heaves a very deep and alarming gasp, and makes the unconscious body quiver as he goes out (of it). That soul, dropping out of the body, is surrounded on both sides by his own actions<sup>5</sup>, his own pure and meritorious, as also his sinful (ones). Brâhmaṇas, possessed of knowledge, whose convictions are correctly (formed) from sacred learning, know him by (his) marks as one who has performed meritorious actions or the reverse. As those who have eyes see a glow-worm disappear here and there in darkness, so likewise do those who have eyes of knowledge. Such a soul, the Siddhas see with a divine eye, departing (from the body), or coming to the birth, or entering into a womb<sup>6</sup>. Its three descriptions<sup>7</sup> of seats are here learnt from the Scriptures. This world is the world of actions<sup>8</sup>, where

<sup>1</sup> Arguna Misra renders this to mean 'mind.'

<sup>2</sup> As the mind is obstructed, says Arguna Misra. The possessor of consciousness = the self, Arguna.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. pain, Arguna Misra.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. mind, Arguna Misra.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. *Bṛhadâraṇyaka*, p. 843.

<sup>6</sup> See *Āitareya-upanishad*, p. 222, and *Saṅkara's* commentary there. The coming to the birth is the coming out of the womb into the world. Cf. also *Gîtâ*, p. 112.

<sup>7</sup> As stated further on, viz. this world, the next world, and the womb. With this compare *Khândogya*, p. 359.

<sup>8</sup> Cf. our *Bhārṭṛhari* (Bombay series), Notes (*Nītisataka*), p. 27.

creatures dwell. All embodied (selves), having here performed good or evil (actions), obtain (the fruit). It is here they obtain higher or lower enjoyments by their own actions. And it is those whose actions here are evil, who by their actions go to hell. Harassing is that lower place where men are tormented. Freedom from it is very difficult, and the self should be specially protected from it. Learn from me now, the seats in which creatures going up <sup>1</sup> dwell, and which I shall describe truly. Hearing this, you will learn the highest knowledge, and decision regarding action <sup>2</sup>. All (the worlds in) the forms of stars, and this lunar sphere <sup>3</sup>, and also this solar sphere which shines in the world by its own lustre, know these to be the seats of men who perform meritorious actions. All these, verily, fall down again and again in consequence of the exhaustion of their actions <sup>4</sup>. And there, too, in heaven, there are differences of low, high, and middling <sup>5</sup>. Nor, even there, is there satisfaction, (even) after a sight of most magnificent splendour. Thus have I stated to you these seats distinctly. I will after this (proceed to) state to you the production of the fœtus <sup>6</sup>. And, O twice-born one! hear that attentively from me as I state it.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. on this and 'lower place,' Gîtâ, p. 109; Sâṅkhya Kârikâ, 44.

<sup>2</sup> The readings here are most unsatisfactory. The meaning of the printed reading adopted above would seem to be, 'decision as to what actions should be performed,' &c.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 81, and Sanatsugâtîya, p. 158. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 84.

<sup>5</sup> Arguna Misra says, 'In heaven = in the next world, low = inferior (?), high = heaven, and middling = the space below the skies (antariksha).' For the three degrees of enjoyment in heaven, see Yogavâsish/ha I, 35 seq.

<sup>6</sup> This is the third of the three seats above referred to.



## CHAPTER III.

There is no destruction here of actions good or not good<sup>1</sup>. Coming to one body after another they become ripened in their respective ways<sup>2</sup>. As a fruitful (tree) producing fruit may yield much fruit, so does merit performed with a pure mind become expanded<sup>3</sup>. Sin, too, performed with a sinful mind, is similarly (expanded). For the self engages in action, putting forward this mind<sup>4</sup>. And now further, hear how<sup>5</sup> a man, overwhelmed with action, and enveloped in desire and anger<sup>6</sup>, enters a womb. Within the womb of a woman, (he) obtains as the result of action a body good or else bad<sup>7</sup>, made up of virile semen and blood. Owing to (his) subtlety and imperceptibility, though he obtains a body appertaining to the Brahman, he is not attached anywhere; hence is he the eternal Brahman<sup>8</sup>. That is the seed of all beings; by that

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *Maitrî-upanishad*, p. 53, and *Mundaka*, p. 270. And see generally as to this passage, *Sârîraka Bhâshya*, pp. 751-760.

<sup>2</sup> I e. they yield their respective fruits; cf. *Maitrî*, p. 43, and *Khândogya*, p. 358.

<sup>3</sup> This explains, say the commentators, how even a little merit or sin requires sometimes more than one birth to enjoy and exhaust.

<sup>4</sup> As a king performs sacrifices 'putting forward' a priest, Arguna Misra, and cf. *Dhammapada*, the first two verses.

<sup>5</sup> Arguna Misra has *tathâ*, 'in the same way,' instead of this, and renders it to mean 'putting forward' the mind.

<sup>6</sup> Hence he does not get rid of birth and death.

<sup>7</sup> Good=of gods or men, bad=of the lower species of creatures, Arguna.

<sup>8</sup> He, in the preceding sentences, according to Arguna Misra, means the self, through the mind, or 'putting forward' the mind, as said above. In this sentence, he takes 'he' to mean the mind itself, Brahman=the self, and the mind, he says, is called the Brahman, as it, like the self, is the cause of the *Kautanya*, intelligence, in all creatures.

all creatures exist. That soul, entering all the limbs of the foetus, part by part, and dwelling in the seat of the life-wind<sup>1</sup>, supports (them) with the mind<sup>2</sup>. Then the foetus, becoming possessed of consciousness, moves about its limbs. As liquefied iron being poured out assumes the form of the image<sup>3</sup>, such you must know is the entrance of the soul into the foetus. As fire entering a ball of iron, heats it, such too, you must understand, is the manifestation of the soul in the foetus. And as a blazing lamp shines in a house, even so does consciousness light up bodies<sup>4</sup>. And whatever action he performs, whether good or bad, everything done in a former body must necessarily be enjoyed (or suffered). Then<sup>5</sup> that is exhausted, and again other (action) is accumulated, so long as the piety which dwells in the practice of concentration of mind for final emancipation<sup>6</sup> has not been learnt. As to that, O best (of men)! I will tell you about that action by which, verily, one going the round of various births, becomes happy. Gifts, penance, life as a Brahmacārin, adherence to prescribed regulations, restraint of the senses<sup>7</sup>, and also

---

<sup>1</sup> I.e. the heart.

<sup>2</sup> Arguna Misra says that the soul at the beginning of the sentence means 'the mind, and mind here means knowledge or intelligence. Cf. p. 238 supra.

<sup>3</sup> In the mould of which, that is to say, it is poured.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 106. The three similes, says Nilakantha, show that the soul pervades the whole body, is yet imperceptible, and also unattached to the body. Arguna Misra's explanation is different, but I prefer Nilakantha's.

<sup>5</sup> I.e. by the enjoyment or suffering.

<sup>6</sup> I.e. while he does not possess the knowledge which leads to the piety necessary as a preliminary for final emancipation, and which ultimately destroys action. Cf. Gîtâ, p. 62.

<sup>7</sup> I.e. keeping the senses of hearing &c. from all operations

tranquillity, compassion to (all) beings, self-restraint, and absence of cruelty, refraining from the appropriation of the wealth of others, not acting dishonestly even in thought towards (any) being in this world, serving mother and father, honouring deities and guests, honouring preceptors, pity, purity, constant restraint of the organs<sup>1</sup>, and causing good to be done; this is said to be the conduct of the good<sup>2</sup>. From this is produced piety, which protects people to eternity. Thus one should look (for it) among the good, for among them it constantly abides. The practice to which the good adhere, points out (what) piety (is)<sup>3</sup>. And among them dwells that (course of) action which constitutes eternal piety. He who acquires that, never comes to an evil end<sup>4</sup>. By this are people held in check from making a slip in the paths of piety<sup>5</sup>. But the devotee who is released<sup>6</sup> is esteemed higher than these. For the deliverance from the course of worldly life of the man who acts piously and well, as he should act, takes place after a long time<sup>7</sup>. Thus a creature always meets with (the effects of) the action performed (in a) previous (life). And that<sup>8</sup> is the sole cause by which he comes here (in a) degraded (form). There is

save those relating to the Brahman. Tranquillity is the same thing as regards the mind.

<sup>1</sup> This I take to mean restraint of the active organs, such as speech, &c. 'Self-restraint' is rendered by *Nilakantha* to mean 'concentration of mind.'

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *Maitrī*, p. 57; *Khândogya*, p. 136; and *Gîtâ*, pp. 103, 119.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *Âpastamba* I, 1, 1, 2; I, 7, 20, 7; *Sakuntalâ*, p. 30 (Williams).

<sup>4</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 72.

<sup>5</sup> By this, i. e. by the practice of the good, *Arguna Misra*.

<sup>6</sup> From delusion, *Arguna Misra*; emancipated by force of his devotion, *Nilakantha*.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 73; *Khândogya*, pp. 136, 137. <sup>8</sup> Scil. the action.

(all) bonds. A man who is a friend of all, who endures all, who is devoted to tranquillity<sup>1</sup>, who has subdued his senses, and from whom fear and wrath have departed, and who is self-possessed<sup>2</sup>, is released. He who moves among all beings as if they were like himself<sup>3</sup>, who is self-controlled, pure, free from vanity<sup>4</sup> and egoism, he is, indeed, released from everything. And he, too, is released who is equable towards both life and death<sup>5</sup>, and likewise pleasure and pain, and gain and loss, and (what is) agreeable and odious<sup>6</sup>. He who is not attached to any one, who contemns no one, who is free from the pairs of opposites, and whose self is free from affections<sup>7</sup>, he is, indeed, released in every way. He who has no enemy, who has no kinsmen, who has no child, who has abandoned piety, wealth, and lust altogether, and who has no desire, is released. He who is not pious and not impious<sup>8</sup>, who casts off (the merit or sin) previously accumulated, whose self is tranquillised by the exhaustion of the primary elements of the body<sup>9</sup>, and who is free from the pairs of opposites, is released. One who does no action<sup>10</sup>, and who has no desire, looks on this universe as

<sup>1</sup> This, in the terminology of the Vedānta, means keeping the mind from everything save 'hearing' &c. about the Brahman.

<sup>2</sup> One who has his mind under his control. But see Gītā, p. 63.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Gītā, p. 71.

<sup>4</sup> I.e. the desire to be honoured or respected, Arguna Misra. Cf. Sanatsugâtīya, p. 161.

<sup>5</sup> Who does not care when death comes. <sup>6</sup> Cf. p. 151 supra.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. Gītā for all this, pp. 101, 103, 125, &c. <sup>8</sup> Cf. Katha, p. 101.

<sup>9</sup> Nīlakantha says this means the constituents of the body. Arguna Misra says, 'Prāṇa or life-wind,' &c. They are seven. See gloss on Khândogya-upanishad, p. 441, and p. 343 infra.

<sup>10</sup> Because, says Arguna Misra, he has no desire. Nīlakantha says this means an ascetic, sannyāsin. See p. 257 infra, note 1.

transient, like an Asvattha tree <sup>1</sup>, always full of birth, death, and old age <sup>2</sup>. Having his understanding always (fixed) upon indifference to worldly objects, searching for his own faults <sup>3</sup>, he procures the release of his self from bonds in no long time. Seeing the self void of smell <sup>4</sup>, void of taste, void of touch, void of sound, void of belongings, void of colour, and unknowable, he is released. He who sees the enjoyer of the qualities <sup>5</sup>, devoid of qualities, devoid of the qualities of the five elements <sup>6</sup>, devoid of form, and having no cause, is released. Abandoning by the understanding <sup>7</sup> all fancies bodily and mental <sup>8</sup>, he gradually obtains tranquillity <sup>9</sup>, like fire devoid of fuel. He who is free from all impressions <sup>10</sup>, free from the pairs of opposites, without belongings, and who moves among the collection of organs with penance <sup>11</sup>, he is indeed released. Then freed from all impressions, he attains to the eternal

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 111, where Sankara explains the name to mean 'what will not remain even till to-morrow.'

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 109, and other passages.

<sup>3</sup> Arguna Misra has a different reading, which means 'particularly observing the evils of (the three kinds of) misery.'

<sup>4</sup> Cf. *Kaṭha*, p. 119; *Mundaka*, p. 267; and *Māndukya*, p. 371.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, pp. 104, 105, and *Kaṭha*, p. 112.

<sup>6</sup> *Nilakantha* says this refers to the gross elements, the next expression to the subtle ones, and being free from these two, he is 'devoid of qualities,' viz. the three qualities. <sup>7</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 65.

<sup>8</sup> I. e. those which cause bodily and mental activity.

<sup>9</sup> Cf. *Maitrî*, p. 178. The original is the famous word 'Nirvâna.'

<sup>10</sup> Scil. derived from false knowledge, says Arguna Misra. *Nilakantha* says all impressions from outside oneself which are destroyed by those produced from concentration of mind, &c. See p. 391 *infra*.

<sup>11</sup> I. e. all those operations by which the internal man is rendered pure and free from all taints; see below, p. 248, where *Nilakantha* renders it as 'the performance of one's duty which is called penance.' But see, too, pp. 74, 119, 166 *supra*. The meaning seems to be that the

has acquired concentration of mind, and who is self-restrained, creates for himself even the divinity of the gods<sup>1</sup>; and abandoning the transient body, he attains to the inexhaustible Brahman. When (all) beings are destroyed, he has no fear; when (all) beings are afflicted, he is not afflicted by anything<sup>2</sup>. He whose self is concentrated, who is free from attachment, and of a tranquil mind, is not shaken by the fearful effects of attachment and affection<sup>3</sup>, which consist in pain and grief<sup>4</sup>. Weapons do not pierce him<sup>5</sup>; there is no death for him; nothing can be seen anywhere in the world happier than he. Properly concentrating his self, he remains steady to the self; and freed from old age and grief, he sleeps at ease. Leaving this human frame, he assumes bodies at pleasure. But one who is practising concentration should never become despondent<sup>6</sup>. When one who has properly achieved concentration perceives the self in the self, then he forthwith ceases to feel any attachment to Indra himself<sup>7</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> I do not quite understand the original. The other reading, *dehatvam* for *devatvam*, is not more intelligible. But comparing the two, the meaning seems to be, that the divinity of the gods, i. e. their qualities and powers as gods, are within his reach, if he likes to have them.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 107.

<sup>3</sup> Affection is the feeling that a thing is one's own; attachment is the feeling of liking one has for a thing acquired with difficulty, *Arguna Misra*.

<sup>4</sup> Pain appears to be the feeling immediately following on hurt or evil suffered; grief is the constant state of mind which is a later result.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. *Yoga-sûtra Bhâshya*, p. 208.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 70. Despondency is the feeling that one has not acquired 'concentration' after much practice, and that therefore the practice should be abandoned.

<sup>7</sup> The other reading here may be rendered, 'Then forthwith Indra himself esteems him highly.'

Now listen how one habituated to exclusive meditation attains concentration. Thinking <sup>1</sup> of a quarter seen before, he should steady his mind within and not out of the city in which he dwells. . Remaining within (that) city, he should place his mind both in its external and internal (operations) in that habitation in which he dwells. When, meditating in that habitation, he perceives the perfect one, his mind should not in any way wander outside. Restraining the group of the senses, in a forest <sup>2</sup> free from noises and unpeopled, he should meditate on the perfect one within his body with a mind fixed on one point. He

<sup>1</sup> This is all rather mystical. *Nīlakanṭha* takes 'city' to mean 'body,' and 'habitation' to mean the *mūlādhāra*, or other similar mystic centre within the body, where, according to the Yoga philosophy, the soul is sometimes to be kept with the life-winds, &c. 'Thinking of a quarter,' &c., he explains to mean 'meditating on the instruction he has received after studying the Upanishads.' I do not understand the passage well. 'City' for 'body' is a familiar use of the word. Cf. *Gītā*, p. 65. The original word for habitation occurs at *Aitareya-upanishad*, p. 199, where *Saṅkara* explains it to mean 'seat.' Three 'seats' are there mentioned,—the organs of sight, &c.; the mind; and the *Ākāśa* in the heart. There, too, the body is described as a 'city,' and *Ānandagiri* explains habitation to mean 'seat of amusement or sport.' Here, however, the meaning seems to be that one should work for concentration in the manner indicated, viz. first fix the mind on the city where one dwells, then on the particular parts of it oftenest seen before, then one's own habitation, then the various parts of one's body, and finally one's own heart and the Brahman within it. Thus gradually circumscribed in its operations, the mind is better fitted for the final concentration on the Brahman. As to external and internal operations, cf. note 8, p. 247. The perfect one is the Brahman. Cf. *Sanatsugâtīya*, p. 171. As to *âvasatha*, which we have rendered by 'habitation,' see also *Māndūkya*, p. 340; *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 751; and the alternative sense suggested by *Saṅkara* on the *Aitareya*, loc. cit.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *Maitrī-upanishad*, p. 100.

should meditate on his teeth<sup>1</sup>, palate, tongue, neck, and throat likewise, and also the heart, and likewise the seat of the heart. That talented pupil, O destroyer of Madhu! having been thus instructed by me, proceeded further to interrogate (me) about the piety (required) for final emancipation, which is difficult to explain. 'How does this food eaten from time to time become digested in the stomach? How does it turn to juice and how also to blood? And how, too, do the flesh, and marrow, and muscles, and bones—which all (form) the bodies for embodied (selves)—develop in a woman as that (self) develops? How, too, does the strength develop? (And how is it also) about the removal of non-nutritive (substances)<sup>2</sup>, and of the excretions, distinctly? How, too, does he breathe inwards or outwards? And what place does the self occupy, dwelling in the self<sup>3</sup>? And how does the soul moving about carry the body? And of what colour and of what description (is it when) he leaves it? O sinless venerable sir! be pleased to state this accurately to me.' Thus questioned by that Brâhmaṇa, O Mâdhava! I replied<sup>4</sup>, 'O you of mighty arms! O

<sup>1</sup> Nîlakanṭha cites numerous passages from works of the Yoga philosophy in illustration of this. He takes 'heart' to mean the Brahman seated in the heart (cf. *Khândogya*, p. 528), and 'the seat of the heart' to mean the one hundred and one passages of the heart. The latter expression Arguna Misra seems to render by 'mind.' See also generally on this passage, Maitrî-upaniṣad, p. 133, and Yoga-sûtra III, 1 and 28 seq., and commentary there.

<sup>2</sup> Literally, 'those which are void of strength.' I adopt Arguna Misra's reading. The other reading literally means 'obstructions.'

<sup>3</sup> The self here means the body, I take it. See p. 248 supra.

<sup>4</sup> The reply does not appear here. Nîlakanṭha says that the succeeding chapters contain it. Arguna Misra seems to say that the answer has been already given. The context here is obscure.



restrainer of (your) foes! according to what (I had) heard. As one placing any property in his store-room should fix his mind on the property<sup>1</sup>, so placing one's mind in one's body, and (keeping) the passages confined, one should there look for the self and avoid heedlessness<sup>2</sup>. Being thus always assiduous and pleased in the self, he attains in a short time to that Brahman, after perceiving which he understands the Pradhâna<sup>3</sup>. He is not to be grasped by the eye, nor by any of the senses. Only by the mind (used) as a lamp is the great self perceived<sup>4</sup>. He has hands and feet on all sides; he has eyes, heads, and faces on all sides; he has ears on all sides; he stands pervading everything in the world<sup>5</sup>. The soul sees the self<sup>6</sup> come out from the body; and abandoning his body, he perceives the self,—holding it to be the immaculate Brahman,—with, as it were, a mental smile<sup>7</sup>. And then depending upon it thus, he attains final emancipation in me<sup>8</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> *Nilakantha* says the original means household effects; *Arguna Misra* says wealth, and adds, the mind is fixed on it from fear of others finding it out.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *Sanatsugâtîya*, p. 152. Here, however, the sense is the ordinary one.

I. e. all nature, that from which the universe is developed.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. *Ka/ha*, pp. 117–130. See *Sânti Parvan* (Moksha) CCXL, 16.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 103. The stanza occurs often in the *Bhârata*. This, says *Arguna Misra*, answers the question 'how the soul carries the body.' The soul can do that as it is all-pervading.

<sup>6</sup> The individual soul, which has acquired true knowledge, perceives the self to be distinct from the body. See p. 249 supra.

<sup>7</sup> I. e. at the false notions which he entertained. *Nilakantha* says, 'smile, i. e. amazement that he should have been deceived by the mirage-like course of worldly life.'

<sup>8</sup> I. e. final emancipation and assimilation with the supreme; 'depending upon it thus' = taking refuge with the Brahman in the way above stated.

This whole mystery I have declared to you, O best of Brāhmaṇas <sup>1</sup>! I will now take my leave, I will go away; and do you (too) go away, O Brāhmaṇa! according to your pleasure.' Thus addressed by me, O *Kṛishṇa*! that pupil, possessed of great penance,—that Brāhmaṇa of rigid vows,—went away as he pleased.

Vāsudeva said:

Having spoken to me, O son of *Prithā*! these good words relating to the piety (required) for final emancipation, that best of Brāhmaṇas disappeared then and there. Have you listened to this, O son of *Prithā*! with a mind (fixed) on (this) one point only <sup>2</sup>? For on that occasion, too, sitting in the chariot you heard this same (instruction). It is my belief, O son of *Prithā*! that this is not easily understood by a man who is confused, or who has not acquired knowledge with his inmost soul purified <sup>3</sup>. What I have spoken, O chief of the descendants of *Bharata*! is a great mystery (even) among the gods. And it has never yet been heard by any man in this world, O son of *Prithā*! For, O sinless one! there is no other man than you worthy to hear it. Nor is it easily to be understood by (one whose) internal self (is) confused. The world of the gods <sup>4</sup>, O son of *Kuntī*! is filled by those who perform

<sup>1</sup> *Arguna Misra* says, the only questions among those stated above, which are of use for final emancipation, have been here answered. The others should be looked for elsewhere.

<sup>2</sup> The original words here are identical with those at *Gītā*, p. 139.

<sup>3</sup> I adopt *Nīlakantha's* reading here. *Arguna Misra* reads 'vigagdhena,' which he explains to mean 'one who eats kinds of food incompatible with one another.' A third reading is '*kṛtiaghṇena*,' ungrateful!

<sup>4</sup> See *Gītā*, p. 84.

actions. And the gods are not pleased with a cessation of the mortal form<sup>1</sup>. For as to that eternal Brahman, O son of *Prithâ*! that is the highest goal, where one, forsaking the body, reaches immortality and is ever happy. Adopting this doctrine, even those who are of sinful birth, women, Vaisyas, and *Sûdras* likewise, attain the supreme goal. What then (need be said of) *Brâhmanas*, O son of *Prithâ*<sup>2</sup>! or well-read *Kshatriyas*, who are constantly intent on their own duties, and whose highest goal is the world of the Brahman? This has been stated with reasons; and also the means for its acquisition; and the fruit of its full accomplishment, final emancipation, and determination regarding misery<sup>3</sup>. O chief of the descendants of *Bharata*! there can be no other happiness beyond this. The mortal, O son of *Pându*! who, possessed of talents, full of faith, and energetic<sup>4</sup>, casts aside as unsubstantial the (whole) substance of this world<sup>5</sup>, he forthwith attains the highest goal by these means. This is all that is to be said, there is nothing further than this. Concentration of mind comes to him, O son of *Prithâ*! who practises concentration of mind constantly throughout six months<sup>6</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *Brhadâranyaka*, p. 234, where Sankara quotes the original stanza, but with a reading which means, 'And the gods are not pleased at mortals rising above (them).' That is a better reading.

<sup>2</sup> See *Gîtâ*, pp. 85, 86, where the words are nearly identical with those in the text.

<sup>3</sup> This is not quite clear. Does 'determination regarding misery,' the original of which is *duḥkhasya ka vinirnayah*, mean 'conclusion of all misery'? Comp. *Gîtâ*, p. 79.

<sup>4</sup> *Arguna Misra* says this means assiduous.

<sup>5</sup> I.e. wealth and so forth, says *Nîlakantha*. Cf. 'human wealth' at *Sanatsugâtîya*, p. 161.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. *Maitrî-upanishad*, p. 154. The copy of *Arguna Misra's*

## CHAPTER V.

On this<sup>1</sup>, too, O chief of the descendants of Bharata! they relate this ancient story, (in the form of) a dialogue, which occurred, O son of Prithâ! between a husband and wife. A Brâhmana's wife, seeing the Brâhmana her husband, who had gone through all knowledge and experience<sup>2</sup>, seated in seclusion, spoke to him (thus): 'What world, indeed, shall I go to, depending on you as (my) husband, you who live renouncing (all) action, and who are harsh and un-discerning<sup>3</sup>. We have heard that wives attain to the worlds acquired by (their) husbands. What goal, verily, shall I reach, having got you for my husband?' Thus addressed, that man of a tranquil self, spoke to her with a slight smile: 'O beautiful one! O sinless one! I am not offended at these words of yours. Whatever action there is, that can be caught (by the touch)<sup>4</sup>, or seen, or heard, that only do the men of action engage in as action. Those who are devoid of knowledge only lodge<sup>5</sup> delusion in themselves by means of action. And freedom from action is not to be attained in this world even for an

commentary which I have used, says that the Anugîtâ ends here. But, as we have shown, there is a verse coming further on, which Saṅkarâçârya cites as from the Anugîtâ. In the printed copies of the Mahâbhârata the next chapter is called the Brâhmanagîtâ.

<sup>1</sup> I. e. the questions at p. 252, *Nîlakantha*; more probably, perhaps, the 'doctrine' mentioned at p. 254 is what is alluded to.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 57 and note.

<sup>3</sup> *Nîlakantha* says this means 'ignorant that the wife has no other support.' Arguna Misra interprets *kinâsa* to mean 'indigent' instead of 'harsh.'

<sup>4</sup> So Arguna Misra. *Nîlakantha*'s reading and his interpretation of the passage are different.

<sup>5</sup> I follow Arguna Misra; the original literally means 'restrain.'

instant<sup>1</sup>. From birth to the destruction of the body, action, good or bad, by act, mind or speech<sup>2</sup>, does exist among (all) beings. While the paths<sup>3</sup> (of action), in which the materials are visible, are destroyed by demons<sup>4</sup>, I have perceived by means of the self the seat abiding in the self<sup>5</sup>—(the seat) where dwells the Brahman free from the pairs of opposites, and the moon together with the fire<sup>6</sup>, upholding (all) beings (as) the mover of the intellectual principle<sup>7</sup>; (the seat) for which<sup>8</sup> Brahman and others concentrating (their minds) worship that indestructible (principle), and for which learned men have their senses restrained, and their selves tranquil, and (observe) good vows. It is not to be smelt by the nose, and not to be tasted by the tongue. It is not to be touched by the sense of touch, but is to be apprehended by the mind. It cannot be

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, pp. 52, 53; see also, as to freedom from action, *Gîtâ*, p. 127.

<sup>2</sup> I.e. thought, word, and deed. I have in the text kept to a more literal rendering.

<sup>3</sup> This is *Nîlakantha*'s reading and interpretation. *Arguna Misra* reads 'actions visible and invisible.'

<sup>4</sup> Cf. inter alia *Kumâra-sambhava* II, 46.

<sup>5</sup> I.e. says *Arguna Misra*, the safe place, within the body; and says *Nîlakantha*, the seat called *Avimukta*, between the nose and the brows; as to which cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 67. In the *Kenopanishad* (p. 220) the word *âyatana* is used to signify a means to the attainment of the Brahman.

<sup>6</sup> The moon and fire constitute the universe, says *Arguna Misra*. Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 113. *Nîlakantha* interprets this more mystically as referring to the *Idâ* and *Piṅgalâ* arteries.

<sup>7</sup> So *Nîlakantha*, but he takes it to stand for 'vâyu' or wind, as a distinct principle. The sense is by no means clear. But the moon being the deity of the mind also may, perhaps, be described as she is here, on that account.

<sup>8</sup> This is *Arguna Misra*'s interpretation of the original locative.

conquered by the eyes, and is entirely beyond the senses of hearing. It is devoid of smell, devoid of taste and touch, devoid of colour and sound, and imperishable<sup>1</sup>. (It is that) from which (this whole) expanse<sup>2</sup> (of the universe) proceeds, and on which it rests. From this the *Prâna*, *Apâna*, *Samâna*, *Vyâna*, and *Udâna* also proceed, and into it they enter<sup>3</sup>. Between the *Samâna* and the *Vyâna*, the *Prâna* and the *Apâna* moved. When that<sup>4</sup> is asleep, the *Samâna* and *Vyâna* also are absorbed<sup>5</sup>; and between the *Prâna* and the *Apâna* dwells the *Udâna* pervading (all). Therefore the *Prâna* and the *Apâna* do not forsake a sleeping person. That is called the *Udâna*, as the life-winds are controlled<sup>6</sup> (by it). And therefore those who study the Brahman engage in penance<sup>7</sup> of which I am the goal<sup>8</sup>. In

<sup>1</sup> Cf. note 4, p. 247 supra, and p. 253.

<sup>2</sup> Arguna Misra says this means the five great elements, the eleven organs (active and perceptive, and the mind), the life-wind, and the individual soul.

<sup>3</sup> The *Prâna* is at the nose, the *Apâna* at the arms, the *Samâna* at the navel, the *Vyâna* pervades the whole body, and the *Udâna* is at all the joints; cf. *Yoga-sûtra* III, 38 seq. *Nîlakantha* says this explains how the 'expanse' (meaning, he says, the operations of the creation, &c.) 'proceeds' from the Brahman. See on the life-winds, *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 667; *Khândogya*, pp. 42-188; *Sân-khyatattvakaumudî*, p. 96; *Vedânta Paribhâṣhâ*, p. 45; p. 271 infra.

<sup>4</sup> The self, Arguna Misra. *Nîlakantha* says, 'the *Prâna* accompanied by the *Apâna*.'

<sup>5</sup> I. e. into the *Prâna* and *Apâna*, Arguna Misra.

<sup>6</sup> *Nîlakantha* derives the word thus, *utkarshena ânayati*.

<sup>7</sup> I. e. the subjugation of the life-winds as indicated at *Gîtâ*, p. 61.

<sup>8</sup> The meaning of the passage as a whole is not very clear, and the commentators afford but little help. The sense appears to be this: The course of worldly life is due to the operations of the life-winds which are attached to the self and lead to its manifestations as individual souls. Of these, the *Samâna* and *Vyâna* are

the interior<sup>1</sup>, in the midst of all these (life-winds) which move about in the body and swallow up one another<sup>2</sup>, blazes the Vaisvâna fire<sup>3</sup> sevenfold. The nose, and the tongue, and the eye, and the skin, and the ear as the fifth, the mind and the understanding, these are the seven tongues<sup>4</sup> of the blaze of Vaisvânara. That which is to be smelt, that which is to be drunk, that which is to be seen, that which is to be touched, and likewise that which is to be heard, and also that which is to be thought of, and that which is to be understood, those are the seven (kinds of) fuel for me<sup>5</sup>. That which smells, that which eats, that which sees, that which touches, and that which hears as the fifth, that which thinks, and that which understands, these are the seven great officiating priests<sup>6</sup>. And mark this always,

---

controlled and held under check by the Prâna and Apâna, into which latter the former are absorbed in sleep. The latter two are held in check and controlled by the Udâna, which thus controls all. And the control of this, which is the control of all the five, and which is otherwise called penance, destroys the course of worldly life, and leads to the supreme self.

<sup>1</sup> I. e. within the body. <sup>2</sup> As explained in note 8, p. 258.

<sup>3</sup> This, says *Nilakantha*, explains the word 'I' in the sentence preceding. Vaisvânara is a word often used to denote the self. The *Vishamasloki* derives it thus, 'that which saves all beings from hell;' see the *Prasna-upanishad*, pp. 167-188 (where seven tongues are also referred to); *Mundaka*, p. 292; *Khândogya*, p. 364; *Mândukya*, p. 341.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. *Taittirîya-âranyaka*, p. 802.

<sup>5</sup> I. e. the Vaisvânara. Cf. *Taittirîya-âranyaka*, p. 803 and gloss.

<sup>6</sup> These I take to be the powers of hearing, &c., which are presided over by the several deities; or, better, perhaps, they may mean the soul distinguished as so many with reference to these several powers; cf. *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 169; *Maitrî*, p. 96; *Prasna*, pp. 214, 215; *Kaushîtaki*, p. 96; *Aitareya*, p. 187; *Khândogya*, p. 616. The latter sense is accepted by *Arguna Misra*.

ment of knowledge, requires everything knowable<sup>1</sup> (as its offering). The mind is within the body the upholder of the frame, and the knower is the upholder of the body<sup>2</sup>. That<sup>3</sup> upholder of the body is the Gârhapatya fire; from that another is produced, and the mind which is the Âhavanîya; and into this the offering is thrown. Then the lord of speech was produced<sup>4</sup>; that (lord of speech) looks up to the mind. First, verily, are words produced; and the mind runs after them.

<sup>1</sup> Each sense can only offer up its own perceptions—the mind offers up all knowledge whatever.

<sup>2</sup> Arguna Misra says this is an implied simile, the mind is an upholder of the body as the 'knower' or self is.

<sup>3</sup> Arguna Misra says this means 'the mind.' I think it better to take it here as the self (see p. 238 supra), to which the 'mind' and the 'other,' mentioned further on, would be subordinate; the 'other' Arguna Misra renders by the 'group of the senses.' The senses are compared to fires at Gîtâ, p. 61. The passage at Taittirîya-âraṇyaka above cited refers only to the Gârhapatya and Âhavanîya fires. Nîlakaṇṭha's text and explanation of this passage are, to my mind, not nearly so satisfactory as Arguna Misra's.

<sup>4</sup> In the Taittirîya-brâhmana and Âraṇyaka loc. cit., the equivalent of the original word for 'lord of speech' here occurs, viz. Vâkpati for Vâkaspati here; but that is there described as the Hotrî priest, and speech itself as the Vedî or altar. The commentator there interprets 'lord of speech' to mean the wind which causes vocal activity, and resides in the throat, palate, &c. As to mind and speech, see also Khândogya, pp. 285-441, and comments of Sâṅkara there. The meaning of this passage, however, is not by any means clear to my mind. The Dasahotrî mantras in the Taittirîya are stated to be the mantras of the Ishî, or sacrifice, performed by Pragâpati for creation. It is possible, then, that the meaning here is, that speech which is to be learnt by the pupil, as stated further on—namely, the Vedas—was first produced from that Ishî (cf. Kullûka on Manu I, 21). But to understand that speech, mind is necessary; hence it is said to look up to the mind. The Brâhmana's wife, however, seems to understand speech as ordinary speech, hence her question.



The Brâhmaṇa's wife said :

How did speech come into existence first, and how did the mind come into existence afterwards, seeing that words are uttered (after they have been) thought over by the mind? By means of what experience does intelligence come to the mind, and (though) developed, does not comprehend<sup>1</sup>? What verily obstructs it?

The Brâhmaṇa said :

The Apâna becoming lord changes it into the state of the Apâna in consequence. That is called the movement of the mind, and hence the mind is in need (of it)<sup>2</sup>. But since you ask me a question regarding speech and mind, I will relate to you a dialogue between themselves. Both speech and mind went to the self of all beings<sup>3</sup> and spoke (to him thus), 'Say which of us is superior; destroy our doubts, O lord!' Thereupon the lord positively said to speech, 'Mind (is superior).' But speech thereupon said to him, 'I, verily yield (you) your desires<sup>4</sup>.'

<sup>1</sup> This, again, is to my mind very hard to understand. The original word for 'intelligence' is *mati*, which at *Khândogya*, p. 514, Śaṅkara interprets thus: 'intelligence is pondering, application to (literally, respect for) the subject of thought.' The original for 'developed,' Arguna Misra renders by 'mixed or assimilated with;' and 'does not comprehend,' he takes to mean 'does not understand—speech or words.' This question appears to be suggested by the last words of the previous speech.

<sup>2</sup> These two sentences are again very obscure. Nīlakantha, as usual, deserts his original, giving peculiar meanings to the words without producing any authority. Arguna Misra is very meagre, and besides the MS. is very incorrect. See p. 264, note 5 *infra*.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. Pragâpati, says Arguna Misra, which seems to be justified by the sequel. Nīlakantha takes it to mean the individual self, which doubtless is its meaning elsewhere, e. g. *Maitrî*, p. 56.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. speech conveys information on all matters, Arguna Misra ;

means of the *Prâna*<sup>1</sup>, and which then goes into the *Apâna*, and then becoming assimilated with the *Udâna* leaves the body<sup>2</sup>, and with the *Vyâna* envelopes all the quarters<sup>3</sup>, then (finally) dwells in the *Samâna*<sup>4</sup>. So speech formerly spoke. Hence the mind is distinguished by reason of its being immovable, and the goddess distinguished by reason of her being movable<sup>5</sup>.

## CHAPTER VII.

The *Brâhmaṇa* said :

On this, too, O beautiful one! they relate this ancient story, (which shows) of what description is the institution of the seven sacrificial priests<sup>6</sup>. The

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *Khândogya*, p. 285, and the passage there quoted by *Saṅkara* as well as *Ānandagiri*'s gloss. And see, too, p. 353 *infra*.

<sup>2</sup> Viz. the part of it which specially appertains to speech—the throat, &c.

<sup>3</sup> All the *nâḍīs* or passages of the body, *Arguna Misra*.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. at the navel in the form of sound, as the material cause of all words. There and in that condition speech dwells, after going through the body, as above stated. There, adds *Arguna Misra*, devotees are to meditate on speech.

<sup>5</sup> This is not quite clear, but the meaning seems to be, that the merit of the immovable mind consists in its unchangeability, and that of speech in being the cause of variations in the movable mind by conveying new knowledge and new impressions. Cf. on this result, *Khândogya-upanishad*, p. 482.

<sup>6</sup> *Arguna Misra* says, the last chapter explained *Prânâyâma*, and this explains *Pratyâhâra*. *Prânâyâma* is the restraint of the life-winds, *Pratyâhâra* that of the senses, according to the *Yoga* philosophy (see the quotation in the commentary at *Yoga-sûtra* III, 1, and see also pp. 141–145). Cf. also *Gîtâ*, p. 61. The *Sapta-hotri-vidhâna* as taught in the *Taittirîya-brâhmaṇa* and *Āraṇyaka* is to be found a few pages after the pages referred to for the *Dasahotri-vidhâna* at p. 261 *supra*. And the other *Vidhânas* also are to be found in the same parts of those books.

nose, and the eye, and the tongue, and the skin, and the ear as the fifth, mind and understanding, these are the seven sacrificial priests separately stationed. Dwelling in a minute space, they do not perceive each other. Do you, verily, O beautiful one! learn about these sacrificial priests, (which are) seven according to (their several) natures.

The Brâhmaṇa's wife said :

How (is it) these do not perceive each other, dwelling (as they do) in a minute space? What are their natures, O venerable sir? Tell me this, O lord!

The Brâhmaṇa said :

Not knowing the qualities (of anything) is ignorance (of it). Knowledge of the qualities is knowledge. And these never know the qualities of each other. The tongue, the eye, the ear likewise, the skin, the mind, and the understanding also, do not apprehend smells, the nose apprehends them. The nose, the eye, the ear likewise, the skin, the mind, and the understanding also, do not apprehend tastes, the tongue apprehends them. The nose, the tongue, the ear likewise, the skin, the mind, and the understanding also, do not apprehend colours, the eye apprehends them. The nose, the tongue, and next the eye, the ear, the understanding, the mind likewise, do not apprehend (objects of) touch, the skin apprehends them. The nose, the tongue, and the eye, the skin, the mind, and the understanding also, do not apprehend sounds, the ear apprehends them. The nose, the tongue, and the eye, the skin, the ear, and the understanding also, do not apprehend doubt, the mind apprehends it. The nose, the tongue, and the eye, the skin, the ear, and the mind

also, do not apprehend final determination, the understanding apprehends it. On this, too, they relate this ancient story,—a dialogue, O beautiful one! between the senses and the mind.

The mind said :

The nose smells not without me, the tongue does not perceive taste, the eye does not take in colour, the skin does not become aware of any (object of) touch. Without me, the ear does not in any way hear sound. I am the eternal chief among all elements<sup>1</sup>. Without me, the senses never shine, like an empty dwelling, or like fires the flames of which are extinct. Without me, all beings, like fuel half dried and half moist, fail to apprehend qualities or objects, even with the senses exerting themselves<sup>2</sup>.

The senses said :

This would be true as you believe, if you, without us, enjoyed the enjoyments (derived from) our objects<sup>3</sup>. If when we are extinct, (there is) pleasure and support of life, and if you enjoy enjoyments, then what you believe is true ; or if when we are absorbed<sup>4</sup>, and objects are standing, you enjoy objects according to their natures by the mere operation of the mind.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Kaushîtaki-upanishad, p. 93 ; *Aṅgîrâg*, p. 297 ; Maitrî, p. 158 ; and *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 284. The passages in the last two works seem to be identical ones.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. in their respective operations.

<sup>3</sup> The implication, of course, is, as Aṅgana Mîsra says, that this is not so, as what is not perceived by the senses cannot be the object of the mind's operations,—a proposition which reminds one of the maxim, '*Nihil est in intellectu quod non fuerit in sensu*,' apparently without Leibnitz's limitation of it. Cf. Archbishop Thomson's *Laws of Thought*, p. 52.

<sup>4</sup> As in asleep, &c.

If again you think your power over our objects is constant <sup>1</sup>, then take in colours by the nose, take in tastes by the eye, take in smells by the ear, take in (objects of) touch by the tongue, and take in sounds by the skin, and also (objects of) <sup>2</sup> touch by the understanding. For those who are powerful have no rules (to govern them); rules are for the weak. You should accept enjoyments unenjoyed before; you ought not to enjoy what has been tasted <sup>3</sup> (by others). As a pupil goes to a preceptor for Vedic learning, and having acquired Vedic learning from him, performs the directions of the Vedic texts, so you treat as yours <sup>4</sup> objects shown <sup>5</sup> by us, both past and future <sup>6</sup>, in sleep and likewise wakefulness. Besides, when creatures of little intelligence are distracted in mind, life is seen to be supported, when our objects <sup>7</sup> perform their functions. And even after having carried on numerous mental operations, and indulged in dreams, a creature, when troubled by desire to enjoy, does run to objects of sense only. One entering upon enjoyments, resulting from mental operations (alone), and not connected with objects

<sup>1</sup> I.e. if you can enjoy objects independently of the senses, whenever you choose to perform your operations. This, says *Arguna Mīśra*, meets an objection which might be made, that the mind at the time stated does not desire objects.

<sup>2</sup> Sic in original. It comes twice.

<sup>3</sup> Eating what has been tasted by another is a cause of degradation. Cf. *Āṅdogyā*, p. 81; *Māṭiśī*, p. 103; and p. 363 *infra*.

<sup>4</sup> You incorrectly attribute to yourself the quality of apprehending them.

<sup>5</sup> I.e. presented before you by us.

<sup>6</sup> This is not quite clear. *Arguna Mīśra* has, 'not past, not future;' literally, 'not come, not gone.'

<sup>7</sup> Viz. smell, sound, &c.; not by the mere operations of the mind, but by obtaining the objects, is life supported.

of sense, (which is) like entering a house without a door<sup>1</sup>, always meets death, on the exhaustion of the life-winds<sup>2</sup>, as a fire which is kindled (is extinguished) on the exhaustion of fuel. Granted, that we have connexions with our (respective) qualities, and granted that we have no perception of each other's qualities; still, without us, you have no perception<sup>3</sup>, and so long no happiness can accrue to you.

## CHAPTER VIII.

The Brāhmaṇa said :

On this, too, they relate an ancient story, O beautiful one ! (showing) of what description is the institution of the five sacrificial priests. The learned know this to be a great principle, that the Prāṇa and the Apāna, and the Udāna, and also the Samāna and the Vyāna, are the five sacrificial priests.

The Brāhmaṇa's wife said :

My former belief was that the sacrificial priests were seven by (their) nature<sup>4</sup>. State how the great principle is that there are verily five sacrificial priests<sup>5</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> The senses are the doors of the house here, as they are among the doors of the city at Gītā, p. 65.

<sup>2</sup> Owing to the want of food, &c. Cf. Maitrī, p. 112, and *Khândogya*, p. 422.

<sup>3</sup> Perception of pleasure, says Arguna Mīśra; but he takes the subsequent clause to mean this, 'and without you no pleasure accrues to us either.' The text is here in an unsatisfactory state.

<sup>4</sup> As stated in the last chapter; some MSS. read 'your' for 'my' at the beginning of the sentence.

<sup>5</sup> Arguna Mīśra says that in this *Pankahotri-vidhāna* the five chief *Hotris* only are stated for briefly explaining the *Prānāyāma*.

The Brâhmaṇa said :

The wind prepared by the Prâṇa afterwards becomes the Apâna. The wind prepared in the Apâna then works as the Vyâna. The wind prepared by the Vyâna works as the Udâna. And the wind prepared in the Udâna is produced as Samâna<sup>1</sup>. They formerly went to the grandsire, who was born first, and said to him, ' Tell us which is greatest among us. He shall be the greatest among us<sup>2</sup>.'

Brahman said :

He, verily, is the greatest, who being extinct, all the life-winds in the body of living creatures become extinct; and on whose moving about, they again move about. (Now) go where (you) like.

The Prâṇa said :

When I am extinct, all the life-winds in the body

<sup>1</sup> Arguna Misra says, ' The wind going to the Prâṇa, and being obstructed in upward progress by the Prâṇa, goes to the Apâna, and then unable to go upwards or downwards, enters the passages or nâdîs of the body and becomes Vyâna. In the same way Udâna, by the collision of the two, produces sound in the throat, and depends on Prâṇa and Apâna ; so, too, the Samâna dwelling in the navel and kindling the gastric fire is also dependent on those two.' The meaning seems to be that one life-wind is distributed in the different places, and gets different names, as stated, in the order mentioned. See Maitrî, p. 28.

<sup>2</sup> A similar visit on the part of the Prâṇas (who, however, are not there the life-winds only, but the Prâṇa life-wind and the active organs) to Pragâpati is mentioned at *Bṛihadâraṇyaka-upanishad*, p. 1016, and *Khândogya*, p. 297. Cf. also *Prasna*, p. 178 ; *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 317 ; and *Kaushîtaki*, p. 63. See also, generally, as to the life-winds and their functions, *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 280, and Sâṅkara's comment there ; *Yoga-sûtras* III, 38, and comment ; Cowell's note at Maitrî, p. 247 ; Sâṅti Parvan (Moksha Dharma), chap. 184, st. 24-25 ; chap. 185, st. 1 seq. ; and p. 258 supra.

of living creatures become extinct; and on my moving about, they again move about. I am the greatest. See I am extinct.

The Brâhmana said :

Then the Prâna became extinct, and again moved about. Then the Samâna and Udâna also <sup>1</sup>, O beautiful one ! spoke these words, ' You do not pervade all this here as we do. You are not the greatest among us, O Prâna, because the <sup>1</sup> Apâna is subject to you <sup>2</sup>. ' The Prâna again moved about <sup>3</sup>, and the Apâna <sup>4</sup> said to him.

The Apâna said :

When I am extinct, all the life-winds in the body of living creatures become extinct; and on my moving about, they again move about. I am the greatest. See I am extinct !

The Brâhmana said :

Then the Vyâna and the Udâna addressed him who was speaking (thus) : ' You are not the greatest, O Apâna ! because the Prâna is subject to you. ' Then the Apâna moved about, and the Vyâna spoke to him : ' I am the greatest among (you) all. Hear the reason why. When I am extinct, all the life-winds in the body of living creatures become extinct.

<sup>1</sup> Arguna Misra says, Vyâna and Apâna also by force of the two 'ands' which occur in the original ; and so in other places too.

<sup>2</sup> Arguna Misra says on this, ' The Prâna moves upwards through the help of the Apâna. If it moved downwards, it would be simply absorbed into the Apâna. '

<sup>3</sup> I. e. recommenced its proper operation in its proper place.

<sup>4</sup> And the other life-winds also, Arguna Misra says, the name Prâna being merely 'indicative,' as the phrase is, of the class to which it belongs.



And on my moving about, they again move about.  
I am the greatest. See I am extinct!’

The Brâhmaṇa said :

Then the Vyâna became extinct, and again moved about. And the Prâṇa and Apâna, and the Udâna, and the Samâna, spoke to him, ‘You are not the greatest among us, O Vyâna! because the Samâna <sup>1</sup> is subject to you.’ The Vyâna moved about again, and the Samâna spoke again. ‘I am the greatest among (you) all. Hear the reason why. When I am extinct, all the life-winds in the body of living creatures become extinct; and on my moving about, they again move about. I am the greatest. See I am extinct!’ Then the Udâna moved about, and the Udâna said to him; ‘I am the greatest among (you) all. Hear the reason why. When I am extinct, all the life-winds in the body of living creatures become extinct; and on my moving about, they again move about. I am the greatest. See I am extinct!’ Then the Udâna became extinct, and again moved about. And the Prâṇa and Apâna, and the Samâna, and the Vyâna also, spoke to him: ‘O Udâna! you are not the greatest. The Vyâna <sup>2</sup> only is subject to you.’

The Brâhmaṇa said :

Then Brahman, the lord of (all) creatures, said to them who were assembled together: ‘You are all greatest, and not greatest <sup>3</sup>. You are all possessed

<sup>1</sup> Because the Samâna helps in the digestion of the food which afterwards goes to the Vyâna for distribution through the nâḍīs.

<sup>2</sup> Because the Udâna is able to generate sound after the nâḍīs are filled up by the Vyâna.

<sup>3</sup> ‘Not greatest’ because none of them is independent of the other. ‘Greatest’ Arguna Misra renders by ‘superior to objects.’

*of one another's qualities* <sup>1</sup>. All are greatest in their own spheres, and all support one another. There is one unmoving <sup>2</sup> (life-wind). There are others moving about, (which are) five, owing to (their) specific qualities. My own self is one only <sup>3</sup>, (but) accumulated in numerous (forms). Being friendly with one another, and pleasing one another, go away happily. Welfare be to you ! Support one another.'

---

CHAPTER IX.

The Brâhmaṇa said :

On this, too, they relate this ancient story, a dialogue between Nârada and the sage Devamata.

Devamata said :

When a creature is about to be born, what comes into existence first, his Prâṇa, or Apâna, or Samâna, or Vyâna, or else Udâna ?

Nârada said :

By whichever the creature is produced, that which is other than this first comes to him. And the pairs of the life-winds should be understood, which (move) upwards, or downwards, or transversely.

---

<sup>1</sup> This is not quite clear. I presume it means that each one has the generic qualities which make the others great in their own spheres; but the specific qualities are different.

<sup>2</sup> The one life-wind is supposed here to be generally unmoving, but its distribution among the different parts of the body as specified, for instance, in the commentary on the Yoga-sûtra III, 38, gives it the different names. The expression does not seem to be quite accurate for this, which nevertheless seems to be the true sense.

<sup>3</sup> Another reading is, 'That one is my own self.' Cf. Maitrî, pp. 28 seq, 105, and Brîhadâraṇyaka, p. 169.

Devamata said :

By which (of the life-winds) is a creature produced ? and which (of them) first comes to him ? Explain to me also the pairs of the life-winds, which (move) upwards, or downwards, or transversely.

Nârada said :

Pleasure is produced from a mental operation <sup>1</sup>, and (it) is also produced from a sound, (it) is also produced from taste, and (it) is also produced from colour, and (it) is also produced from touch, and (it) is also produced from smell. This is the effect <sup>2</sup> of the Udâna; the pleasure is produced from union <sup>3</sup>. From desire the semen is produced; and from the semen is produced menstrual excretion. The semen and the blood are produced by the Samâna and the Vyâna in common <sup>4</sup>. From the combination of the semen and the blood, the Prâna comes first into operation; and the semen being developed by the Prâna, the Apâna then comes into operation. The pair Prâna and Apâna go upwards and downwards, and the Samâna and Vyâna are called the pair (moving) transversely. It is the teaching of the

<sup>1</sup> I. e. desire. 'Sound' = recollection of a woman's voice; 'taste,' scil. of chastity; 'colour' = the beauty of a woman, Arguna Misra. Cf. Âpastamba I, 2, 7, 8, and Lalita Vistara, p. 19.

<sup>2</sup> Literally, 'form,' which Arguna Misra interprets to mean effect, and adds, 'The Udâna causes mental activity, and by mental activity sound &c. are apprehended.'

<sup>3</sup> I. e. of Udâna and mind, Arguna Misra; adding, 'the result is that a creature is produced by the Udâna.'

<sup>4</sup> Or, perhaps, generally, that is to say, the store of them, the specific semen being produced from desire, as before stated. The Samâna's function is the digestion of food, and that of the Vyâna is the distribution of the digested food to the whole body through the nâdis, hence the proposition in the text.

derful mystery. The instrument, the action, the agent, and emancipation<sup>1</sup>, these, indeed, O you of a (pure) heart! are the four *Hotrîs* by whom this universe is enveloped. Hear also the assignment of causes exhaustively<sup>2</sup>. The nose, and the tongue, and the eye, and the skin, and the ear as the fifth, mind and understanding, these seven should be understood to be the causes of (the knowledge of) qualities. Smell, and taste, and colour, sound, and touch as the fifth, the object of the mental operation and the object of the understanding<sup>3</sup>, these seven are causes of action. He who smells, he who eats, he who sees, he who speaks, and he who hears as the fifth, he who thinks, and he who understands, these seven should be understood to be the causes of the agents<sup>4</sup>. These<sup>5</sup>, being possessed of qualities<sup>6</sup>, enjoy their own qualities, agreeable and disagreeable. And I am here devoid of qualities. Thus these seven are the causes of emancipation<sup>7</sup>. And among the learned who understand (everything), the

<sup>1</sup> Cf. as to the three first, *Gîtâ*, p. 123. They are the four categories, to one or other of which everything in the world may be referred.

<sup>2</sup> The texts here differ. *Arguna Misra*'s reading he interprets to mean 'the subjugation of these *Hotrîs*.' The reading followed in the text seems to some extent to be supported by the sequel. But the passage altogether is not very clear.

<sup>3</sup> So *Arguna Misra*—through these the knowledge of the qualities of objects of sense is acquired.

<sup>4</sup> The sensations, or perceptions, referred to lead to action.

<sup>5</sup> This seems to mean, that the powers of smelling, &c., when attributed to the self, make him appear as an agent, as an active principle.

<sup>6</sup> I. e. action, agent, and instrument, *Arguna Misra*.

<sup>7</sup> I. e. the three, goodness, passion, and darkness.

<sup>8</sup> It is these seven from which the self is to be emancipated. 'I' must mean the self, not the *Brâhmana* who speaks.

qualities<sup>1</sup> which are in the position of the deities, each in its own place, always enjoy the offering according to prescribed rules. To him who is not learned, eating various (kinds of) food, the (feeling of this or that being) mine adheres. And cooking food for himself, he, through the (feeling of this or that being) mine, is ruined<sup>2</sup>. The eating of that which should not be eaten, and drinking of intoxicating drinks also destroys him. He destroys the food, and destroying that food he is destroyed in return. The learned man, being (himself) a ruler, destroying this food again produces it<sup>3</sup>. And not even a trifling obstacle<sup>4</sup> arises to him from that food. Whatever is thought by the mind<sup>5</sup>, whatever is spoken by speech, whatever is heard by the ear, whatever is seen by the eye, whatever is touched by the sense of touch, and whatever is smelt by the nose, absorbing all these offerings from all sides, together with those (senses) which with the mind are six<sup>6</sup>, my fire<sup>7</sup> of (high) qualifications<sup>8</sup>, shines dwelling within the body. My sacrifice of concentration of mind is in progress, the performance of which yields the fire<sup>9</sup> of knowledge ;

<sup>1</sup> I. e., I presume, the senses. Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 55. The learned do not suppose their self to have aught to do with them. Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 64.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 53 ; *Manu* III, 118.

<sup>3</sup> His knowledge gives him this power. He is not 'destroyed' by the food as the other man is. *Nilakantha* compares *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 884. See, too, p. 260, note 1 supra.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. mi-chief owing to the destruction of life necessary for getting food, says *Nilakantha* quoting *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 813.

<sup>5</sup> This includes the operation of the understanding also. *Nilakantha* says this verse explains what the word 'food' means here.

<sup>6</sup> For the phrase cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 112.

<sup>7</sup> That is to say, my self, *Arguna Mîtra*. See p. 259, note 3 supra.

<sup>8</sup> As the objects of sense &c. are all absorbed into it.

<sup>9</sup> It is called 'fire,' as it burns up all action. Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 62.

is one hearer<sup>1</sup>; there is no second (different) from him. I speak concerning him who abides in the heart. Living under that instructor, (according to the proper mode of) living with an instructor, Sakra<sup>2</sup> acquired immortality in all worlds. There is one enemy; there is no second (different) from him. I speak concerning him who abides in the heart. Taught by that instructor, all snakes whatever are ever hated in the world<sup>3</sup>.

On this, too, they relate an ancient story, (about the) instruction of the snakes, and the gods, and sages, by Praṣāpati. The gods, and sages, and the snakes, and the demons, approaching Praṣāpati, said (to him): 'Tell us the highest good.' To them who were inquiring about the highest good, the venerable one said, 'Om<sup>4</sup>, the Brahman, in a single syllable.' Hearing that, they ran away in (various) directions<sup>5</sup>. When they were running for instruction regarding the self, the inclination of the snakes to biting had been already formed. The natural inclination of the demons towards ostentatiousness had been formed. The gods had been engaged in gifts, and the great sages in restraint of the senses. Having had one teacher,

<sup>1</sup> Nīlakantha takes this to mean pupil, but it is difficult to reconcile that with the rest of the passage. Arguna Misra renders it by 'the destroyer of every one's doubts.' For that, it will be necessary to take the word as a form of the causative, and not the simple root *sru*, to hear. But see, too, p. 283, 'the instructor . . . the hearer.'

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Sanatsugâtīya, p. 152, note 1.

<sup>3</sup> The words here are nearly the same as before; the commentators give no explanation of the repetition. But see p. 281, note 2.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 79. The full sense is that from the study of this Om the highest good is attained.

<sup>5</sup> I. e. to their own dwellings, believing that they had learnt what they wanted.

and having been instructed with one word, the snakes, the gods, the sages, and the demons, all engaged in different<sup>1</sup> (pursuits). One hears what is said (to one) and apprehends it duly; (but even) to one who inquires and extols highly, there is no other instructor<sup>2</sup>. And by his counsel does action afterwards take place. The instructor, the learner, the hearer, and the enemy, are always within the heart. Acting sinfully in the world, he becomes (a man of) sinful conduct. Acting virtuously in the world he becomes (a man of) virtuous conduct<sup>3</sup>. And he becomes a man of conduct according to his own desire<sup>4</sup>, who, owing to his desires, is given up to the pleasures of the senses. But he who, casting aside vows<sup>5</sup> and actions, merely adheres to the Brahman, he moving about in the world identifying himself with the Brahman, becomes a Brahmaçârin. To him the Brahman itself is the fuel, the Brahman the fire, the Brahman his origin, the Brahman water, the Brahman the instructor. He is rapt in the

<sup>1</sup> The meaning seems to be that the original inclination was not altered by the new instruction received by them. *Nîlakantha* seems to understand the passage differently. What has been rendered in the text by 'when they were running for instruction,' he renders by 'when they were practically carrying out the instruction received by them;' but this rendering seems to omit all consideration of the words 'Pûrvameva tu'—already. Though, therefore, there are one or two circumstances in favour of this construction, I have adopted the other. Cf. *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 964.

<sup>2</sup> The meaning is that the real instructor is within oneself, 'abiding in the heart,' as said before, although instruction may in form be received from one outside, of whom one seeks to learn, and whom one respects (or extols highly, as the text has it), and although such instruction may be well apprehended.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, pp. 546–853.

<sup>4</sup> See *Gîtâ*, p. 117.

<sup>5</sup> I. e. fasts and other like observances.

Brahman<sup>1</sup>. Such is this subtle life as a Brahma<sup>2</sup>ârin understood by the wise. Understanding it they practised it, being instructed by the Kshetrag<sup>3</sup>ña<sup>2</sup>.

## CHAPTER XII.

The Brâhma<sup>4</sup>na said :

I have crossed beyond that very impassable place, in which fancies are the gadflies and mosquitoes<sup>3</sup>, in which grief and joy are cold and heat, in which delusion is the blinding darkness, in which avarice is the beasts of prey and reptiles, in which desire and anger are the obstructors, the way to which consists in worldly objects, and is to be crossed by one singly<sup>4</sup>. And I have entered the great forest<sup>5</sup>.

The Brâhma<sup>6</sup>na's wife said :

Where is that forest, O very intelligent person ! what are the trees (there), and what the rivers, and the hills and mountains ; and at what distance is that forest ?

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 61. The water is that required for the sacrifice. The words 'the Brahman is his origin' are not quite clear, as being not connected with the figure employed. Perhaps it might be taken otherwise thus, 'the Brahman (is) the fire produced from the Brahman,' this last standing for the arani.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. one who understands the truth, Nîlakan<sup>7</sup>tha ; God, Arguna Misra. The same sentence winds up two of the following chapters ; and at p. 310 K<sup>8</sup>rîsh<sup>9</sup>na says the Kshetrag<sup>10</sup>ña signifies the supreme self. See Gîtâ, p. 102 seq.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Lalita Vistara, p. 44.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. not with the help of son, wealth, &c., says Nîlakan<sup>11</sup>tha, as each man's salvation after having got into the course of worldly life depends on himself. Cf. Sânti Parvan (Moksha Dharma), chap. 193, st. 32, and Manu IV, 240 ; obstructor, thief, Arguna Misra.

<sup>5</sup> I. e. the Brahman. Nîlakan<sup>12</sup>tha compares a text from the S<sup>13</sup>rut<sup>14</sup>i, 'Kim svid vanam ka u sa vrîksha âsa ;' see Rig-veda X, 31, 7.



The Brāhmaṇa said :

There is nothing else more delightful than that, when there is no distinction from it. There is nothing more afflicting than that, when there is a distinction from it<sup>1</sup>. There is nothing smaller than that, there is nothing larger than that<sup>2</sup>. There is nothing more subtle than that; there is no other happiness equal to that. Entering it, the twice-born do not grieve, and do not exult<sup>3</sup>. They are not afraid of anybody, and nobody is afraid of them. In that forest<sup>4</sup> are seven large trees<sup>5</sup>, seven fruits, and seven guests; seven hermitages, seven (forms of) concentration, and seven (forms of) initiation. This is the description of the forest. That forest is filled with trees producing splendid flowers and fruits of five colours<sup>6</sup>. That forest

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *Khândogya*, pp. 516, 517.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *Sanatsugâtîya*, p. 180 and note there.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. as to all this *Gîtâ*, p. 101.

<sup>4</sup> This is not the forest spoken of before, but what has been before called the 'impassable place,' but which also at p. 286 is by implication called a forest, viz. the course of worldly life.

<sup>5</sup> Viz. the eye, ear, tongue, skin, and nose, and the mind, and understanding—these are called trees, as being producers of the fruits, namely, the pleasures and pains derived from their several operations; the guests are the powers of each sense personified—they receive the fruits above described; the hermitages are the trees above mentioned, in which the guests take shelter; the seven forms of concentration are the exclusion from the self of the seven functions of the seven senses &c already referred to; the seven forms of initiation refer to the initiation into the higher life, by repudiating as not one's own the actions of each member out of the group of seven. Cf. as to this *Khândogya*, p. 219, and commentary there.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. for these different numbers of colours, *Yoga-sûtra* II, 19, and commentary, p. 105, and *Sāṅkhya-sāra*, p. 18. The trees here meant are the *Tanmâtras*, or subtle elements, and the theory is that the *Gandha-tanmâtra*, or subtle element of smell, has five qualities, its

is filled with trees producing flowers and fruits of four colours. That forest is filled with trees producing flowers and fruits of three colours, and mixed. That forest is filled with trees producing flowers and fruits of two colours, and of beautiful colours. That forest is filled with trees producing flowers and fruits of one colour, and fragrant. That forest is filled with two large trees producing numerous flowers and fruits of undistinguished colours <sup>1</sup>. There is one fire <sup>2</sup> here, connected with the Brahman <sup>3</sup>, and having a good mind <sup>4</sup>. And there is fuel here, (namely) the five senses. The seven (forms of) emancipation from them are the seven (forms of) initiation <sup>5</sup>. The qualities are the fruits, and the guests eat the fruits. There, in various places, the great sages receive hospitality. And when they have been worshipped and have disappeared <sup>6</sup>, another forest shines forth, in which intelligence is the tree, and emancipation the fruit, and which possesses shade (in the form of) tran-

own special one, so to say, and the four special ones of the others ; the next is taste, the next colour, the next touch, and the last sound ; each has one quality less than its predecessor. See Yoga-sūtra, p. 106, and gloss ; Sāṅkhya-sūtra I, 62 ; and Vedānta Paribhāṣā, p. 45.

<sup>1</sup> These are mind and understanding ; the fruits and flowers are here of 'undistinguished colours,' as the text expresses it, since they include the colours of all the fruits of all the other five sets of trees ; that is to say, the subject-matter of their operations is sound, taste, &c., the subject-matters of all the senses together. 'Undistinguished colours' is, perhaps, more literally 'of colours not clear.' Aṅgana Misra paraphrases it by 'of variegated colours,' which is no doubt the true ultimate sense.

<sup>2</sup> The self, Nīlakaṇṭha. See p. 279, note 7 supra.

<sup>3</sup> I. e., I presume, devoted to the Brahman.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. true knowledge, Aṅgana Misra. <sup>5</sup> See note 5, p. 285.

<sup>6</sup> I. e. when the senses having worked, as unconnected with the self, are finally absorbed into it. Cf. Sāṅkhya-kārikā 49 and Kaṭha, p. 151.

quillity, which depends on knowledge, which has contentment for its water, and which has the Kshetragña within for the sun. The good who attain to that, have no fear afterwards. Its end cannot be perceived upwards or downwards or horizontally<sup>1</sup>. There always dwell seven females there<sup>2</sup>, with faces (turned) downwards, full of brilliance, and causes of generation. They absorb<sup>3</sup> all the higher delights of people, as inconstancy (absorbs) everything<sup>4</sup>. In that same<sup>5</sup> (principle) the seven perfect sages, together with their chiefs, the richest<sup>6</sup>, abide, and again emerge from the same. Glory, brilliance, and greatness, enlightenment, victory, perfection, and power<sup>7</sup>—these seven rays follow<sup>8</sup> after this same sun. Hills and mountains also are there collected together, and rivers and streams flowing with water produced from the Brahman<sup>9</sup>. And there is the confluence of the rivers in the secluded place<sup>9</sup> for the

<sup>1</sup> It extends on all sides, its end cannot be perceived on any side.

<sup>2</sup> These are, according to Arguna Misra, the Mahat, Ahankâra, and five Tanmâtras. Their faces are turned downwards, as they are obstacles in the way upwards, viz. the way of final emancipation; they are brilliant, as they light up the course of worldly life; and hence, too, they are 'causes of generation.' They give birth to the universe.

<sup>3</sup> They conceal the higher delight of final emancipation.

<sup>4</sup> I follow Arguna Misra, but the text is doubtful.

<sup>5</sup> Viz. the Brahman.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. *Khândogya*, pp. 295-300. The word sages here, as before, means the various organs. See *Bṛhadâraṇyaka*, p. 415.

<sup>7</sup> Glory=renown; brilliance=Brahmic splendour (*Brahmatejas*); perfection=obtaining what is desired; power=not being conquered by others, Arguna Misra. About the sun, see line 3 of text above.

<sup>8</sup> I. e. contentment. See the second line in the text above.

<sup>9</sup> I. e. the space in the heart, the sacrifice being that of 'concentration of mind,' *yogayagña*,—*Nīlakanṭha*. A confluence of

sacrifice, whence those who are contented in their own self repair to the divine grandsire himself. Those whose wishes are reduced<sup>1</sup>, whose wishes are (fixed) on good vows, whose sins are burnt up by penance, merging the self in the self<sup>2</sup>, devote themselves to Brahman. Those people who understand the forest of knowledge<sup>3</sup>, praise tranquillity. And aspiring to that forest, they are born so as not to lose courage<sup>4</sup>. Such, indeed, is this holy forest, as understood by Brāhmaṇas. And understanding it, they act (accordingly), being directed by the Kshetragṇā.

### CHAPTER XIII.

The Brāhmaṇa said :

I do not smell smells, I perceive no tastes, I see no colour, and I do not touch, nor yet do I hear various sounds, nor even do I entertain any fancies<sup>5</sup>. Nature desires objects which are liked; nature hates all (objects) which are hateful<sup>6</sup>. Desire and hatred are born from nature<sup>7</sup>, as the upward and

downward rivers is very sacred—here the meaning intended seems to be the absorption of all desires by contentment into the heart.

<sup>1</sup> Literally, 'lean.' <sup>2</sup> I. e. the body in the soul, Arguna Misra.

<sup>3</sup> Knowledge is Brahman, which is described as a forest here, Arguna Misra.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Gītā, p. 70.

<sup>5</sup> This is the name for the operations of the mind.

<sup>6</sup> The sense is similar to that at Gītā, p. 55. The self has nothing to do with these feelings; the qualities deal with the qualities.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. Gītā, p. 65. The meaning of nature here, as in the Gītā, is in substance the result of all previous action with which the self has been associated, which result, of course, exists connected not with the self, but with the developments of nature, in the form of body,

downward life-winds, after attaining to the bodies of living creatures. Apart from them, and as the constant entity underlying them, I see the individual self in the body. Dwelling in that (self), I am in no wise attached<sup>1</sup> (to anything) through desire or anger, or old age, or death. Not desiring any object of desire, not hating any evil, there is no taint on my natures<sup>2</sup>, as there is no (taint) of a drop of water on lotuses<sup>3</sup>. They are inconstant things appertaining to this constant (principle) which looks on various natures. Although actions are performed, the net of enjoyments does not attach itself to it, as the net of the sun's rays does not attach itself to the sky<sup>4</sup>. On this<sup>5</sup>, too, they relate an ancient story, (in the shape of) a dialogue between an Adhvaryu priest and an ascetic. Understand that, O glorious one! Seeing an animal being sprinkled<sup>6</sup> at a sacrificial ceremony, an ascetic who was sitting (there) spoke to the Adhvaryu, censuring (the act) as destruction of life. The Adhvaryu

---

senses, &c. The comparison appears to mean that the feelings of desire &c. are, like the life-winds, unconnected with the self, though associated with it, and are both alike manifestations of nature.

<sup>1</sup> Nilakantha compares *Bṛhadâraṇyaka*, p. 770. Aṅgana Misra has a different reading, meaning 'liable (to be subjugated).'

<sup>2</sup> The plural, which is in the original, is unusual. The various aspects of the 'result' stated in p. 288, note 7, being looked at separately, are described as 'natures,' like the leaves of a lotus, which in their ensemble make one lotus.

<sup>3</sup> Lalita Vistara, p. 2, and p. 64 supra.

<sup>4</sup> The figure seems to be somewhat like that at *Gîtâ*, p. 82, about the atmosphere and space, which latter remains untainted by the former. Looking on various natures, i.e. as distinct from the self.

<sup>5</sup> Viz. the remaining untainted.

<sup>6</sup> I.e. with water, preparatory to its being offered up for the sacrifice.

answered him (saying), this goat will not be destroyed. (This) creature will obtain welfare, since the Vedic text is such. For that part of him which is of the earth will go to the earth; whatever in him is produced from water, that will enter water. His eye (will enter) the sun, (his) ear the quarters, and his life-winds likewise the sky<sup>1</sup>. There is no offence on my part, adhering (as I do) to the scriptures<sup>2</sup>.

The Ascetic said :

If you perceive (that) good (will) result upon his life being severed (from him), then the sacrifice is for the goat, what benefit (is it) to you? Let the brother, father, mother, and friend (of the goat) give you their consent<sup>3</sup>; take him (to them) and consult (them), especially as he is dependent. You ought to inquire of those who can give their consent thus. After hearing their consent, (the matter) will be fit for consideration<sup>4</sup>. The life-winds<sup>5</sup>, too, of this goat have gone to their sources, and I think only his unmoving body remains. To those who wish to derive enjoyment from the slaughter (of a living creature), the unconscious body being comparable to fuel, that which is called an animal becomes

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 542, and p. 337 below.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *Khândogya-upanishad*, p. 627, and also *Sârîraka Bhâshya* on *Sûtra* III, 1, 25, p. 774.

<sup>3</sup> I.e. for his slaughter, which is to bring welfare to the goat. Arguna Misra says that this is a sort of *reductio ad absurdum*, as the sacrifice is in truth not in the interests of the goat at all.

<sup>4</sup> Viz. whether the goat should be killed. Without their consent he ought not to be slaughtered; with their consent, it becomes a matter for consideration, Arguna Misra.

<sup>5</sup> It may also mean the senses, as in the *Khândogya*, p. 297.

the fuel<sup>1</sup>. The teaching of the elders<sup>2</sup> is, that refraining from slaughter (of living creatures) is (the duty) among all duties. We maintain that that action should be performed which involves no slaughter. (Our) proposition is no slaughter (of living creatures). If I spoke further, it would be possible to find fault with your proceedings in many ways<sup>3</sup>. Always refraining from the slaughter of all beings is what we approve. We substantiate (this) from what is actually visible<sup>4</sup>, we do not rely on what is not visible.

The Adhvaryu said :

You enjoy the earth's quality of fragrance, you drink watery juices, you see the colours of shining bodies, you touch the qualities of the air, you hear the sound produced in space, you think by the mind (on the objects of) mental operations. And all these entities, you believe, have life. You have not (then) abstained from taking life. You are (engaged) in the slaughter (of living creatures)<sup>5</sup>. There is no movement<sup>6</sup> without slaughter (of living creatures). Or what do you think, O twice-born one?

<sup>1</sup> This is not very clear, but the meaning seems to be that the slaughter is committed for the enjoyment of the sacrificer; the sacrificer only requires fuel, and the slaughtered animal is then used for that purpose.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *Khândogya*, p. 627, and next note; and *Gîtâ*, inter alia, p. 114, and p. 348 infra. <sup>3</sup> See *Sânkhyatattvakaumudî*, p. 7.

<sup>4</sup> I.e. a rule expressly laid down. What is not visible means what is not expressly stated, but is to be derived by inference, and so forth (cf. *Âpastamba I*, 1, 4, 8). The express text is the famous one, 'Na himsyâtsarvâ bhûtâni.' *Himsâ*, which is rendered slaughter here, may mean also 'giving pain' generally.

<sup>5</sup> This is the *tu quoque* argument. The sustentation of life requires some sort of slaughter.

<sup>6</sup> I.e. the support of the body, says *Arguna Misra*.

on a time, as we have heard, he was walking about near the sea, proud of his strength, and showering hundreds of arrows on the sea. The ocean, saluting him, and with joined hands, said, 'O brave man! do not throw arrows (on me). Say, what shall I do for you? The creatures, who take shelter with me, are being destroyed, O tiger-like king! by the great arrows thrown by you. Give them security, O Lord!'

Arguna said :

If there is anywhere any wielder of the bow equal to me in battle, who might stand against me in the field, name him to me.

The ocean said :

If, O king! you have heard of the great sage Gamadagni, his son is (the) proper (person) to show you due hospitality<sup>1</sup>.

Then the king, full of great wrath, went away, and arriving at that hermitage approached Râma only. In company with his kinsmen, he did many (acts) disagreeable to Râma, and caused much trouble to the high-souled Râma. Then the power of Râma, whose power was unbounded, blazed forth, burning the hosts of the enemy, O lotus-eyed one! And then Râma, taking up his axe, hacked away that man of the thousand arms in battle, like a tree of many branches. Seeing him killed and fallen, all (his) kinsmen assembled together, and taking swords and lances, surrounded the descendant of Bhṛigu. Râma also taking up a bow, and hurriedly mounting a chariot, shot away volleys of arrows, and blew away the army of the king. Then some of the

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e. by giving him what he desired—a 'foeman worthy of his steel' to fight with him.



Kshatriyas, often troubled by fear of the son of Gamadagni, entered mountains and inaccessible places, like antelopes troubled by a lion. And the subjects of those (Kshatriyas) who were not performing their prescribed duties <sup>1</sup> through fear of him, became *Vrishalas*, owing to the disappearance of *Brâhmanas* <sup>2</sup>. Thus the *Dravidas*, *Âbhîras*, *Paundras*, together with the *Sâbaras*, became *Vrishalas* <sup>3</sup>, owing to the abandonment of their duties by Kshatriyas. Then when the heroic (children) of Kshatriya women were destroyed again and again, the Kshatriyas, who were produced by the *Brâhmanas* <sup>4</sup>, were also destroyed by the son of Gamadagni. At the end of the twenty-first slaughter, a bodiless voice from heaven, which was heard by all people, spoke sweetly to Râma, 'O Râma! O Râma! desist (from this slaughter). What good, dear friend, do you perceive, in taking away the lives of these kinsmen of Kshatriyas over and over again?' Then, too, his grandfathers <sup>5</sup>, with *Rikîka* as their head, likewise said to the high-souled (Râma), 'Desist, O noble one <sup>6</sup>!' But Râma, not forgiving his father's

<sup>1</sup> Viz. the protection of their subjects.

<sup>2</sup> As the kings failed to protect the people, the *Brâhmanas* apparently were nowhere forthcoming.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Muir, Sanskrit Texts, vol. i, pp. 482 seq., 358, 391; vol. ii, p. 423; *Sânti Parvan*, ch. 65, st. 13; ch. 207, st. 42 (*Râgadharma*).

<sup>4</sup> As Kshatriyas were required for the protection of the people, the *Brâhmanas* procreated them on Kshatriya women. See Muir, Sanskrit Text, vol. i, p. 451 seq. And as they were the offspring of these anomalous connexions they are described as 'kinsmen of Kshatriyas.' Cf. *Khândogya*, p. 317; *Bṛhadâraṇyaka*, p. 1037 and comments there. As to heroic, see Muir, Sanskrit Texts, vol. iv, p. 302 note.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 40, note 1.

<sup>6</sup> See as to the whole story, Muir, Sanskrit Texts, vol. i, p. 442.

them only. Therefore I will cast sharp arrows at the tongue.

The tongue said :

These arrows, O Alarka ! will not penetrate through me at all. They will only pierce your own vital part, and your vital part being pierced, you will die. Look out for other arrows by which you may destroy me.

Hearing that, he then spoke these words after consideration :—

Alarka said :

Touching various (objects of) touch, the skin hankers after them only. Therefore I will tear off the skin by various feathered arrows.

The skin said :

These arrows, O Alarka ! will not penetrate through me at all. They will only pierce your own vital part, and your vital part being pierced, you will die. Look out for other arrows by which you may destroy me.

Hearing that, he then said after consideration :—

Alarka said :

Hearing various sounds, the (ear) hankers after them only. Therefore I (will) cast sharp arrows at the ear.

The ear said :

These arrows, O Alarka ! will not penetrate through me at all. They will only pierce your own vital part, and then you will lose (your) life. Look out for other arrows by which you may destroy me.

Hearing that, he then said after consideration :—

Alarka said :

Seeing numerous colours, the eye hankers after them only. Therefore I will destroy the eye with sharp arrows.

The eye said :

These arrows, O Alarka ! will not penetrate through me at all. They will only pierce your own vital part, and your vital part being pierced, you will die. Look out for other arrows by which you may destroy me.

Hearing that, he then said after consideration :—

Alarka said :

This (understanding) forms various determinations by its operation. Therefore I will cast sharp arrows at the understanding.

The understanding said :

These arrows, O Alarka ! will not penetrate through me at all. They will only pierce your own vital part, and your vital part being pierced, you will die. Look out for other arrows by which you may destroy me.

The Brâhmaṇa<sup>1</sup> said :

Then Alarka even there employed himself in a fearful penance<sup>2</sup> difficult to perform ; but he did not obtain any arrows for these seven by his devotions. Then that king deliberated with a mind very intent on one (subject), and after deliberating for a long time, O best of the twice-born ! Alarka, the best of talented (men), could not arrive at anything better

<sup>1</sup> Sic in our copies. It should be the *Pitrîs*, seeing that they are relating Alarka's story to Parasurâma.

<sup>2</sup> Meditation, or pondering, according to *Nilakantha*.

than concentration of mind<sup>1</sup>. Then directing his mind to one point<sup>2</sup>, he became steady, and applied himself to concentration of mind. And (then) the brave man forthwith destroyed the senses with one arrow; and entering the self by means of concentration of mind, he reached the highest perfection. And the royal sage, amazed, then uttered this verse, 'O! Alas! that we should have engaged in all external (matters); that being possessed of a desire for enjoyments, we should have devoted ourselves before now to sovereignty! I have now subsequently learnt that there is no higher happiness than concentration of mind.' Do you understand this too, O Râma! and do not kill Kshatriyas. Perform a fearful<sup>3</sup> penance, thence you will obtain the highest good. Thus spoken to by (his) grandfathers, the noble son of Gamadagni engaged himself in fearful penance, and attained that perfection which is difficult to reach.

## CHAPTER XVI.

The Brâhmaṇa said :

There are, verily, three foes in (this) world, and they are stated to be (divided) ninefold, according to qualities. Exultation, pleasure, joy<sup>4</sup>, these three

<sup>1</sup> I. e. the rāga-yoga, says Nīlakanṭha, which consists in mere control of the mind. Cf. Sāṅkhya-sāra, p. 39.

<sup>2</sup> See Yoga-sūtra, p. 45.

<sup>3</sup> This means difficult, and occasioning many trials to one who performs it.

<sup>4</sup> Nīlakanṭha says exultation is when one is sure of obtaining what is desired, pleasure when it is obtained, and joy when the thing obtained is enjoyed. Arguna Misra takes a different distinction; but our copy of his commentary is not quite intelligible in

are qualities appertaining to the quality of goodness. Grief, wrath, persistent hatred, these are stated to be qualities appertaining to the quality of passion. Sleep, sloth, and delusion, these three qualities are qualities appertaining to the quality of darkness. Cutting these off by multitudes of arrows<sup>1</sup>, a courageous man, free from sloth, having a tranquil self, and senses controlled, is energetic about subjugating others<sup>2</sup>. On this, people who know about ancient times celebrate verses which were sung of old by the king Ambarisha, who had become tranquil (in mind). When vices<sup>3</sup> were in the ascendant, and good (men) were oppressed, Ambarisha, of great glory, forceably possessed him-

the beginning. Pleasure he takes to mean 'pride felt in supposing oneself to possess some merit,' and joy that produced when impending danger is averted. As to the next triad, the text is again unsatisfactory. The text printed in the edition which contains Nīlakantha's commentary, is 'desire, anger,' &c. There is nothing about them in the commentary. Arguna Misra's text is the one we have adopted. He says, 'grief, pain caused by loss of what is desired; anger, the pain caused by the counteraction of one's attempts to injure another; persistent hatred, the pain caused by believing another to be doing harm to oneself.' Persistent hatred is Nīlakantha's interpretation. I think his interpretation is preferable. The two triads seem to be based on one principle of gradation. The distinctive marks of the three qualities are pleasure, pain, and delusion respectively, and those characterise the three triads stated in the text. See Sānti Parvan (Moksha), chap. 194, st. 27 seq.

<sup>1</sup> Tranquillity and so forth, Nīlakantha; practising yoga or concentration of mind, Arguna Misra.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. external, says Arguna Misra; external foes of one's own emancipation is, I presume, what is meant.

<sup>3</sup> Arguna Misra says, 'his own and those of others.' Nīlakantha takes good to mean not men, but tranquillity, &c. The next sentence seems rather to militate against this view, which in itself is not a well-founded one.

self of the kingdom<sup>1</sup>. He (then) restraining his own vices, and honouring good men, attained high perfection, and sang these verses : ' I have conquered most vices ; destroyed all foes ; but there is one, the greatest, vice which should be destroyed and which I have not destroyed—that (vice), being impelled by which, a creature does not attain freedom from desire, and being troubled by desire, understands (nothing) while running into ditches<sup>2</sup> ; (that vice), being impelled by which, a man even does what ought not to be done. That avarice—cut (it) off, cut (it) off with sharp swords. For from avarice<sup>3</sup> is born desire ; then anxiety comes into existence ; and he who desires, mostly acquires qualities appertaining to the quality of passion. Obtaining those, he mostly acquires qualities appertaining to the quality of darkness<sup>4</sup>. When the bodily frame is destroyed, he, owing to these qualities, is born again and again, and engages in action. And at the expiration of life, again with his body dismembered and scattered about, he meets death, and again birth. Therefore, properly perceiving this, and restraining avarice by courage, one should wish for sovereignty in the self. This is sovereignty<sup>5</sup> ; there is no other sovereignty here. The self properly understood is itself the sovereign.' Such were

<sup>1</sup> For the good of the people, says Arguna Misra.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. base actions, *Nilakanṭha*.

<sup>3</sup> Avarice, according to Arguna Misra, is the belief that one has not got that which one has, and desire is the wish for more and more. Avarice, seems, however, to be the general frame of mind, always wishing for something, never being contented, and desire is the wish for a specific object.

<sup>4</sup> Which are sources of delusion. Cf. a similar doctrine at *Āpastamba* II, 5, 140. <sup>5</sup> *Nilakanṭha* compares *Taittirīya*, p. 26.

the verses sung with regard to the great sovereignty, by the glorious Ambarisha, who destroyed the one (chief vice), avarice.

---

## CHAPTER XVII.

The Brâhmaṇa said :

On this<sup>1</sup>, too, they relate this ancient story (in the shape of) a dialogue, O you of a pure heart ! between a Brâhmaṇa and Ganaka. King Ganaka, by way of punishment, said to a Brâhmaṇa who had fallen into some offence : ‘ You should not live within my dominions.’ Thus spoken to, the Brâhmaṇa then replied to that best of kings : ‘ Tell me, O king ! how far (extend) the dominions which are subject to you. I wish, O Lord ! to live in the dominions of another king, and, O master of the earth ! I wish to do your bidding according to the Sâstras.’ Thus spoken to by that glorious Brâhmaṇa, the king then heaved frequent and warm sighs, and said nothing in reply. While that king of unbounded power was seated, engaged in meditation, a delusion suddenly came upon him, as the planet<sup>2</sup> upon the sun. Then when the delusion had gone off, the king recovered himself, and after a short while spoke these words to the Brâhmaṇa.

Ganaka said :

Though this country, which is the kingdom of my father and grandfather, is subject (to me), I cannot

---

<sup>1</sup> On getting rid of the notion that this, that, and the other thing is one’s own,—Arguna Misra. Nilakantha agrees, and adds also on the subject of cutting off avarice.

<sup>2</sup> That is to say, Râhu. .

find my domain<sup>1</sup>, searching through the (whole) earth. When I did not find it on the earth, I looked for Mithilâ ; when I did not find it in Mithilâ, I looked for my own offspring. When I did not find it among them, then came the delusion on me. Then on the expiration of the delusion, intelligence again came to me. Now I think that there is no domain (of mine), or that everything is my domain. Even this self is not mine, or the whole earth is mine. And as mine, so (is it) that of others too, I believe, O best of the twice-born ! Live (here, therefore) while you desire, and enjoy while you live<sup>2</sup>.

The Brâhmana said :

Tell me, what belief you have resorted to, by which, though this country, which is the kingdom of your father and grandfather, is subject to you, you have got rid of (the notion that this or that is) mine. What conviction have you adopted, by which verily you consider your whole domain as not (your) domain, or all as your domain ?

Ganaka said :

I understand (all) conditions here, in all affairs, to be terminable<sup>3</sup>, hence I could not find anything that should be (called) mine<sup>4</sup>. (Considering) whose this

<sup>1</sup> Meaning, apparently, that over which he and no one else has power. He contracts his vision gradually, and finds nothing at all which he can call his own to the exclusion of others. He explains, further on, how he arrives at the alternative conviction stated towards the close of this speech. In the *Bṛhadâraṇyaka* (p. 916) he is said to have offered his kingdom to Yâgñavalkya and himself as his slave, after learning the *Brahma-vidyâ*. See too Muir, *Sanskrit Texts*, vol. iv, p. 426 seq.

<sup>2</sup> See *Sânti Parvan* (Moksha) I, 13.

<sup>3</sup> Conditions of indigence or affluence, *Nilakantha*. Arguna Misra's reading is different.

<sup>4</sup> There is a familiar verse, ascribed to Ganaka, which says, 'If



was, (I thought of) the Vedic text about anybody's property, (hence) I could not find by my intelligence anything that should be (called) mine<sup>1</sup>. Resorting to this conviction, I have got rid of (the notion that this or that is) mine. Now hear the conviction, holding which, my domain (appears to me to be) everywhere<sup>2</sup>. I do not desire for myself even smells existing in the nose<sup>3</sup>. Therefore the earth<sup>4</sup> being conquered is always subject to me. I do not desire for myself tastes even dwelling in the mouth. Therefore water being conquered is always subject to me. I do not desire for myself the colour (or) light appertaining to the eye. Therefore light being conquered is always subject to me. I do not desire for myself the (feelings of touch) which exist in the skin. Therefore air being conquered is always

Mithilâ is on fire, nothing of mine is burnt (in it).’ The verse occurs in the Mahâbhârata, Sânti Parvan (Moksha Dharma), chap. 178, st. 2, and also chap. 276, st. 4. See too Muir, Sanskrit Texts, vol. i, p. 429.

<sup>1</sup> This is not clear. I have followed Nîlakantha's text. Arguna Misra's is in the earlier part more intelligible, ‘Whose is this to-day, whose to-morrow?’ But I cannot find that there is any Vedic text to this effect. Nîlakantha cites on his text Îropanishad, p. 5. The meaning here seems to be, ‘When I considered as to whom the things I saw in my thoughts belonged to, I remembered the Vedic text that one should not wish to obtain another's property, and so, thinking about the matter with that caution, I could not make out that there was anything which I could call my own.’

<sup>2</sup> This is the alternative conclusion he has come to.

<sup>3</sup> The sense of smell enjoys the smell, my self has nothing to do with it. Cf. Gîtâ, p. 55, also Maitrî, pp. 112, 113.

<sup>4</sup> Whenever there is any smell, it is supposed that particles of earth are there; so the meaning here is ‘all things having the quality of smell are subject to me,’ and so throughout. The objects of sense are all used for the purposes of the prescribed actions, the benefits of which accrue to gods, &c. Cf. Gîtâ, pp. 53, 54, and see also pp. 84, 85.

subject to me. I do not desire for myself sounds even though existing in the ear. Therefore sounds being conquered are always subject to me. I do not desire for myself the mind always within me. Therefore the mind being conquered is always subject to me. All these actions of mine are, verily, for this purpose, (namely) for the gods, the Pitris, the Bhûtas, together with guests. Then the Brâhmaṇa, smiling, again said to Ganaka: 'Know me to be Dharma, come here to-day to learn (something) about you<sup>1</sup>. You are the one person to turn this wheel, the nave of which is the Brahman<sup>2</sup>, the spoke the understanding, and which does not turn back<sup>3</sup>, and which is checked by the quality of goodness as its circumference<sup>4</sup>.'

---

## CHAPTER XVIII.

The Brâhmaṇa said:

O modest one! I do not move about in this world in the way which, according to your own understanding, you have guessed. I<sup>5</sup> am a Brâhmaṇa, I am

---

<sup>1</sup> I. e. to put him to the test. Such examinations are often referred to in our later literature.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. Veda, says Arguna Misra.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. says Arguna Misra, which leads to the seat from which there is no return. Cf. Gîtâ, p. 112.

<sup>4</sup> The wheel is the yoga, says Arguna Misra. The expression is noteworthy, as being that used of Buddha's teaching. See on that Davids' Buddhism, p. 45.

<sup>5</sup> The man who has achieved final emancipation has got that, in which the benefits to be derived from the course of life of a Brâhmaṇa, &c., are included (see p. 191 supra). Hence, says he, the

emancipated, I am a forester, and I likewise perform the duties of a householder, observing vows. I am not such, O beautiful one! as you see me with the eye. I pervade every single thing that is in this world. Whatever creatures there are in the world, movable or not moving, know me to be the destroyer of them as fire is of wood<sup>1</sup>. Sovereignty over the whole world, and even over heaven; that, or else this knowledge; (of these two) knowledge is my only wealth<sup>2</sup>. This<sup>3</sup> is the path of the Brâhmanas, by which those who understand that<sup>4</sup> proceed, to households, or residence in forests, or, dwelling with preceptors, or among mendicants<sup>5</sup>. With numerous unconfused symbols only one knowledge is approached. And those who, adhering to various symbols and Âsramas, have their understanding full of tranquillity<sup>6</sup>, go to the single entity as rivers to the ocean. This path is traversed by the understanding, not by the body<sup>7</sup>. Actions have a beginning and an end, and the body is tied down by action. Hence, O beautiful one! you

---

doubt, on which your question is based as to what world you will go to by being joined to me, is wrong. See p. 256 supra.

<sup>1</sup> He is speaking here on the footing of the essential identity of everything. Cf. Gîtâ, p. 62.

<sup>2</sup> The expression here is clumsy; the meaning is that he prefers knowledge to sovereignty, if the alternative is offered him.

<sup>3</sup> Viz. knowledge.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. the Brahman.

<sup>5</sup> These are the four orders or Âsramas.

<sup>6</sup> The knowledge to be acquired, by whatever symbols the attempt to acquire it is made, is but this, that all is one; and that is acquired certainly when tranquillity has been achieved.

<sup>7</sup> I. e. by realising the identity of everything, not by the actions performed with the body, which, as he goes on to show, are perishable, and cannot lead to any lasting result.

destruction of the Kshetragñā<sup>1</sup>, turned to that which is beyond (all) Kshetragñās by means of a knowledge of the Kshetra<sup>2</sup>.

Arguna said :

Where, indeed, O *Kṛishna*! is that Brâhmana's wife, and where is that chief of Brâhmanas, by both of whom this perfection was attained? Tell me about them both, O undegraded one!

The Deity said :

Know my mind to be the Brâhmana, and know my understanding to be the Brâhmana's wife. And he, O *Dhanañgaya*! who has been spoken of as the Kshetragñā, is I myself<sup>3</sup>.

## CHAPTER XX.

Arguna said :

Be pleased to explain to me the Brahman which is the highest object of knowledge; for by your favour my mind is much interested in (these) subtle<sup>4</sup> (subjects).

Vāsudeva said :

On this, too, they relate an ancient story (in the shape of) a dialogue, connected with final emancipation, between a preceptor and a pupil. A talented

<sup>1</sup> I.e. after the identification of the individual self with the universal self, when the individual ceases to be perceived as such. Cf. *Sânti Parvan* (*Moksha*), chap. 187, st. 23.

<sup>2</sup> That beyond Kshetragñās = the absolute supreme self. Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 106.

<sup>3</sup> The substance of this speech, says *Arguna Misra*, is that the mind and understanding devoted to the supreme lead to final emancipation.

<sup>4</sup> See p. 296 supra. The last chapter closes what in some of the MSS. is called the *Brahma Gîtâ*, or *Brâhmana Gîtâ* contained in the *Anugîtâ Parvan*. See further as to this our Introduction, where the point is further dwelt on.

pupil, O terror of your foes! asked a Brâhmana preceptor of rigid vows, (when he was) seated, something about the highest good. 'I' (he said), 'whose goal is the highest good, am come to you (who are) venerable; I pray of you with (bowed) head, O Brâhmana! that you should explain to me what I ask.' The preceptor, O son of Prîthâ! said to the pupil who spoke thus: 'I will explain to you everything, O twice-born one! on which you verily have any doubt.' Thus addressed by the preceptor, O best of the Kauravas! he who was devoted to the preceptor, put (his) questions with joined hands. Listen to that, O you of great intelligence!

The pupil said :

Whence am I<sup>1</sup>, and whence are you? Explain that which is the highest truth. From what were the movable and immovable entities born? By what do entities live, and what is the limit of their life? What is truth, what penance, O Brâhmana? What are called the qualities by the good? And what paths are happy? What is pleasure, and what sin? These questions of mine, O venerable Brâhmana sage! O you of excellent vows! do you be pleased to explain<sup>2</sup> correctly, truly, and accurately. There is none else here who can explain these questions. Speak, O best of those who understand piety! I feel the highest curiosity (in this matter). You are celebrated in the worlds as skilled in topics connected with the piety (required for) final emancipation. And there exists none else but you who can destroy all

<sup>1</sup> Compare the questions at the beginning of the *Svetâsvatara-upanishad*.

<sup>2</sup> A similar expression to that in the *Sanatsugâtiya*, p. 149, and elsewhere.

talented one! the true conclusion<sup>1</sup> about the past, the present, the future, and so forth, and piety, desire, and wealth<sup>2</sup>, which is understood by the multitudes of Siddhas, which belongs to olden times, and is eternal, which ought to be apprehended, and understanding which talented men have here attained perfection. Formerly<sup>3</sup>, the sages, *Bṛihaspati*, *Bharadvâga*, *Gautama*, and likewise *Bhârgava*, *Vasishtha*, and also *Kâsyapa*, and *Visvâmitra*, and *Atri* also, desiring knowledge, met each other, after having travelled over all paths<sup>4</sup>, and becoming wearied of their own actions. And those twice-born (sages), giving the lead to the old sage *Âṅgirasa*, saw *Brahman*, from whom (all) sin has departed, in *Brahman's* mansion. Having saluted that high-souled one who was sitting at ease, the great sages, full of humility, asked him this momentous (question) concerning the highest good: 'How should one perform good action? how is one released from sin? what paths are happy for us? what is truth and what vice? By what action are the two paths southern and northern obtained<sup>5</sup>? (and what is) destruction<sup>6</sup> and emancipation, the birth and death of entities?' What the grandsire said conformably to the scriptures<sup>7</sup>,

<sup>1</sup> I. e. the means of arriving at it, *Arguna Misra*.

<sup>2</sup> The triad, the acquisition of which worldly men aspire to.

<sup>3</sup> He explains how the doctrine belongs to olden times.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. paths of action, *Nîlakantha*. See *Sanatsugâtîya*, p. 165.

<sup>5</sup> Namely, the *Pitriyâna* and *Devayâna* (*Arguna Misra*), as to which see *Khândogya*, p. 341, *Kaushîtaki*, p. 13, and *Bṛihadâra-nyaka*, p. 1034.

<sup>6</sup> *Nîlakantha* seems to interpret this to mean the temporary and final dissolutions of the worlds, on which see, inter alia, *Vedânta Paribhâshâ*, p. 48.

<sup>7</sup> So *Nîlakantha*. May it not be 'according to the received tradition?'

when thus spoken to by the sages, I will state to you. Listen (to that) O pupil!

Brahman said :

From the truth were the entities movable and immovable produced. They live by penance<sup>1</sup>. Understand that, O you of excellent vows. By their own action they remain transcending their own source<sup>2</sup>. For the truth joined with the qualities is invariably of five varieties. The Brahman<sup>3</sup> is the truth ; penance is the truth ; Pragâpati also is truth ; the entities are born from the truth ; the universe consisting of (all) creatures is the truth. Therefore Brâhmanas whose final goal is always concentration of mind, from whom anger and vexation have departed, and who are invariably devoting themselves to piety, are full of the truth. I will speak about those (Brâhmanas) who are restrained by one another<sup>4</sup>, who are possessed of knowledge, who are the establishers of the bridge of piety, and who are the constant creators of the people<sup>5</sup>. I will speak of the four (branches of) knowledge, and likewise of the castes, and of the four orders, distinctly. The wise always speak of piety as one, (but) having

<sup>1</sup> I.e. by action, *Nilakantha*. Cf. *Mundaka*, p. 280, and see p. 166 supra, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> I.e. they remain apart from the Brahman, being engaged in action. This answers some of the questions put by the pupil to the preceptor. As to 'the truth,' see p. 162, note 2 supra.

<sup>3</sup> I.e. *Īsvara*, or god ; penance = piety ; Pragâpati = the individual soul, *Nilakantha*. Brahman = 'that' (but how is 'that' joined with qualities?) ; Pragâpati = Brahman, *Arguna Misra*. They agree about penance and entities (which they take to mean the gross elements) and creatures. Brahman and Pragâpati = *Viiâg* and *Hiranyagarbha* (?), p. 186 supra. Cf. *Sânti Parvan (Moksha)*, chap. 190, st. 1.

<sup>4</sup> I.e. who commit no breach of piety through fear of one another, *Nilakantha*.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 86.

four quarters. I will speak to you, O twice-born ones! of the happy path, which is productive of pleasure, and which has been invariably travelled over by talented men in old days for (obtaining) assimilation with the Brahman. Learn, O noble ones! from me, now speaking exhaustively, of that highest path which is difficult to understand, and of the highest seat. The first step is said to be the order of Brahmaçârins; the second is that of householders; next after that is that of foresters; and next after that too, the highest step must be understood to be that relating to the Adhyâtma<sup>1</sup>. Light<sup>2</sup>, space, sun, air, Indra, Pragâpati, one sees not these, while one does not attain to the Adhyâtma<sup>3</sup>. I will subsequently state the means to that, which you should understand. The order of foresters, (the order) of the sages who dwell in forests and live on fruits, roots and air, is prescribed for the three twice-born (castes). The order of householders is prescribed for all castes. The talented ones speak of piety as having faith for its characteristic. Thus have I described to you the paths leading to the gods<sup>4</sup>, which are occupied by good and talented men by means of their actions, and which are bridges of piety. He who, rigid in his vows, takes up any one of these modes of piety separately, always comes in time to perceive the production and dissolution of

<sup>1</sup> That is to say, that of the ascetic, who specially devotes himself to the acquisition of knowledge about the relation of the supreme and individual self (Adhyâtma).

<sup>2</sup> The deity presiding over the bright fortnight, says Arguna Misra. The words space and sun and air must be similarly interpreted.

<sup>3</sup> Nîlakantha says 'one sees these only while one has not had a perception of the self.' He takes light &c. to mean the 'universe.'

<sup>4</sup> I. e. the means of reaching the Devayâna path (mentioned at p. 314, note 5), Nîlakantha. Cf. also Mundaka, p. 312.



(all) entities <sup>1</sup>. Now I shall state with accuracy and with reasons, all the elements which abide in parts in all objects. The great self <sup>2</sup>, the unperceived <sup>3</sup> likewise, and likewise also egoism, the ten senses and the one <sup>4</sup> (sense), and the five great elements, and the specific characteristics of the five elements <sup>5</sup>, such is the eternal creation. The number of the elements is celebrated as being twenty-four plus one. And the talented man who understands the production and dissolution of (all) elements, he, of all beings, never comes by delusion. He who accurately understands the elements, the whole of the qualities <sup>6</sup>, and also all the deities <sup>7</sup>, casting aside sin, and getting rid of (all) bonds, attains to all the spotless worlds.

---

## CHAPTER XXI.

Brahman said :

That unperceived (principle), all-pervading, everlasting, and immutable, which is in a state of equilibrium <sup>8</sup>, should be understood (to become) the city of nine portals, consisting of three qualities, and five

---

<sup>1</sup> Namely, how they are all manifestations of the Brahman, and are all dissolved in it. Cf. *inter alia* Gîtâ, pp. 74, 92.

<sup>2</sup> See the *Kaṭhopanishad*, p. 149. See also p. 332 *infra*.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 313, note 3 *supra*.

<sup>4</sup> I.e. the mind. Cf. Gîtâ, p. 102. <sup>5</sup> Viz. smell, sound, &c.

<sup>6</sup> Tranquillity, self-restraint, &c., *Arguna Misra*. Are they not rather the three qualities? As to 'twenty-four plus one' above, see p. 368.

<sup>7</sup> Does this mean the senses, as at Gîtâ, p. 123? An accurate understanding of the things noted requires a knowledge of their relation to the supreme, which is the means of final emancipation. And see p. 337 *infra*.

<sup>8</sup> See Gîtâ, p. 107, and *Sâṅkhya-sâra*, p. 11, and note 2, p. 331 *infra*.

constituent principles<sup>1</sup>, encircled by the eleven<sup>2</sup>, consisting of mind<sup>3</sup> as the distinguishing power, and of the understanding as ruler, this is (an aggregate made up of) eleven<sup>4</sup>. The three currents<sup>5</sup> which are within this (city) support (it)<sup>6</sup> again and again, and those three channels run on, being constituted by the three qualities. Darkness, passion, and goodness, these are called the three qualities, which are all coupled with one another, and likewise serve one another, which depend on one another, and attend on one another, and are joined to one another<sup>7</sup>. And the five constituent principles

<sup>1</sup> The five gross elements of which the body is composed (cf. *Mahābhārata*, *Sānti Parvan*, *Moksha Dharma*, chap. 183, st. 1 seq.) are developments of the unperceived principle, the *Prakṛti*. Cf. *Gītā*, p. 112, where the words 'which remain (absorbed) in nature' have been inadvertently omitted after 'with the mind as the sixth.' As to the nine portals cf. *Gītā*, p. 65.

<sup>2</sup> The five active organs, the five perceptive senses, and the mind.

<sup>3</sup> This *Arguna Misra* takes to mean 'egoism.' *Nilakantha* takes the usual meaning, and adds, objects are produced from mental operations; 'distinguishing,' that is, manifesting as distinct entities.

<sup>4</sup> The eleven are, according to *Arguna Misra*, the three qualities, the five gross elements, the group of organs and senses as one, egoism, and understanding.

<sup>5</sup> Viz. the *nāḍīs*, *Idā*, *Piṅgalā*, and *Sushumṇā*, *Arguna Misra*, who adds that they are respectively of the quality of darkness, passion, and goodness.

<sup>6</sup> The three *nāḍīs*, says *Arguna Misra*, support the life-winds. *Nilakantha* takes the three currents to be the threefold inclination of the mind, viz. towards a pure piety, towards injuring other living creatures, and towards that mixed piety which requires the destruction of life for its performance. *Nilakantha* also has a different reading from *Arguna Misra*, which means 'are replenished' instead of 'support.' And the three channels are, according to *Nilakantha*, the *Samskāras*, or effects of previous actions of piety or impiety.

<sup>7</sup> Coupled=always existing in association with one another; serving=being necessary to the operations of one another; depending=supporting one another like three staves, says *Nilakantha*;

(are made up of) the three qualities. Goodness is the match of darkness, and passion is the match of goodness; and goodness is also the match of passion, and darkness the match of goodness. Where darkness is restrained, passion there prevails. Where passion is restrained, goodness there prevails<sup>1</sup>. Darkness should be understood to consist in obscurity. It has three qualities<sup>2</sup>, and is called delusion. Its characteristic is also impiety, and it is constant in sinful actions. This is the nature of darkness; it also appears combined (with others). Passion is said to consist in activity, and is the cause of successive<sup>3</sup> (acts). When it prevails, its characteristic, among all beings, appears to be production<sup>4</sup>. Light, lightness<sup>5</sup>, faith, such is stated to be the nature of goodness (prevailing) among all beings, as accepted by good men. The true nature of their characteristics, in aggregation and separation, will now be stated together with the reasons; learn those accurately. Delusion, ignorance,

upholding, says Arguna Misra, as the total absence of one would lead to the absence of the others also; attending=becoming subordinate to whichever of them is dominant for the time being; joined=so as to become one organic whole. Cf. as to all this, Yoga-sûtra II, 18, and commentary, p. 101; Sâṅkhya-kârikâ, Kârikâ 12, with Vâṅkâspati Misra's comments on it.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 108, and the quotation in the Sâṅkhyatattvakau-mudî, p. 64.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. characteristics, viz. obscurity (which seems to stand for ignorance), delusion (which is false knowledge), and impiety (doing that which is known to be sinful and wrong).

<sup>3</sup> The original means, according to Nîlakantha, wrong, unlawful conduct. As to all this cf. Sâṅti Parvan (Moksha), chap. 194, st. 29.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. apparently perpetually doing something. Cf. Gîtâ, p. 108.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. as to this, and generally also, Sâṅkhya-kârikâ 13, and commentary of Vâṅkâspati Misra (p. 64). The blazing upwards of fire is said to illustrate the lightness of the quality of goodness which belongs to fire.

want of liberality, indecision about actions <sup>1</sup>, sleep, haughtiness <sup>2</sup>, fear, avarice, grief, finding fault with good acts, want of memory <sup>3</sup>, immaturity (of intellect), nihilism <sup>4</sup>, violation of (the rules of) conduct, want of discrimination <sup>5</sup>, blindness, behaviour of the lowest <sup>6</sup> quality, pride of performance without (actual) performance, pride of knowledge without (actual) knowledge, unfriendliness, evil disposition, want of faith, deluded convictions, want of straightforwardness, want of knowledge <sup>7</sup>, sinful action, want of knowledge (of the subtle principle), stolidity <sup>8</sup>, lassitude, want of self-restraint, going into inferior ways ; all these qualities, O Brâhmanas ! are celebrated as being dark. And whatever other states of mind, connected with delusion, are found in various places in this world, all these are dark qualities. Constant talk in disparagement of gods, Brâhmanas and Vedas, want of liberality, vanity, delusion <sup>9</sup>, anger, want of forgiveness likewise, and also animosity

<sup>1</sup> According to Gîtâ, p. 108, doing nothing—stolid laziness—is a mark of darkness. Cf. generally on this passage Gîtâ, pp. 107, 118, 124 seq. ; Maitrî, p. 49.

<sup>2</sup> The same word as at Gîtâ, pp. 116, 125 (headstrong in the latter passage should have been haughty). Cf. as to the word, *Khândogya*, p. 383. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 51.

<sup>4</sup> The opposite of the belief mentioned at Gîtâ, p. 126.

<sup>5</sup> The same word as at Gîtâ, p. 109. But the commentators render it here by *himsra*, i. e. destructive.

I am not sure about the original word here, and the word next but one after this. The latter *Arguna Misra* renders by *sûkshmatattvâvedanam*, which I have translated above in the text. The former seems to mean general unintelligence.

<sup>7</sup> Heaviness and dullness, induced by indolence, &c., *Nîlakantha*. Lassitude is drooping from despondency. Going into inferior ways, *Arguna Misra* says, means falling into the inferior castes ; *Nîlakantha* says it means love for base actions.

<sup>8</sup> Not being cognisant of one's own shortcomings, *Arguna Misra*.

towards people, this is considered to be dark conduct. Whatever vain<sup>1</sup> actions (there are), and whatever vain gifts, and vain eating, that is considered to be dark conduct. Reviling, and want of forgiveness, animosity, vanity, want of faith also, this is considered to be dark conduct. And whatever such people there are in this world, doers of sinful acts, who break through (all) regulations, they are all held to be dark. I will state the wombs appointed for these (men) of sinful actions. They go to the hell, (namely) the brute (species), to be born in the lower hell<sup>2</sup>; (or become) the immovable entities<sup>3</sup>, animals, beasts of burden, demons, and serpents, and worms, insects, birds, and also creatures born from eggs, and all quadrupeds, and idiots, deaf and dumb men, and whatever others are attacked by diseases generated by sin<sup>4</sup>. These dark, evil-conducted men, who are sunk in darkness, who bear the marks of their own actions, the current of whose (thoughts) is downwards<sup>5</sup>, sink into darkness. I will now proceed to state their improvement and ascent; how, becoming men of meritorious actions, they attain to the worlds of those who perform good acts<sup>6</sup>. Resorting to a contrary<sup>7</sup> (course of life), and growing old in (good) actions<sup>8</sup>, they exert

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 83.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 116.

<sup>3</sup> Such as trees and so forth, which are also forms of life.

<sup>4</sup> This is alluded to in some *Smritis* too. And cf. *Khândogya*, p. 358, and the quotation in the commentary on *Sânkhya-sûtra* V, 122.

<sup>5</sup> Such, says *Nilakantha*, as to fit them for the nether world. See *Tattvakaumudî*, p. 113. As to marks, cf. p. 239 supra.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 130.

<sup>7</sup> I. e. contrary to that already described as dark.

<sup>8</sup> *Nilakantha* renders this to mean 'destroyed for Agnihotra and such ceremonies,' like the goat referred to above at p. 290.

themselves, and through the ceremonies (performed for them) by benevolent Brâhmanas devoted to their own duties, they go upwards to the same world (as the Brâhmanas)—the heaven of the gods. Such is the Vedic text. Resorting to a contrary<sup>1</sup> (course of life), and growing old in their own duties, they become men in this world whose nature is to return<sup>2</sup>. Coming to a sinful womb, as *Kândâlas*<sup>3</sup>, or deaf, or lisping men, they attain to higher and higher castes in order; going beyond the *Sûdra* womb, and (beyond) whatever other dark qualities there are which abide in the quality of darkness<sup>4</sup> in the current (of this world). Attachment to objects of desire is laid down to be the great delusion. There, sages and saints and gods become deluded, wishing for pleasure. Darkness<sup>5</sup>, delusion, the great delusion, the great obscurity called anger, and death the blinding obscurity; anger is called the great obscurity. I have now duly described to you, O Brâhmanas! this quality of darkness, in full and accurately with reference to

<sup>1</sup> See note 7 on last page. The sequence of ideas seems not to be properly brought out here. In the course of transmigration after their course of conduct is altered they become men, and then proceed to heaven. This seems the real sense here.

<sup>2</sup> To return to life and death, and so on, until they fit themselves for final emancipation. Cf. *Âpastamba* II, 5, 11, 10-11.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *Kândogya*, p. 359.

<sup>4</sup> This is not very clear, and the commentators give but little help. The meaning probably is, that they gradually, in course of improvement, cross beyond the *Sûdra* caste, and all those qualities or tempers of mind, and so forth, which have been stated to appertain to the quality of darkness.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. *Sânkhya-kârikâ*, pp. 47, 48, and *Vâkaspati's* comment. There these are identified with the 'afflictions' of the *Yoga-sâstra*—ignorance, self-consciousness, affection, aversion, persistent attachment, and they are five divisions of false knowledge, or the quality of darkness, as it is here called. See, too, *Svetâsvatara* (comm.), p. 284.

its nature, and also its qualities, and also its source. Who, indeed, understands this properly; who, indeed, perceives this properly? The definition of the essence of darkness is, that one sees the real in what is unreal. The qualities of darkness have been described to you in many ways. And darkness in its higher and lower <sup>1</sup> (forms) has been accurately stated. The man who always understands these qualities gets rid of all dark qualities.

## CHAPTER XXII.

Brahman said : ▲

O best (of men)! I will explain to you accurately the quality of passion. Learn, O noble ones! the action of the quality of passion. Injuring (others), beauty <sup>2</sup>, toil, pleasure and pain, cold and heat, power <sup>2</sup>, war, peace, argument, repining <sup>3</sup>, endurance, strength, valour, frenzy, wrath, exercise and quarrel too, vindictiveness, desire, backbiting, battle, the thought (that this or that is) mine, preservation <sup>4</sup>, slaughter, bonds, affliction, buying and selling, touching <sup>5</sup> other people's weak points, by cutting, breaking, piercing; fierceness and cruelty, vilifying, pointing out others' weaknesses, thinking of (this) world, harbouring evil thoughts, animosity, abuse,

<sup>1</sup> Generally and specifically, says Arguna Misra.

<sup>2</sup> Arguna Misra says these mean pride of beauty and pride of power respectively. Cf. as to this list generally, Maitrî, pp. 50, 51.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Sanatsugâtîya, p. 168.

<sup>4</sup> I presume this means solicitude for preserving what one has got. Cf. Gîtâ, p. 48.

<sup>5</sup> Literally, piercing. 'Cutting, breaking, piercing,' further on, seems to indicate the greater or less offensiveness of the operation of 'touching others' weak points.'

tion, purity, dexterity, valour. He who possesses the piety of concentration of mind, (holding) knowledge to be vain<sup>1</sup>, (good) conduct vain, service vain, and labour vain, he attains the highest in the next world. Devoid of (the notion that this or that is) mine, devoid of egoism, devoid of expectations, equable everywhere, not full of desires, (to be) such is the eternal duty of the good. Confidence, modesty<sup>2</sup>, forgiveness, liberality, purity, freedom from laziness, absence of cruelty, freedom from delusion, compassion to (all) creatures, absence of backbiting, joy, contentment, joviality, humility, good behaviour, purity in all action for (acquiring) tranquillity<sup>3</sup>, righteous feelings, emancipation<sup>4</sup>, indifference<sup>5</sup>, life as a Brahma<sup>6</sup>ârin, abandonment on all hands, freedom from (the notion that this or that is) mine, freedom from expectations<sup>6</sup>, unbroken piety<sup>7</sup>, (holding that) gifts (are) vain, sacrifices vain, learning vain, vows vain, receipt of gifts vain, piety vain, penance vain. Those talented Brâhma<sup>7</sup>nas in this world, whose conduct is of this description, who adhere to the quality of goodness, abiding in the seat of the Brahman<sup>8</sup>, perceive (everything) aright. Getting rid of all

<sup>1</sup> Such is Nîlakantha's reading, and he takes knowledge to mean mere knowledge derived from books, &c. Arguna Misra has a different reading for vain, which he interprets to mean 'wish for fruit.'

<sup>2</sup> See Sanatsugâtîya, p. 162.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. pure and straightforward conduct in the performance of whatever is done for attaining final emancipation.

<sup>4</sup> Of other people from sorrow, Arguna Misra.

<sup>5</sup> The state of being unconcerned, udâsîna, Nîlakantha.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 60, inter alia.

<sup>7</sup> Arguna Misra understands the original here to mean 'not being under the control of another.'

<sup>8</sup> I. e. the source of the Vedas, according to Nîlakantha. The supreme is called Brahmayoni, the original word here, at Svetâ-



sins, and free from grief, those talented men reach heaven, and create (various) bodies<sup>1</sup>. The power of governing, self-restraint, minuteness<sup>2</sup>, these those high-souled ones make (for themselves) by (the operations of their own) minds like the gods dwelling in heaven. They are said to have their currents upwards<sup>3</sup>, and to be gods, and of the quality of goodness<sup>4</sup>; and having gone to heaven they verily change in various ways, by means of nature<sup>5</sup>. They obtain and divide<sup>6</sup> whatever they desire. Thus, O chiefs of the twice-born! have I described to you the conduct of the quality of goodness. Understanding this according to rule, one obtains whatever one desires. The qualities

avātara, p. 354, where Brahman is rendered to mean Prakṛiti by Śaṅkara. See Sanatsugātiya, p. 186, note 6, and Taittirīya-āranyaka, p. 894. As to the probable sense here, see p. 339, note 2 *infra*.

<sup>1</sup> I.e. for themselves. Cf. p. 345 *infra*; Yoga-sūtras, p. 227; and Brīhadāraṇyaka, p. 849.

<sup>2</sup> These include, according to Nīlakantha, the other qualities of the same class unnamed here, for which see Yoga-sūtra III, 44 (p. 207). The power of governing, i.e. producing, destroying, or combining worldly objects as one pleases; self-restraint, i.e. in the presence of tempting objects; minuteness = power of becoming as minute as one pleases. The other qualities are lightness, largeness, and heaviness; power of attracting everything so as to be near oneself (e.g. touching the moon with the finger), power of obtaining one's wish.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. p. 321 *supra* and note 5. Arguna Misra, and Nīlakantha also, here render it by 'those who go upwards.' As to which, see Gītā, p. 109.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. for this sense, which is given by Arguna Misra, Sāṅkhya-sāra, p. 19.

<sup>5</sup> Nīlakantha says this means that they change their minds for purposes of enjoyment by means of the impression of previous enjoyments. The changes, however, seem to be those above referred to—minuteness, &c., and the acquisition of other bodies. As to nature, cf. Gītā, pp. 58 and 112, with the correction made at p. 318 *supra*.

<sup>6</sup> This is not quite clear. Does it mean distribute among themselves or others?

passion<sup>1</sup>. The light in the sun is goodness ; the heat is the quality of passion ; and its eclipse on the Parvan<sup>2</sup> days must be understood to be of the quality of darkness. So in all shining bodies, there exist three qualities. And they act by turns in the several places in several ways. Among immovable entities, darkness is in the form of their belonging to the lower species ; the qualities of passion are variable ; and the oleaginous property is of the quality of goodness<sup>3</sup>. The day should be understood to be threefold, the night is stated to be threefold, and likewise months, half-months, years, seasons, and the conjunctions<sup>4</sup>. Threefold are the gifts given<sup>5</sup>, threefold the sacrifices performed, threefold are the

---

<sup>1</sup> This illustrates the existence of the qualities as one body. Even the enlightening sun, which embodies the quality of goodness, produces effects which belong to the other qualities. The fear and sorrow which evil-doers, that is thieves, feel, is an effect of the rising of the sun, which appertains to the quality of darkness, and the heat as being the cause of vexation and consequent delusion to travellers, appertains to the quality of passion.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. the days of the moon's conjunction or opposition.

<sup>3</sup> I understand this to mean that in the 'immovable entities' the three qualities co-exist ; the both in the lower species is an effect of darkness ; the variable qualities, viz. the heat, &c., as Arguna Misra says, are the properties of passion ; and the oleaginous properties among them appertain to goodness, as, says Arguna Misra, they are sources of pleasure (cf. Gîtâ, p. 118). Nîlakantha says, 'Immovable entities being very unintelligent, darkness is very much developed among them,' but this last, as an interpretation of tiryagbhâvagata, appears to me to be alike unwarranted and inappropriate here.

<sup>4</sup> Does this mean the period about the close of one and beginning of another yuga or age ? That is the only sense ejusdem generis with the words preceding it that I can think of ; yet the jump from years to yuga-sandhis is a long one.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 120. With reference to some, at least, of the things enumerated here, the division would be rather fanciful.

worlds, threefold the gods, threefold the (departments of) knowledge, and threefold the path<sup>1</sup>. The past, the present, and the future; piety, wealth, and lust; the *Prâna*, the *Apâna*, and the *Udâna*; these are the three qualities. And whatever there is in this world, all that is (made of) these three qualities<sup>2</sup>. The three qualities—goodness, passion, and darkness also—are always acting unperceived. The creation of the qualities is eternal. Darkness, unperceived, holy<sup>3</sup>, constant, unborn, womb, eternal, nature, change<sup>4</sup>, destruction, *Pradhâna*, production and absorption, not developed, not small, unshaking, immovable, immutable, existent and also non-existent<sup>5</sup>—all these, the unperceived, (consisting) of the three qualities, is said to be. These names should be learnt by men who ponder on matters relating to the self. He who understands correctly all the names of the unperceived, and the qualities, and its pure operations, he, freed from the body, understanding the truth about (all) distinctions, and being free from all misery, is released from all qualities.

<sup>1</sup> See these three mentioned at *Khândogya*, pp. 340–359. As to departments of knowledge, cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 84; *Arguna Misra* reads, ‘threefold the Vedas.’

<sup>2</sup> The universe is all developed from the *Prakṛiti*, which is merely the three ‘qualities in equilibrium.’ Cf. *Sāṅkhya-sūtra* I, 61.

<sup>3</sup> Because it gives final emancipation to one who discriminates it from *Purusha*, *Arguna Misra*. Cf. *Sāṅkhya-sūtra* II, 1 seq., and *Sāṅkhya-kārikâ*, p. 56 seq., and commentary. For another list of names of *Prakṛiti*, see *Svetâsvatara* (comm), p. 283.

<sup>4</sup> Nature is not a development from anything, and hence is called *avikṛiti* in *Sāṅkhya-kārikâ* 3; but ‘change’ here probably means the whole aggregate of *Vikṛitis*, ‘changes’ or developments, which make up *Prakṛiti*; or by a different derivation it may, perhaps, also mean that from which all development or change takes place.

<sup>5</sup> See *Sāṅkhya-sūtra* V, 52–56; and also I, 26, and commentary here. The *Vedântins* speak of *Mâyâ*—which answers to what the

## CHAPTER XXV.

Brahman said :

From the unperceived was first produced the great self<sup>1</sup>, of great intelligence, the source of all qualities<sup>2</sup>; it is said to be the first creation. That great self is signified by these synonymous terms—the great self, intelligence, Vishnu<sup>3</sup>, Gishnu, Sambhu, the valiant, the understanding, means of knowledge, means of perception, and likewise cognition, courage, memory. Knowing that (great self), a learned Brâhmaṇa comes not by delusion. It has hands and feet on all sides<sup>4</sup>, it has eyes, heads, and faces on all sides; it stands pervading everything in the world<sup>5</sup>. The being of great power is stationed in the heart of all. Minuteness<sup>6</sup>, lightness, (the power of) obtaining (everything) (are his); he is the governor, the light, inexhaustible. Now people who comprehend the understanding, and who are always possessed of a good heart, who practise meditation, who are constant at concentration of mind, who are true to their promises, and whose senses are subdued, who are possessed of knowledge, who are not avaricious, who have subdued wrath, whose minds are clear, who are talented, who are devoid of (the thought that this or that is) mine, who are devoid of egoism,

Sânkhyaas call Prakṛiti (see Svetâsvatara, p. 340, and Sâṅkhya-sûtra I, 69, and commentary there)—as ‘sattvâsattvâbhyâmanirvâḥya.’

<sup>1</sup> I. e. the understanding, on which see Sâṅkhya-sûtra I, 61-64. It is called being (Purusha) further on; as it dwells in the body (Puri).

<sup>2</sup> I. e. of the effects of all qualities (namely, the universe; cf. Gîtâ, p. 48), Nîlakantha.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. all-pervading, Arguna Misra. On the whole passage, see Sâṅkhya-sâra, pp. 15, 16, and note 3 on page 333 infra.

<sup>4</sup> As, says Arguna Misra, it is the source of all activity.

<sup>5</sup> The words are identical with those at Gîtâ, p. 103.

<sup>6</sup> See p. 327 supra.

these being emancipated, attain greatness <sup>1</sup>. And the talented man who understands that high and holy goal, the great self <sup>2</sup>, he among all people comes not by delusion. The self-existent Vishṇu is the Lord in the primary creations <sup>3</sup>. And he who thus knows the lord lying in the cave <sup>4</sup>, the transcendent, ancient being, of universal form, and golden <sup>5</sup>, the highest goal of those possessed of understanding, that talented man, abides transcending the understanding <sup>6</sup>.

## CHAPTER XXVI.

Brahman said :

That Mahat which was first produced, is (afterwards) called egoism ; when it is born as (the feeling itself) <sup>7</sup> I, that is said to be the second creation. That egoism is stated to be the source of all entities <sup>8</sup>,

<sup>1</sup> I. e., says Arguna Misra, the world of the understanding. Does this mean the world of Hiraṇyagarbha? The understanding is said to be the 'subtle body' of Hiraṇyagarbha (Vedānta Paribhāṣhā, p. 46). Probably the reference spiritually interpreted is to the state in which egoism and all its products are non-existent.

<sup>2</sup> Literally, 'the high and holy passage to the great self.'

<sup>3</sup> The Mahat first manifests itself as Vishṇu before it manifests itself as Brahman or Siva (Sāṅkhya-sāra, p. 16), hence he is said to be the Lord in the primary creation. It may be added, that in the Sāṅkhya-sāra where this passage is quoted the original word rendered 'cognition' above (khyāti) does not occur, but in lieu of it occurs Brahman. The sentence 'And the talented man' &c. is also wanting there.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. the understanding. See Saṅkara on Svetâsvatara, p. 329 ; *Kaṭha*, p. 100.

<sup>5</sup> Source of enlightenment, Arguna Misra. Cf. *Mundaka*, pp. 303-308 (gloss).

<sup>6</sup> I. e. attaching himself to the Purusha, as the never-changing reality, and rising above Prakṛti and its manifestations.

<sup>7</sup> I. e. when the Mahat develops into the feeling of self-consciousness—I—then it assumes the name of egoism.

<sup>8</sup> See on this Sāṅkhya-sāra, Hall's *Intro.*, p. 31 note.

that from which the changes take place<sup>1</sup>; it is full of light, the supporter of consciousness; it is that from which the people are produced, the Pragâpati. It is a deity, the producer of the deities, and of the mind; it is the creator of the three worlds. That which feels<sup>2</sup> thus—‘I am all this’—is called (by) that (name). That eternal world is for those sages who are contented with knowledge relating to the self, who have pondered on the self, and who are perfected by sacred study and sacrifice. By<sup>3</sup> consciousness of self one enjoys the qualities; and thus that source of all entities, the producer of the entities, creates (them); and as that from which the changes take place, it causes all this to move; and by its own light, it likewise charms the world.

<sup>1</sup> So Arguna Misra. *Nīlakanṭha* says it means ‘born from the change, or development, viz. Mahat.’ The Sāṅkhya-sāra, p. 17, however, shows it means ‘appertaining to the quality of goodness.’ See also Sāṅkhya-kārikā 25, and commentary there, which is of great help here. The sense is this: Egoism is of three descriptions; it appertains to the quality of goodness, and as such is the creator of the deities and mind, the deities being those presiding over the ten senses (cf. Sāṅkhya-sāra, p. 17); it is full of light, or appertains to the quality of passion (cf. *ibid.*), and as such imparts to the other two qualities their virtue of activity (cf. Sāṅkhya-kārikā commentary, p. 91, Târânâth’s ed.); it is also of the quality of darkness, and as such the producer of the triple world (see *ibid.*). See Sāṅkhya-sūtra II, 17, 18, and comment, where a view somewhat different in one or two details is stated.

<sup>2</sup> Sāṅkhya-sāra, p. 16; Sāṅkhya-kārikā 24, p. 89 (Târânâth’s ed.).

<sup>3</sup> Arguna Misra says that the words Ahaṅkāra &c. are here explained; qualities here means objects, as at Gītā, p. 55. The meaning of the first clause is, that the feeling that the objects are for oneself, and therefore enjoying them, gives the name of Ahaṅkāra to the principle in question; its creation of all the elements gives it the name of Bhûtâdi. It is called Vaikārika, as the cause of the various activities and developments going on. The last clause seems to be an explanation of the epithet Taigasa, also applied to egoism.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

Brahman said :

From egoism, verily, were the five great elements born—earth, air, space, water, and light as the fifth. In these five great elements, in the operations of (perceiving) sound, touch, colour, taste, and smell, creatures are deluded<sup>1</sup>. When, at the termination of the destruction of the great elements, the final dissolution approaches, O talented one! a great danger for all living beings arises<sup>2</sup>. Every entity is dissolved into that from which it is produced. They are born one from the other, and are dissolved in the reverse order<sup>3</sup>. Then when every entity, movable or immovable, has been dissolved, the talented men who possess a (good) memory<sup>4</sup> are not dissolved at all. Sound, touch, and likewise colour, taste, and smell as the fifth; the operations (connected with these) have causes<sup>5</sup>, and are inconstant, and their name is delusion. Caused by the production of avarice<sup>6</sup>, not different from one another<sup>7</sup>, and insignificant<sup>8</sup>, connected with flesh and blood, and depending upon one another,

<sup>1</sup> The contact of the objects of sense with the senses is the source of delusion.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 107, and note 1 there.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *Sâṅkhya-sûtra* I, 121, and p. 387 *infra*.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. knowledge of the truth, *Arguna Mîtra*.

<sup>5</sup> Hence, as they have a beginning, they also must have an end, and hence they are inconstant.

<sup>6</sup> This and following epithets expand the idea of inconstancy.

<sup>7</sup> Being all in substance connected with the *Prakṛti*, the material world, so to say.

<sup>8</sup> Containing no reality, *Nîlakantha*.

excluded from the self<sup>1</sup>, these are helpless and powerless. The Prâna and the Apâna, the Udâna, the Samâna, and the Vyâna, these five winds also are joined to the inner self<sup>2</sup>, and together with speech, mind, and understanding make the eight constituents of the universe<sup>3</sup>. He whose skin, nose, ear, eye, tongue, and speech are restrained, and whose mind is pure, and understanding unswerving<sup>4</sup>, and whose mind is never burnt by these eight fires<sup>5</sup>, he attains to that holy Brahman than which nothing greater exists. And the eleven organs, which are stated as having been produced from egoism—these, O twice-born ones! I will describe specifically. The ear, the skin, the two eyes, the tongue, the nose also as the fifth, the two feet, the organ of excretion, and the organ of generation, the two hands, and speech as the tenth; such is the group of organs, the mind is the eleventh. This group one should subdue first, then the Brahman shines (before him). Five (of these) are called the organs of perception, and five the

<sup>1</sup> Nilakantha apparently takes the original here to mean of gross nature, not subtle, such as anything connected with the self would be. They are helpless and powerless without support from other principles, and mainly the self.

<sup>2</sup> He here states what is more closely connected with the self, and, as Nilakantha puts it, accompanies the self till final emancipation. The inner self Nilakantha takes to mean the self associated with egoism or self-consciousness.

<sup>3</sup> Nilakantha cites certain texts to show that the perceptive senses work only through the mind, and that the objects of the senses are produced from the senses, and hence the universe, he says, is constituted of the eight enumerated above.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. from the truth.

<sup>5</sup> I. e. vexed by the operations of any of these.



organs of action. The five beginning with the ear are truly said to be connected with knowledge. And all the rest are without distinction connected with action. The mind should be understood to be among both <sup>1</sup>, and the understanding is the twelfth. Thus have been stated the eleven organs in order. Understanding these <sup>2</sup>, learned men think they have accomplished (everything). I will now proceed to state all the various organs. Space <sup>3</sup> is the first entity; as connected with the self it is called the ear; likewise as connected with objects (it is) sound; and the presiding deity there is the quarters. The second entity is air; it is known as the skin as connected with the self; as connected with objects (it is) the object of touch; and the presiding deity there is lightning. The third (entity) is said to be light; as connected with the self it is called the eye; next as connected with objects (it is) colour; and the presiding deity there is the sun. The fourth (entity) should be understood to be water; as connected with the self it is called the tongue; as connected with objects it is taste; and the presiding deity there is Soma. The fifth entity is earth; as connected with the self it is the nose; as connected with objects likewise it is smell; and the presiding deity there is the wind. Thus are the five entities stated to be divided among the three <sup>4</sup>. I will now proceed to state all the various organs.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Sâṅkhya-kārikā 27; Sâṅkhya-sāra, p. 17.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Kaṭha, p. 148.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Lalita Vistara (translated by Dr. R. Mitra), p. 11.

The above sentences show the entities in the three different aspects mentioned, which correspond to each other; the ear is the sense, that which is connected with the self; sound is the object of that sense, as connected with the external world; and the

As connected with the self, the feet are mentioned by Brâhmanas, who perceive the truth ; as connected with objects it is motion ; the presiding deity there is Vishnu. The Apâna wind, the motion of which is downward, as connected with the self, is called the organ of excretion ; as connected with objects it is excretion<sup>1</sup> ; and the presiding deity there is Mitra. As connected with the self the generative organ is mentioned, the producer of all beings ; as connected with objects it is the semen ; and the presiding deity there is Pragâpati. Men who understand the Adhyâtma speak of the two hands as connected with the self ; as connected with objects it is actions ; and the presiding deity there is Indra. Then first, as connected with the self, is speech which relates to all the gods ; as connected with objects it is what is spoken ; and the presiding deity there is fire. As connected with the self they mention the mind, which follows after the five entities<sup>2</sup> ; as connected with objects it is the mental operation ; the presiding deity there is the moon. Likewise (there is) egoism, the cause of the whole course of worldly life, as connected with the self ; as connected with objects, self-consciousness ; the presiding deity there is Rudra. As connected with the self, they mention the understanding impelling the six senses<sup>3</sup> ;

quarters, Dik, are the deities presiding over the senses ; as to this cf. Sâṅkhya-sâra, p. 17, and Vedânta Paribhâshâ, p. 45, which show some discrepancies. The distinctions of Adhyâtma &c. are to be found in the Upanishads ; cf. inter alia, Kândogya, p. 227, and cf. Gîtâ, p. 77.

<sup>1</sup> As to the original word, cf. inter alia, Svetâsvatara, pp. 197-202.

<sup>2</sup> This probably means the five senses which can perceive only when associated with the mind. See p. 268 supra.

<sup>3</sup> The understanding is called the charioteer at Katha, p. 111.

as connected with objects that which is to be understood; and the presiding deity there is Brahman. There are three seats for all entities—a fourth is not possible—land, water, and space. And the (mode of) birth is fourfold. Those born from eggs, those born from germs, those born from perspiration, and those born from wombs—such is the fourfold (mode of) birth of the group of living beings<sup>1</sup>. Now there are the inferior beings and likewise those moving in the air. Those should be understood to be born from eggs, as also all reptiles. Insects are said to be born from perspiration; and worms of the like description. This is said to be the second (mode of) birth, and inferior. Those beings, however, which are born after the lapse of some time, bursting through the earth, are said to be born from germs, O best of the twice-born! Beings of two feet or more than two feet, and those which move crookedly, are the beings born from wombs. Understand about them also, O best of men! The eternal seat (where) the Brahman<sup>2</sup> (is to be attained) should be understood to be twofold—penance<sup>3</sup> and meritorious action. Such is the doctrine of the learned. Action should be understood to be of various<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *Khândogya*, pp. 404-406, and glosses; Aitareya, p. 243; Vedânta Paribhâṣhâ, p. 47; Sâṅkhya-sûtra V, 111; Manu I, 43. Max Müller's note at p. 94 of his *Khândogya* in this series.

<sup>2</sup> So Nîlakantha, but he also adds that this means birth as a Brâhmana, which seems to be quite wrong. Arguna Misra's 'means of acquiring Brahman' is right. See p. 369 infra.

<sup>3</sup> I.e., I presume, 'knowledge.' Saṅkara has so interpreted the word at *Mundaka*, p. 270, and *Katha*, p. 127, and elsewhere; and see Sanatsugâtîya, p. 166 supra.

<sup>4</sup> Another reading is 'of two kinds.' But I prefer this, as three kinds are mentioned further on.

The learned man who absorbs objects of desire from all sides, as a tortoise (draws in) his limbs<sup>1</sup>, and who is devoid of passion, and released from everything<sup>2</sup>, is ever happy. Restraining objects of desire within the self<sup>3</sup>, he becomes fit for assimilation with the Brahman<sup>4</sup>, having his cravings destroyed, and being concentrated in mind, and friendly and affectionate<sup>5</sup> to all beings. The fire of the Adhyâtma<sup>6</sup> is kindled in a sage by his abandoning the country<sup>7</sup>, and by the restraint of all the senses which hanker after objects of sense. As fire kindled with fuel shines forth with a great blaze, so the great self<sup>8</sup> shines forth through the restraint of the senses. When one with a tranquil self perceives all entities in one's own heart, then being self-illuminated<sup>9</sup>, one attains to that which is subtler than (the most) subtle (thing)<sup>10</sup>, and than which there is nothing higher. It is settled, that the body in which the colour<sup>11</sup> is fire, the flowing<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, pp. 50, 51, and Sânti Parvan (Moksha Dharma) I, 51, where the phrase is precisely the same as here.

<sup>2</sup> I.e. from all bonds, I suppose. See p. 292 supra.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 51. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 110. <sup>5</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 68.

<sup>6</sup> I.e. experience, Nîlakantha. It means direct perception of the relations between the supreme and individual self. Cf. Gîtâ, p. 111.

<sup>7</sup> As opposed to forests. See Sanatsugâtîya, p. 159, note 9.

<sup>8</sup> This must mean here the supreme self, apparently.

<sup>9</sup> I.e. being devoted to the self only, Arguna Misra. The ordinary meaning of the word, however, is one who has direct experience or perception without the aid of senses, &c. Cf. Brîhadâranyaka, p. 765, and Sârîraka Bhâsîya, pp. 648, 784, &c.

<sup>10</sup> Nîlakantha says, 'The supreme Brahman which is subtler than the Brahman within the lotus-like heart.'

<sup>11</sup> I.e. that which perceives colour, viz. the sense, Arguna Misra. This applies to the analogous words coming further on.

<sup>12</sup> I.e. taste, says Arguna Misra, which seems to be more correct than Nîlakantha's blood and such other liquid elements of the body.

(element) water, and the feeling of touch is air, the hideous holder of the mud<sup>1</sup> is earth, and likewise the sound is space; which is pervaded by disease and sorrow; which is surrounded by the five currents<sup>2</sup>; which is made up of the five elements; which has nine passages<sup>3</sup> and two deities<sup>4</sup>; which is full of passion; unfit to be seen<sup>5</sup>; made up of three qualities and of three constituent elements<sup>6</sup>; pleased with contacts<sup>7</sup>; and full of delusion<sup>8</sup>;—this same (body), which is difficult to move in this mortal world, and which rests on the real (entity)<sup>9</sup>, is the very wheel of time which rotates in this world<sup>10</sup>. It is a great ocean, fearful and unfathomable, and is named<sup>11</sup> delusion. The world, together with the immortals, should cast it aside, curtail it,

<sup>1</sup> I. e. the flesh, bone, and so forth, *Nilakantha*; the mucus in the nose, Arguna Misra.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. the senses. Cf. p. 238 supra, note 7.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 65. <sup>4</sup> See *Sanatsugâtîya*, p. 187 supra.

<sup>5</sup> As being unholy, *Nilakantha*; as the bodies of *Kândâlas* &c. when seen are productive of sin, Arguna Misra. See p. 155 supra.

<sup>6</sup> Viz. *vâta*, *pitta*, *śleshma*, or wind, bile, and phlegm. The *dhâtus* are sometimes spoken of as seven. See *Yoga-sûtras*, p. 192; *Taitt. Âr.* p. 874, commentary, and p. 246 supra. See, too, however, *Svetâsvatara*, commentary, p. 287.

<sup>7</sup> Which is delighted only by contact with food and so forth, not otherwise, *Nilakantha*.

<sup>8</sup> I. e. cause of delusion. The original word for 'it is settled' at the beginning of this sentence is otherwise rendered by Arguna Misra. He takes it to mean 'in this light (namely, as above stated) should one contemplate the body'. The other rendering is *Nilakantha*'s.

<sup>9</sup> I. e. the self, Arguna Misra; the understanding, *Nilakantha*; difficult to move = difficult to adjust if attacked by disease, &c., *Nilakantha*.

<sup>10</sup> It is owing to this body that the self becomes limited by time, Arguna Misra. *Nilakantha*'s gloss I do not follow. Cf. p. 187 supra, and p. 355 infra.

<sup>11</sup> I. e. characterised by delusion, Arguna Misra.

females a male<sup>1</sup>. The Nyagrodha, the Gambu, the Pippala, and likewise the Sālmali, the Sinsapâ, and the Meshasringa, and likewise the bamboo and willow<sup>2</sup>; these are the princes among trees in this world, there is no doubt of that. The Himavat, the Pâriyâtra, the Sahya, the Vindhya, the Trikûṭavat, the Sveta, the Nîla, the Bhâsa, and the Kosht/havat mountain, the Mahendra, the Guruskandha, and likewise the Mâlyavat mountain, these are the princes among mountains<sup>3</sup>. Likewise the Maruts are (the princes) among the Ganas; the sun is the prince among the planets, and the moon<sup>4</sup> among the Nakshatras; Yama is the prince among the Pitris and the ocean among rivers; Varuna is the king of the waters, and Indra is said to be (the king) of the Maruts. Arka is the king of hot (bodies), and Indu is said to be (the king) of shining bodies. Fire is ever the lord of the elements<sup>5</sup>, and Brihaspati of Brâhmanas; Soma is the lord of herbs, Vishnu is the chief among the strong; Tvashtri is the prince

<sup>1</sup> As to the constructions here, cf. generally Gîtâ, p. 88, and see the remarks of Râmânuga and Sridhara on Gîtâ X, 21. The meaning here is, of course, the male is ruler over females.

<sup>2</sup> I do not know what distinction is intended between these two. Generally kîṭaka is used for the hollow bamboo, which whistles when the wind blows through it.

<sup>3</sup> Some of these mountains are mentioned in Patañjali. See Introduction.

<sup>4</sup> This list may be compared with that at Gîtâ, chapter X. Sometimes the same object occurs more than once with reference to more than one class; thus the moon occurs as lord of Nakshatras, of shining bodies, and of herbs—unless Soma there stands for the Soma plant. See Gîtâ, p. 113. Arguna Misra says expressly that the moon occurs more than once as the correlatives, the classes with reference to which she is mentioned, are different. In such cases I have kept the original names untranslated; Arka=sun; Indu=moon.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Kaṭha, p. 83.

of the Rudras, and Siva is the ruler of (all) creatures ; likewise, sacrifice of (all) initiatory ceremonies<sup>1</sup>, and Maghavat<sup>2</sup> likewise of the gods ; the north among the quarters, and among all vipras the powerful king Soma<sup>3</sup> ; Kubera (is lord) of all jewels, Purandara of (all) deities. Such is the highest creation among all entities. Pragâpati (is lord) of all peoples ; and of all entities whatever I, who am full of the Brahman, and great, (am lord). There is no higher being than myself or Vishnu. The great Vishnu full of the Brahman is the king of kings over all. Understand him to be the ruler, the creator, the uncreated Hari. For he is the ruler of men, Kinnaras, and Yakshas ; of Gandharvas, snakes, and Rakshases ; of gods, demons, and Nâgas. Among all those who are followed by (men) full of desires, (the chief) is<sup>4</sup> the great goddess Mâhesvarî, who has beautiful eyes. She is called Pârvatî. Know the goddess Umâ<sup>5</sup> to be the best and (most) holy of (all) females. Among women who are (a source<sup>6</sup> of) happiness, likewise, the brilliant Apsarases (are chief). Kings desire

<sup>1</sup> This must mean, I presume, that the sacrifice is higher than the initiation, as male than female, see p. 346, note 1.

<sup>2</sup> This is another repetition. Indra has been mentioned before, and Purandara is mentioned further on.

<sup>3</sup> As to king Soma, see inter alia *Brâhadâraṇyaka*, p. 237 ; *Āṇândogya*, p. 342, where Saṅkara explains 'king' by adding 'of Brâhmanas.' Vipras=Brâhmanas.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. Mâhesvarî is the most beautiful of womankind.

<sup>5</sup> It is well known that Umâ, Pârvatî, Mâhesvarî are names of the consort of the third member of the Hindu Trinity ; see Kena, p. 13, and Saṅkara's comment there. See, too, Muir, *Sanskrit Texts*, vol. iv, p. 421, and *Taittirîya-âraṇyaka*, p. 839.

<sup>6</sup> The idea of 'source' is supplied by Arguna Misra.

<sup>7</sup> Literally, 'rich.' Arguna Misra paraphrases it by 'Gyotishmatî.' Nîlakantha's explanation here is not quite clear.

piety; and Brâhmanas are the bridges<sup>1</sup> of piety. Therefore a king should always endeavour to protect the twice-born<sup>2</sup>. Those kings in whose dominions good men lie low, lose all their qualifications<sup>3</sup>, and go into wrong paths after death. But those high-souled kings in whose dominions good men are protected, rejoice in this world, and attain the infinite (seat) after death. Understand this, O chiefs of the twice-born! I shall now proceed to state the invariable characteristics of piety. Non-destruction is the highest piety<sup>4</sup>, and destruction is of the nature of impiety. Enlightenment<sup>5</sup> is the characteristic of gods; action<sup>6</sup> the characteristic of men; sound is the characteristic of space; (the sensation of) touch is the characteristic of air; colour is the characteristic of light; taste is the characteristic of water; the characteristic of earth, the supporter of all beings, is smell; words are the characteristic of speech<sup>7</sup> refined into vowels and consonants; the characteristic of mind is thought. Likewise as to what is described here as understanding, a deter-

<sup>1</sup> I. e. instrumental in piety, or guides to piety. Cf. Svetâsvatara, p. 370; Mundaka, p. 297.

<sup>2</sup> So literally, doubtless Brâhmanas only are intended here.

<sup>3</sup> I. e., I presume, they lose all their merits, their good points are destroyed by this dereliction of duty.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. p. 291 supra. Arguna Misra begins a fresh chapter with 'I shall now,' &c. <sup>5</sup> Knowledge of the truth, Arguna Misra.

<sup>6</sup> I. e. action performed for the purpose of obtaining the fruit of it. The next five items refer to the five elements and their characteristic properties. Nîlakantha's explanation, that all these are merely parallels not stated for their own relevancy here, but as illustrations, seems to be the only available one.

<sup>7</sup> I. e. the learning of other people, Nîlakantha. The meaning seems to be that we know speech only in its manifestation in the form of words.



mination is here formed by (that) understanding about objects which have been thought over by the mind<sup>1</sup>. And there is no doubt of this that determination is the characteristic of the understanding. The characteristic of mind is meditation<sup>2</sup>; and the characteristic of a good man is (living) unperceived<sup>3</sup>. The characteristic of devotion is action<sup>4</sup>; and knowledge the characteristic of renunciation. Therefore a man of understanding should practise renunciation, giving prominence to knowledge<sup>5</sup>. The renouncer possessed of knowledge attains the highest goal. And crossing beyond darkness, and transcending death and old age, he repairs to that which has no second<sup>6</sup>. Thus have I duly spoken to you concerning the characteristic of piety. I will now proceed to explain properly the comprehension<sup>7</sup> of the qualities. As to the smell of the earth, verily, that is comprehended by the nose; and the wind<sup>8</sup> likewise residing in the nose is appointed<sup>9</sup> to the knowledge of smell. Taste<sup>10</sup>,

<sup>1</sup> The text here is rather unsatisfactory; I have adopted that which I find in the copy containing Arguna Misra's commentary.

<sup>2</sup> Frequent pondering on matters learnt from Sâstras or common life, *Nilakantha*. Why mind comes twice the commentators do not explain.

<sup>3</sup> Does this refer to what is said at Sanatsugâtîya, p. 159?

<sup>4</sup> Devotion means here, as in the Gîtâ, action without desire of fruits. For action the word here is the same as at Gîtâ, p. 115, note 2.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 52, note 7.

<sup>6</sup> This is Arguna Misra's interpretation, and appears to me to be correct. *Nilakantha*'s is different, but seems to omit all account of abhyeti, 'repairs.'

<sup>7</sup> Arguna Misra's interpretation seems to be different, but our copy is not quite intelligible.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 337 supra. The wind is the presiding deity of the nasal organ.

<sup>9</sup> I. e. that is its function. Arguna Misra says, 'it is pondered on,' which is not clear. <sup>10</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 74, as to taste and water.

the essence of water, is always comprehended by the tongue. And the moon likewise, who resides in the tongue, is appointed to the knowledge of taste. The quality of light is colour, and that is comprehended by the eye; and the sun residing in the eye is appointed always to the knowledge of colour. The (sensation of) touch, belonging to the air, is perceived by the skin, and the wind<sup>1</sup> residing in the skin is always appointed to the knowledge of (the objects) of touch. The quality of space is sound, and that is comprehended by the ear. And all the quarters residing in the ear are celebrated as (being appointed) to the knowledge of sound. Thought is the quality of mind, and that is comprehended by the understanding. The supporter of consciousness<sup>2</sup> residing in the heart is appointed to the knowledge of mind<sup>3</sup>. The understanding (is comprehended in the form of) determination, and the Mahat<sup>4</sup> of knowledge. To (this) positive comprehension, the unperceived<sup>5</sup> (is appointed), there is no doubt of that. The Kshe-tragñā, which is in its essence devoid of qualities and eternal, is not to be comprehended by any

<sup>1</sup> This cannot be the presiding deity here, though one expects such deity to be mentioned; see p. 337 supra.

<sup>2</sup> The text of more than one of the lines here is rather doubtful; we follow Nīlakantha, who takes this to mean the gīva, the individual soul. Cf. p. 239, note 2 supra.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. thought, as Nīlakantha points out.

<sup>4</sup> Mahat is properly the same as buddhi, understanding, but as it is here mentioned separately, I suppose, it signifies Ahaṅkāra. Nīlakantha takes its operation, here called knowledge, to mean 'the feeling I am,' which agrees with our interpretation, for which some support is also to be derived from p. 333 supra.

<sup>5</sup> I here follow Arguna Misra, though somewhat diffidently. The knowledge 'this is I,' and the knowledge 'this is so and so and nothing else' is presided over by the unperceived—the Prakṛiti.

symbols. Therefore the characteristic of the Kshetragña, which is void of symbols<sup>1</sup>, is purely knowledge. The unperceived is stated to be the Kshetra<sup>2</sup> in which the qualities are produced and absorbed. And I always see, know, and hear it, (though) concealed. The Purusha knows it, therefore is he called Kshetragña<sup>3</sup>. And the Kshetragña likewise perceives all the operations of the qualities<sup>4</sup>. The qualities created again and again, do not know themselves<sup>5</sup>, being non-intelligent, to be created and tied down to a beginning, middle, and end<sup>6</sup>. Only the Kshetragña attains, no one (else) attains, to the truth, which is great, transcendent, and beyond the qualities and the entities (produced)<sup>7</sup> from the qualities. Hence a man who understands piety, abandoning qualities, and the creation<sup>8</sup>, in this world, and transcending the qualities, and having his sins destroyed, then enters into the Kshetragña. One who is free from the pairs of opposites, free from the ceremony of salutations, and

<sup>1</sup> See Sanatsugâtîya, p. 146. See also p. 309 supra.

<sup>2</sup> See Gîtâ, p. 102 seq. <sup>3</sup> I. e. he who knows the Kshetra.

<sup>4</sup> Enlightenment, activity, and delusion, *Nîlakantha*.

<sup>5</sup> I. e. do not know the self, *Nîlakantha*; better, I think, 'the qualities do not know themselves, only the Kshetragña knows them.' Cf. *Sânti Parvan* (Moksha Dharma), chap. 194, st. 41.

<sup>6</sup> I. e. production, existence, and destruction, *Nîlakantha*. This must, however, mean their manifestation, continuance, and dissolution in any particular form. For the *prakṛti*, which is made up of the three qualities, is beginningless. Cf. Gîtâ, p. 104.

<sup>7</sup> I. e. the actual physical manifestations, as we may say, of the qualities.

<sup>8</sup> The original, *sattva*, *Nîlakantha* renders by *buddhi*, and qualities by visible objects. In the familiar *Sânkhya* phrase *sattvapuruṣhânyatâpratyaṣṭi* *sattva* means creation, or what is other than *purusha* (cf. *Sânkhya-tattva-kaumudî*, pp. 9-144). That is the meaning here. See too p. 371 infra, and *Sânti Parvan* (Moksha Dharma), chap. 194, st. 38 seq. and comments there.

from the svâhâ ceremony<sup>1</sup>, who is unmoving, and homeless<sup>2</sup>, is the Kshetragnâ, he is the Supreme Lord.

## CHAPTER XXIX.

Brahman said :

I will state truly all about that which has a beginning, middle, and end<sup>3</sup>, and about the means for its comprehension, together with names and characteristics<sup>4</sup>. It is stated that day was first and then night ; that months have the bright<sup>5</sup> first, the Nakshatras Sravana<sup>6</sup> as the first (among them), and the seasons the winter as the first (among them). The earth is the source<sup>7</sup> of smells, water of tastes, the light (of) the sun is the source of colours, the wind is stated to be the source of (the feelings of) touch ; likewise space is the source of sound. These are the qualities of the elements. Now I shall proceed to state the highest and first of all entities. The sun is

<sup>1</sup> See p. 324 supra.

<sup>2</sup> See Gîtâ, p. 101. Unmoving probably means 'not perturbed by the qualities' (Gîtâ, p. 110), or perhaps the same thing as 'of steady mind' at Gîtâ, p. 101. The sense is pretty much the same in both places.

<sup>3</sup> Which has birth &c., Nîlakantha, i. e. all the creation, I presume.

<sup>4</sup> The names, that is to say, of the various elements, and their qualities.

<sup>5</sup> This must mean fortnights.

<sup>6</sup> This is specified, says Arguna Misra, as the six months of the northern solstice are caused by the sun being at this Nakshatra. As to those six months, cf. Gîtâ, p. 81. For the same reason, Arguna Misra adds, the winter season is mentioned as the best.

<sup>7</sup> The word âdi, literally beginning, is used in the whole of this passage in different senses ; it means the source, it means the best, and it means the first in order.

the first among shining bodies<sup>1</sup>; fire is said to be the first of the elements<sup>2</sup>; Sâvitri<sup>3</sup> of all branches of learning; Pragâpati of deities; the syllable Om of all the Vedas; and the Prâna life-wind, of all words<sup>4</sup>; whatever is prescribed in this world, all that is called Sâvitri<sup>5</sup>. The Gâyatri is the first among metres; among (sacrificial) animals, the goat<sup>6</sup> is mentioned (as the first). Cows are the first among quadrupeds, and the twice-born among men<sup>7</sup>. The Syena is first among birds; among sacrifices, the offering (into the fire) is the best; and among all reptiles, O best of the twice-born! the snake<sup>8</sup> is the highest. Of all ages the Kṛita is the first, there is no doubt of that. Among all precious things, gold (is the first), and among vegetable (products) likewise the barley seed<sup>9</sup>. Among all things to be eaten or swallowed food is the highest; and of

<sup>1</sup> This should be compared with the enumeration at p. 345 supra, and that in the Gîtâ there referred to.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. p. 346 supra. Nîlakantha takes fire to mean the gastric fire, and bhûta, ren.<sup>1</sup> red by us elements, to mean the species of beings born from eggs and wombs.

<sup>3</sup> The famous verse 'Tat savitur,' &c. See inter alia Brîhadâra-nyaka, p. 999; Âpastamba I, 1, 1, 9; Manu II, 77 seq., 104-170.

<sup>4</sup> See pp. 264, 265 supra.

<sup>5</sup> Here he turns back to the Sâvitri, 'looking back in the manner of the lion,' says Nîlakantha, and for purposes of upâsanâ. He does not give up the thread of his discourse entirely, but simply interjects this little clause. Nîlakantha adds, Sâvitri here includes every mode of worship prescribed for Brâhmanas, &c., and even for Mlekkhas. Cf. note 3, and Gautama (Buhler's ed.), p. 174 note.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Kṛândogya, p. 109, and Saṅkara's commentary. Arguna Misra compares this text, Tasmâdesha eteshâm pasunâm sreshtha-tamogah. Where it occurs I know not.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. Sânti Parvan (Râgadharma), chap. 11, st. 11.

<sup>8</sup> I. e. Vâsuki, Nîlakantha. More probably it refers to the species.

<sup>9</sup> As it is used in various ceremonies.

all liquid substances which are to be drunk, water is the best. And among all immovable entities, without distinction, the Plaksha, the ever holy field of Brahman<sup>1</sup>, is stated to be the first. I, too, (am the first) among all the patriarchs<sup>2</sup>, there is no doubt of that. And the unthinkable, self-existent Vishnu is stated to be my own self. Of all mountains, the great Meru is stated to be the first-born. And among all quarters and sub-quarters, likewise, the eastern quarter<sup>3</sup> is the first. Likewise the Gaṅgâ going in three paths is stated to be the first-born among rivers. And likewise of all wells and reservoirs of water, the ocean is the first-born. And of all gods, Dânavas, Bhûtas, Pisâkas, snakes, and Rakshases, and of men, Kinnaras, and Yakshas, Îsvara<sup>4</sup> is the lord. The great Vishnu, who is full of the Brahman, and than whom there is no higher being in these three worlds, is the source of all the universe. Of all orders<sup>5</sup>, that of householders (is the first), there is no doubt of that. The unperceived is the source of the worlds; and the same is also the end of everything. Days end with (the sun's) setting<sup>6</sup>; the night ends with (the sun's) rising; the end of pleasure is ever grief;

<sup>1</sup> I. e. the Creator; his field means, I presume, his special seat.

<sup>2</sup> Beings from whom all creatures were born. See inter alia Sânti Parvan (Moksha Dharma), chap. 208, st. 5; Manu I, 34.

<sup>3</sup> At p. 347 the north is mentioned. Arguna Misra has 'ûrdhva,' or upward here, and yet 'north' before. Is the north the best as the seat of the higher world mentioned at Sânti Parvan (Moksha Dharma), chap. 192, st. 8 seq.?

<sup>4</sup> I. e. Rudra, says Nîlakantha.

<sup>5</sup> Viz. Brahmakârin, householder, forester, and Samnyâsin. Cf. Sânti Parvan (Moksha), ch. 191, st. 10; Manu VI, 89; Gautama, p. 190.

<sup>6</sup> These stanzas also occur in the Sânti Parvan, chap. 27, st. 31 seq. (Râgadharmâ). A part of them appears to be quoted in Sâṅkhyasûtra V, 80. And the commentator Vigñâna Bhikshu introduces it with the expression 'iti srûyate.' But it is not a Vedic text.

the end of grief ever pleasure. All accumulations end in exhaustion ; all ascents end in falls ; all associations end in dissociations ; and life ends in death. All action ends in destruction ; death is certain for whatever is born <sup>1</sup> ; (everything) movable or immovable in this world is ever transient. Sacrifice, gift, penance, study, observances, and regulations, all this ends in destruction <sup>2</sup>. There is no end for knowledge. Therefore one whose self is tranquil, whose senses are subjugated, who is devoid of (the idea that this or that is) mine, who is devoid of egoism, is released from all sins by pure knowledge.

---

### CHAPTER XXX.

Brahman said :

The wheel of life <sup>3</sup> moves on ; a wheel of which the spoke is the understanding, of which the pole <sup>4</sup> is the mind, of which the bonds are the group of the senses, of which the outer rim <sup>5</sup> is the five great elements, of which the environment is home <sup>6</sup> ; which

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 45.

<sup>2</sup> All this is action, the fruit of which is perishable ; the fruit of knowledge, on the other hand, is everlasting.

<sup>3</sup> Literally, time ; it seems, however, to stand for the vicissitudes of worldly life. Cf. *Svetâsvatara*, p. 283. The body is called 'wheel of time' at p. 53 *supra*, but *Arguna Misra* there says 'it is the wheel which causes the rotation of the wheel of time.'

<sup>4</sup> The cause of its being large in dimensions, *Arguna Misra* ; the supporting pillar, *Nîlakāṇṭha*. I prefer the former, and take the sense to be that worldly life is co-extensive with the operations or 'fancies' of the mind.

<sup>5</sup> What is outside the elements, the physical manifestations of *Prakṛti*, is beyond the domain of worldly life.

<sup>6</sup> The possession of 'home' is equivalent to a dwelling in the midst of worldly life. Hence the idea of homelessness at *inter alia* Gîtâ, pp. 101-103.

accurately understands the movement and stoppage<sup>1</sup> of the wheel of life is never deluded. (That) sage, released from all impressions<sup>2</sup>, transcending all pairs of opposites, and released from all sins, attains the highest goal. The householder, and the Brahmanârin, the forester, and also the beggar<sup>3</sup>, all these four orders are stated to have the order of householder for their basis. Whatever system of rules<sup>4</sup> is prescribed in this world, to follow it is good; this has been celebrated from ancient times<sup>5</sup>. He who has been first refined by ceremonies<sup>6</sup>, and who has duly observed vows, being (born) in a caste of (high) qualifications<sup>7</sup>, and who understands the Vedas, should return<sup>8</sup> (from his preceptor's house). Always devoted to his own wife, behaving like<sup>9</sup> good men, with his senses restrained, and full of faith, one should perform the five sacrifices<sup>10</sup> in this world. The sage who eats what remains after (offerings) to deities<sup>11</sup> and guests, who is devoted to Vedic rites, who duly performs sacrifices and

<sup>1</sup> I. e. the causes of the revolution and stoppage, *Nilakantha*.

<sup>2</sup> Impressions of previous actions, delusions, &c. And see p. 247 supra.

<sup>3</sup> I. e. the Samnyâsin.

<sup>4</sup> Sâstra. Cf. Gîtâ, p. 117.

<sup>5</sup> 'Such is the eternal fame,' literally.

<sup>6</sup> I. e. on whom the Vedic rites or *Samskâras* are duly performed. And see Gîtâ, p. 122.

<sup>7</sup> I. e. one of the three higher castes.

<sup>8</sup> The original is the technical word for the return of a Brahmanârn after finishing his studies. He is describing the 'householder.'

<sup>9</sup> I. e. following the rule of conduct sanctioned by the good.

<sup>10</sup> Vide Williams' Dictionary, s.v. mahâyagña; *Âsvalâyana Grîhya* III, 1, 3; *Manu* II, 69; IV, 21.

<sup>11</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 62; a guest must always be fed, and unless he is satisfied the host must not eat. Cf. *Sânti Parvan* (Moksha), chap. 192, st. 15; *Manu* III, 106; *Âpastamba* II, 3, 7, 3.



gifts according to his means, who is not thoughtlessly active<sup>1</sup> with the hand or foot, who is not thoughtlessly active with the eye and who is not thoughtlessly active with his speech or any of his limbs, to such a one the (word) good applies. One should always have the sacred thread and a clean cloth, and be of pure vows, and self-restrained, and should always associate with good men, making gifts, and with one's external organs restrained; one should restrain one's lust and hunger<sup>2</sup>, should be kind, should behave like the good, and keep a bamboo stick and a water-pot filled with water<sup>3</sup>. One should learn and teach, should likewise perform sacrifices and officiate at others' sacrifices, and should give and receive gifts,—(thus) one should adopt the sixfold mode of life<sup>4</sup>. Know that three (of these) duties are the means of livelihood for Brâhmanas, the two teaching and officiating at sacrifices, and also receiving untainted gifts<sup>5</sup>. And as to the other remaining three duties, gift, study, and sacrifice, they are pious<sup>6</sup> duties. With regard to those three duties, the sage who understands piety, who is self-restrained, kind, possessed of forgiveness, and equable to all creatures, should avoid heedlessness<sup>7</sup>. The

<sup>1</sup> The same word as at Gîtâ, p. 114, there rendered 'vain activity.'

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Âpastamba II, 1, 1, 2 seq.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Manu IV, 36; Âpastamba II, 1, 1, 15.

<sup>4</sup> These are the well-known six duties of Brâhmanas as specified by Manu and others. See the discussion of this point in the Introduction.

<sup>5</sup> Another reading is 'gifts from an untainted (source).'

<sup>6</sup> What is the exact meaning of this here? I suppose the meaning is that the performance of them is a pure performance of duty; the others are duties the performance of which supplies one's own wants, and is therefore interested. Cf. Gautama X, 1 and 2.

<sup>7</sup> I. e. omission or mistake in performance.

(are satisfied) and with his speech restrained, having a mind free from envy<sup>1</sup>, eating little, and depending on the deities. Restraining the external senses, kind, full of forgiveness, preserving his hair and moustache, performing sacrifices, addicted to sacred study, and devoted to veracity and piety, pure in body<sup>2</sup>, always dexterous<sup>3</sup>, always in forests, and concentrated in mind,—a forester whose senses are subdued and who is thus devoted<sup>4</sup> conquers the worlds.

A householder, or a Brahma-kârin, or again a forester, who wishes to apply himself to final emancipation should adopt the best (line of) conduct<sup>5</sup>. Offering safety to all beings, the sage should become free from all action<sup>6</sup>, and be agreeable to all beings, kind, and restrained in all his senses. He should make a fire<sup>7</sup> and feed on the alms (obtained) without asking<sup>8</sup> and without trouble<sup>9</sup>, and which have come spontaneously<sup>10</sup>, in a place free from smoke and where people have already<sup>11</sup> eaten. One who

<sup>1</sup> I. e. of others for obtaining more, and so forth. Arguna Misra's reading is different, and he renders it to mean, 'one by whom the rule of life as a Brahma-kârin has not been violated.'

<sup>2</sup> Arguna Misra's reading, 'one who has cast away (all attachment to) the body.' Compare as to hair and moustache, Manu VI, 6 seq.

<sup>3</sup> See Gîtâ, p. 127. Here the meaning is probably assiduous in the performance of duties, vows, and so forth.

<sup>4</sup> I. e. applies himself to his duties.

<sup>5</sup> Arguna Misra says this means ânandâsramam, but there must be some bad copying here. I take the word as it stands to mean something like the 'godlike endowments' at Gîtâ, p. 114.

<sup>6</sup> See Gîtâ, pp. 54, 127. The meaning here is probably that of action without egoism. See Gîtâ, p. 55.

<sup>7</sup> I. e. Arguna Misra says, 'not at night.' The readings are unsatisfactory. I read *krîtvâ vahnim*, but diffidently. Is the allusion to the rule at Âpastamba II, 9, 21, 10? Cf. Gautama III, 27.

<sup>8</sup> Cf. Kaushîtaki, p. 32. <sup>9</sup> I. e. to the giver. Cf. Gîtâ, p. 120.

<sup>10</sup> See Gîtâ, p. 10. <sup>11</sup> Cf. Manu VI, 56; Gautama III, 15.

understands final emancipation should seek to obtain alms after the cleaning<sup>1</sup> of the vessels (used for cooking), and should not rejoice if he obtains, and should not be dejected if he does not obtain (alms). Nor should he beg for too much alms<sup>2</sup>, seeking merely to sustain life. Eating only a little, he should go about for alms with a concentrated mind, looking out for the (proper) time. He should not wish for earnings in common with another, nor should he eat when honoured; for an ascetic should be averse from all earnings (accompanied) with honour<sup>3</sup>. When eating, he should not taste any articles of food which have been eaten by others<sup>4</sup>, or which are pungent, astringent, or bitter, and likewise no sweet juices. He should eat just enough for his livelihood—for the support of life. One who understands final emancipation should seek for a livelihood without obstructing (other) creatures; and when he goes about for alms, he should not go following after another<sup>5</sup>. He should not parade (his) piety, he should move about in a secluded place, free from passion. He should resort for shelter to an empty house, or a forest, or the foot of a tree, or a river likewise, or the cavern of a mountain. In summer, (he should pass) but a single night<sup>6</sup> in a town; and in the rains, he may dwell in one place. He should move about the

<sup>1</sup> I.e., I presume, in order to avoid interfering with others' comforts. And see last note.

<sup>2</sup> See Manu VI, 55. As to proper time further on, see last note.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Sanatsugâtîya, pp. 145-147; 'without respect' at Gîtâ, p. 120, means probably with disrespect, otherwise that passage and this would be somewhat inconsistent. See too Manu II, 162.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Manu II, 56; Gîtâ, p. 118; and p. 269 supra.

<sup>5</sup> As that other may get nothing if they go together, Arguna Misra. Cf. Manu VI, 51.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Gautama III, 21.

world like a worm<sup>1</sup>, his path being pointed out by the sun, and he should walk with circumspection over the earth out of compassion to all beings<sup>2</sup>. He should not make any accumulations; and should eschew dwelling with friends<sup>3</sup>. And the man who understands final emancipation should verily do all acts which he has to do, always with clean water. A man should always bathe in clean water. And with his senses restrained, he should devote himself to these eight observances<sup>4</sup>,—harmlessness, life as a Brahma-kârin, veracity, and also straightforwardness, freedom from anger, freedom from (the habit of) carping, restraint of the external organs, and habitual freedom from (the habit of) backbiting. He should always practise a sinless (mode of) conduct, not deceptive and not crooked; and free from attachment should always make one who comes (as a guest) take a morsel of food. He should eat just enough for livelihood—for the support of life. And he should eat (only) what has been obtained with piety<sup>5</sup>, and should not follow his own (mere) desire<sup>6</sup>. He should not accept anything at all other than food and clothing. And he should accept as much as he eats and no more. He should not receive from others, nor should he ever give to others<sup>7</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> I. e. not very fast, Arguna Misra; 'the path being pointed out by the sun' = not at night, for fear of destroying worms, &c.

<sup>2</sup> This seems to be very like the practice of the Gainas of the present day. And cf. Manu VI, 69. <sup>3</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, pp. 68-103.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 114, and cf. also Sañatsugâtîya, p. 153.

<sup>5</sup> That is to say, obtained without violation of any binding obligation, or rule of the Sâstras. <sup>6</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 117.

<sup>7</sup> This is not very clear, and Arguna Misra's comments are not intelligible. The sense seems to be this, 'He should not take more than is wanted, nor should he keep any accumulations from which to give to others, but should at once share with others all that is earned.'

But owing to the helplessness of people, a wise man should always share (with others). He should not appropriate another's riches, and should not take (anything) unasked. Nor, verily, after enjoying any object should one become afterwards attached to it. One who has anything to do <sup>1</sup> should take earth, water, pebbles likewise, and leaves, flowers, and fruits which are not secured <sup>2</sup> (by anybody), as they come <sup>3</sup>. One should not live by the occupation of an artisan <sup>4</sup>, nor should one wish for gold. One should not hate, should not teach <sup>5</sup>, and should be void of (all) belongings <sup>6</sup>. One should eat what is consecrated by faith <sup>7</sup>, and should avoid (all) controversies, should act without a purpose <sup>8</sup>, should be free from attachment, and without fixed appointments with people <sup>9</sup>. One should not perform, or cause to be performed, any action involving expectation of fruit, or involving any destruction of life, or the assemblage of people <sup>10</sup>. Rejecting all things,

<sup>1</sup> Arguna Misra says that this means if he wants them for any particular purpose he should take the earth, &c.

<sup>2</sup> I.e. apparently, taken possession of and preserved as one's own by anybody.

<sup>3</sup> Arguna Misra renders this by 'which lead to action.' Is it not rather the 'spontaneous earnings' at Gîtâ, p. 60?

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Manu III, 64; Âpastamba I, 6, 18, 18; Gautama XVII, 7.

<sup>5</sup> I.e. teach one who does not ask to be instructed. Cf. Manu II, 110.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 60; the original word, however, is not the same.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 360, note 3 *supra*; Manu II, 54-55; Gautama IX, 59. 'Controversies;' the original is *nimitta*, and the interpretation is what appears to be Arguna Misra's. It may also mean 'omens.' That this is the true sense appears from Manu VI, 50.

<sup>8</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 48.

<sup>9</sup> Arguna Misra says, 'e.g. I shall come to you to-morrow for alms,' &c. Cf. Âpastamba I, 6, 19, 12.

<sup>10</sup> The words are the same as at Gîtâ, p. 54, 'keeping people (to

and being equable to all beings, moving and un-moving, one should become an ascetic with small belongings. One should not perturb any other (person), nor should one be perturbed by any other (person <sup>1</sup>). He who is trusted by all beings is said to be the foremost among those who understand final emancipation. One should not think of what is not come <sup>2</sup>, nor reflect on that which is past; one should disregard the present, being concentrated (in mind) and indifferent to time <sup>3</sup>. He should not de-file <sup>4</sup> anything by the eye, or the mind, or by speech, nor should he do anything wrong openly or in secret. One who draws in the senses from all sides as a tortoise (draws in) his limbs <sup>5</sup>, and in whom the senses, mind, and understanding are absorbed <sup>6</sup>, who is free from desires, who understands all truth, who is free from the pairs of opposites, and from the ceremony of svâhâ, and who is free from salutations <sup>7</sup>, and who is free from (the thought that this or that is) mine, who is free from egoism, who is free from anxiety for new acquisitions or protection of old acquisitions, and self-controlled <sup>8</sup>, who is free from

---

their duties),’ but the sense seems to be different. The commentators say nothing on this.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 101.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. one should not look to the future with any aspirations or expectations, and should not look back on the past with grief, Arguna Misra. See too p. 170, note 9 supra.

<sup>3</sup> I am not sure if this is a correct interpretation. But it does not seem likely that the other possible sense—literally ‘expecting time’—can be intended here.

<sup>4</sup> This is obscure. Is the sense this, that one should not observe, or think, or speak badly of or of the bad side of things?

<sup>5</sup> Cf. p. 342 supra, note 1.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. *Kaṭha*, p. 151.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 352 supra, note 1.

<sup>8</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 48, where the original words are the same.

expectations, who is free from attachments to any entity, and who is dependent on none<sup>1</sup>, who is attached to the self, and who understands the truth, is emancipated, there is no doubt of that. Those who perceive the self, which is without hands, foot, or back, without a head, without a stomach, which is free from the operations of the qualities<sup>2</sup>, absolute, untainted, and stable, devoid of smell, devoid of taste or touch, devoid of colour, and also devoid of sound, which is to be understood<sup>3</sup>, which is unattached, and which is also devoid of flesh, which is free from anxiety<sup>4</sup>, imperishable, divine, and though dwelling in a house<sup>5</sup>, always dwelling in all entities, they never die<sup>6</sup>. There the understanding reaches not, nor the senses, nor the deities, nor Vedas, sacrifices, nor worlds<sup>7</sup>, nor penance, nor valour<sup>8</sup>; the attainment to it of those who 'are possessed of knowledge is stated to be without comprehension of symbols<sup>9</sup>. Therefore the learned man who knows (the) property of being void of symbols<sup>10</sup>, being devoted to pious conduct, and

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 60.

<sup>2</sup> These are effects of Prakṛiti by which the Purusha is unaffected.

<sup>3</sup> Literally, 'pursued.'

<sup>4</sup> This is obscure. Arguna Misra's text is *niskṛityam*. Does that mean 'which should be accurately understood?' The rendering in the text of Nīlakantha's reading may mean that the Brahman has no such thoughts (*śintā*) as are referred to at Gîtâ, p. 115.

<sup>5</sup> Does this mean the body?

<sup>6</sup> I. e. are free from birth and death. Cf. Âpastamba I, 8, 22, 4.

<sup>7</sup> This, again, is not quite clear. Probably the explanation is to be found in the passage at Gîtâ, p. 79.

<sup>8</sup> Nīlakantha's reading is 'observances or vows.'

<sup>9</sup> I. e. 'not to be acquired by inference,' Arguna Misra, p. 351 supra.

<sup>10</sup> See p. 309 supra; who is without symbols, and knows piety, according to Arguna Misra's reading.

resorting to concealed <sup>1</sup> piety should adopt the mode of life (necessary) for experience <sup>2</sup>. Though unde-luded, he should act in the manner of the deluded <sup>3</sup>, not finding fault with piety <sup>4</sup>. He should perform piety, behaving so that others would always disrespect him <sup>5</sup>, and should not find fault with the ways of the good <sup>6</sup>. That sage is said to be the best who has adopted this (line of) conduct. The senses, and the objects of the senses, and the five great elements, and mind, understanding, egoism, the unperceived, and the Purusha likewise <sup>7</sup>, by an accurate determination about the truth, after understanding all these, one attains heaven <sup>8</sup>, being released from all bonds. One who knows the truth, understanding these same (entities) at the time of the termination (of his life), should meditate, exclusively pondering on one point <sup>9</sup>; and then, depending on none <sup>10</sup>, he gets emancipation. Freed from all attachments, like the atmosphere dwelling in space <sup>11</sup>, with his accumulations <sup>12</sup> exhausted, and free from distress <sup>13</sup>, he attains to the highest seat.

<sup>1</sup> See p. 159 supra, note 7, and cf. Manu III, 109, which is the text referred to in note 5 there.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. direct perception of the Brahman. See Gîtâ, p. 57, note 5.

<sup>3</sup> See p. 160 supra, note 8, and cf. also Manu II, 110.

<sup>4</sup> Arguna Misra compares Gîtâ, p. 55, about 'shaking convictions.'

<sup>5</sup> Cf. pp. 159-161 supra.

<sup>6</sup> This means, I presume, the good devoted to action and not to knowledge only.

<sup>7</sup> These are the famous elements of the Sâṅkhyas; see Sûtra I, 61.

<sup>8</sup> Cf. p. 159 and note 2.

<sup>9</sup> Cf. p. 300 supra.

<sup>10</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 60.

<sup>11</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 82, note 3.

<sup>12</sup> Of actions previously performed. See p. 246 supra.

<sup>13</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 101, where, however, the original word is different.



## CHAPTER XXXII.

Brahman said :

The ancients who perceived the established (truth) call renunciation<sup>1</sup> penance ; and the Brâhmanas dwelling in the seat of the Brahman<sup>2</sup> understand knowledge to be concerned with the Brahman<sup>3</sup>. The highest Brahman is very far off<sup>3</sup>, and (the attainment of it) depends on Vedic knowledge<sup>4</sup> ; it is free from the pairs of opposites, devoid of qualities<sup>5</sup>, everlasting, of unthinkable qualities, and supreme. The men of talent, who are pure<sup>6</sup>, and whose minds are refined, transcending passion, and being untainted, perceive that supreme (principle) by means of knowledge and penance. Those who are constantly devoted to renunciation<sup>7</sup>, and understand the Brahman and wish for the supreme, go to the happy path by penance. Penance<sup>8</sup> is said to be a light ; (correct) conduct is the means to piety ; knowledge verily should be understood to be the highest, and renunciation the best penance. He who understands determinately the self which is unperturbed, which abides in all entities, and which is the essential

<sup>1</sup> Abandoning of fruit, *Arguna Misra*. Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 121.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. p. 339 supra, note 4, dwelling in = adhering to.

<sup>3</sup> See *Gîtâ*, p. 104.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. *Sanatsugâtîya*, p. 158 seq. <sup>5</sup> Viz. the three famous ones.

<sup>6</sup> Pure, refined, and untainted are not easily distinguished. Probably 'pure' refers to external cleanliness ; 'untainted' to freedom from sin and such taints ; and 'refined' to freedom from error.

<sup>7</sup> I. e. who have no 'belongings,' *Arguna Misra*.

<sup>8</sup> Action without desire, *Arguna Misra*, who adds that it is called a light, as it leads to knowledge. See too p. 166, and p. 247, note 11, and p. 340 supra.

element in knowledge, he is laid down <sup>1</sup> (as being able) to move everywhere. The learned man who perceives, association and dissociation, and likewise unity and diversity <sup>2</sup>, is released from misery. He who desires nothing, and despises nothing <sup>3</sup>, becomes eligible, even dwelling in this world, for assimilation with the Brahman <sup>4</sup>. He who knows the truth about the qualities of Pradhâna <sup>5</sup>, and understands the Pradhâna of all entities <sup>6</sup>, who is free from (the thought that this or that is) mine, and free from egoism <sup>7</sup>, is emancipated, there is no doubt of that. One who is free from the pairs of opposites, free from the (ceremonies of) salutation, free from (the ceremony of) svadhâ <sup>8</sup>, attains to that everlasting (principle) which is free from the pairs of opposites, and devoid of qualities, by tranquillity only. Abandoning all action, whether agreeable or disagreeable, developed from the qualities <sup>9</sup>, and abandoning both truth and falsehood <sup>10</sup>, a creature is emancipated, there is no doubt of that. The great tree of Brahman <sup>11</sup> is

<sup>1</sup> 'Laid down' is literally 'wished.'

<sup>2</sup> I presume this means the real fact underlying the appearances of association and so forth, namely, that there is but one reality, and all appearances of difference &c. are unreal. Cf. Gîtâ, p. 124. See also p. 313 supra, note 1, and p. 374 infra.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 65, and see *Kaṭha*, p. 155. <sup>4</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 65.

<sup>5</sup> The qualities, viz. the three, of Pradhâna, i. e. constituting Prakṛti, or nature. <sup>6</sup> See Gîtâ, p. 106, and note 3 there.

<sup>7</sup> For this whole expression, which occurs so frequently, cf. Maitrî, p. 44, and comment there.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 324 supra, note 8. <sup>9</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 48; Svetâsvatara, p. 360.

<sup>10</sup> I. e., I presume, what is real and unreal in a worldly view,—the great truth is not to be 'abandoned.' Cf. Taittirîya, pp. 97-99; p. 191 supra; Sânti Parvan (Moksha), chap. 174, st. 53; Âpastamba II, 9, 21, 13.

<sup>11</sup> I. e., says Arguna Misra, the tree of worldly life produced from the Brahman. Compare chapter XII supra.

eternal; a tree which is produced from the unperceived as the seed, which consists of the understanding as its trunk, whose collection of boughs is the great egoism, the sprouts within which are the senses, the great branches of which are the great elements, and the side branches the objects of sense, which is always possessed of leaves, always possessed of flowers, in which agreeable and disagreeable fruits are always produced, and which is fed upon by all creatures. Cutting and piercing this (tree)<sup>1</sup> with the sword of knowledge of the truth, and abandoning the bonds in the shape of attachment, which cause birth, death, and old age<sup>2</sup>, a wise man who is free from (the thought that this or that is) mine, and who is devoid of egoism, is emancipated, there is no doubt of that. 'There are these two birds'<sup>3</sup>, (which are) unchanging, and which should also be known to be unintelligent<sup>4</sup>. But as to that other who is above them, he is called intelligent. (When) the inner self, devoid of knowledge of nature<sup>5</sup>, and (as it were) non-intelligent<sup>6</sup>, understands that which is

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *Gitâ*, p. 111; and *Mundaka*, p. 307, and commentary there.

<sup>2</sup> So I render the original, though the sense at first sight appears to be 'which are caused by birth,' &c.

<sup>3</sup> Viz. the understanding and egoism, which dwell in the 'tree,' *Arguna Misra*. *Nîlakantha* says, 'the great and the individual self.'

<sup>4</sup> Cf. *Sânkhya-kârikâ* 11, and comment of *Vâkaspati Misra*. The self is not unintelligent; and as the birds are so described, they must stand for some manifestation of *Prakṛti*, which understanding and egoism are. Otherwise 'bird' does stand for 'self.' See p. 189 *supra*.

<sup>5</sup> The original word here is *sattva*, on which see p. 351 *supra*. *Arguna Misra* renders it here by *Prakṛti*.

<sup>6</sup> So *Nîlakantha*; 'the only intelligent principle,'—*Arguna Misra*. On *Nîlakantha*'s interpretation 'inner self' must be the same thing as *Bhûtâtman* at *Maitrî*, p. 41.

duct of the quality of goodness. By this very inference the wise verily believe in the Being and nature as one, there is no doubt of that. Some learned men, who are devoted to knowledge, assert the unity of the Kshetragña and nature <sup>1</sup>. But that is not correct. That they are always distinct (from one another) is also (said) without (due) consideration <sup>2</sup>. Distinction and also association <sup>3</sup> should be accurately understood. Unity and diversity <sup>4</sup> are likewise laid down. Such is the doctrine of the learned. Between the gnat and the udumbara <sup>5</sup> there is observed unity and diversity also. As a fish is in water distinct (from it), such is their relation; (such is) the relation of the drops of water with the leaf of the lotus.

The preceptor said :

Then those Brāhmaṇas, who were the best of sages, having again felt doubts, interrogated the grandsire of the people who spoke to them thus.

<sup>1</sup> Here, says *Nīlakanṭha*, the author indicates an objection to the proposition stated just before. But the passage is not clear.

<sup>2</sup> This, says *Nīlakanṭha*, is a reply to the Sāṅkhya, who hold the two to be distinct. *Nīlakanṭha* adds, that if the two are distinct, nature will, conceivably, adhere even to an emancipated creature; and if they are one, then the being or self would be really engaging in action and so forth, and that activity being really a property of the self, could not be destroyed save by the destruction of the self. Hence that view is also wrong.

<sup>3</sup> Like that of sea and wave, *Nīlakanṭha*.

<sup>4</sup> Unity of Brahman and diversity of manifestation of nature, *Arguna Misra*, who adds—by reason of the association they are spoken of as one, by reason of the unity and diversity they are distinct. The next sentence contains three parallel cases.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. as to all this, *Sānti Parvan*, chap. 194, st. 38 seq. (*Moksha Dharma*); chap. 249, st. 20 seq.; chap. 285, st. 33 seq.

## CHAPTER XXXIV.

The sages said :

Which (form of) piety is deemed to be the most worthy of being performed ? We observe the various modes of piety to be as it were contradictory. Some say (it <sup>1</sup> remains) after the body (is destroyed) ; some say that is not so. Some (say) everything <sup>2</sup> is doubtful ; and others that there is no doubt. Some say the permanent (principle) is impermanent, and others, too, that it exists, and (others) that it exists not <sup>3</sup>. Some (say it is) of one form or twofold, and others (that it is) mixed <sup>4</sup>. Some Brâhmanas, too, who know the Brahman and perceive the truth, believe it to be one ; others distinct ; and others again (that it is) manifold <sup>5</sup>. Some say both time and space (exist) <sup>6</sup>, and others that that is not so. Some have matted hair and skins ; and some (are) clean-shaven and without covering. Some people are for bathing ; some for the omission <sup>7</sup> of bathing. Some are for taking food ; others are intent on fasting. Some people extol action, and

<sup>1</sup> I. e. the piety, Arguna Misra ; the self, Nîlakantha.

<sup>2</sup> I. e. such as piety, &c., Arguna Misra.

<sup>3</sup> I follow Arguna Misra, who says 'permanent' means soul, &c. The correct expression would seem to be 'that which is called permanent by others is impermanent.'

<sup>4</sup> This is the view of those who hold the theory of Parinâma, or development, says Arguna Misra.

<sup>5</sup> 'To be one' = knowledge to be all of one description, 'distinct' = knowledge having various entities for its distinct objects (this is the view of the holders of the Vignânavâda, says Arguna Misra) ; manifold = that the selfs are numberless. The words here are nearly identical with those at Gîtâ, p. 83, see note 4 there.

<sup>6</sup> I. e. help in action, Arguna Misra.

<sup>7</sup> See Âpastamba I, 1, 1, 2 (comment).

## CHAPTER XXXV.

Brahman said:

Well then, I will declare to you what you ask of me, O best (of men)! Learn what a preceptor told a pupil who went to him. Hearing it all, deliberate on it properly. Non-destruction of all creatures, that is deemed to be the greatest duty<sup>1</sup>. This is the highest seat<sup>2</sup>, free from vexation and holy in character. The ancients who perceived the established (truth) call knowledge the highest happiness. Therefore by pure knowledge one is released from all sins. And those who are constantly engaged in destruction, and who are infidels<sup>3</sup> in their conduct, and who entertain avarice and delusion, go verily to hell. Those who without sloth perform actions with expectations, rejoice in this world, being born again and again. But those wise and talented men, who perform actions with faith, free from any connexion with expectations, perceive correctly<sup>4</sup>. Now I will proceed to state how the association and dissociation of Kshetragnâ and nature (take place). Learn that, O best (of men)! The relation here is said to be that between the object and subject<sup>5</sup>. The subject

<sup>1</sup> See p. 291 *supra*, and note 3 there.

<sup>2</sup> So literally; the sense is—that which one is to aim at.

<sup>3</sup> The original is *nâstika*, the contrary of that ‘*âstikya*,’ which at *Gîtâ*, p. 126, we have rendered by ‘belief (in a future world),’ following *Sîdhara*. *Râmânuga*, whose commentary came to hand too late for any other than a very occasional use in the translation of the *Gîtâ*, renders it by ‘belief in the truth of the teaching of the Vedas.’

<sup>4</sup> I. e. learn the truth.

<sup>5</sup> I use the terms subject and object here in the philosophical sense explained by Sir W. Hamilton, viz. the thinking agent and the object of thought respectively. And cf. also the passage referred to in note 3 on p. 379 *infra*.

is always the being, and nature is stated to be the object. It has been explained in the above mode, as (having the relation) of the gnat and the udumbara <sup>1</sup>. Nature which is non-intelligent knows nothing, though it is the object of enjoyment<sup>2</sup>. Who enjoys and what is enjoyed<sup>3</sup> is learnt from the Sâstras. Nature is said always to abound in the pairs of opposites, and to be constituted of the qualities; the Kshetragña is free from the pairs of opposites, devoid of parts, and in essence free from the qualities. He abides in everything alike<sup>4</sup>; and is connected with (all) knowledge<sup>5</sup>; and he always enjoys nature as a lotus-leaf (enjoys) water. Even brought into contact with all qualities, a learned man remains untainted<sup>6</sup>. There is no doubt that the being is unattached just like the unsteady drop of water placed upon a lotus-leaf<sup>7</sup>. It is established that nature is the property<sup>8</sup> of the being. And the relation of the two is like that of matter and the maker<sup>9</sup>. As one goes into (a) dark (place) taking a light (with him), so those who wish for the supreme go with the light of nature<sup>10</sup>. While there is oil

<sup>1</sup> P. 374 supra. The relation is one of close connexion, coupled with some identity of nature (because, says Nîlakantha, an entirely extraneous thing could not get into the inside of the fruit, and the gnat's body therefore must have come from the fruit itself), but still the elements are distinct.

<sup>2</sup> See p. 371 supra, note 4.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Maitrî, p. 108.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, pp. 105, 106. •

<sup>5</sup> Knowledge of the Kshetragña forms part of all real knowledge. Arguna Misra's reading and interpretation are different. He says, 'As he is seen coming to light everywhere alike, so,' &c.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, pp. 55-110.

<sup>7</sup> Again the common simile.

<sup>8</sup> The original is dravya, rendered 'matter' in the next sentence. Arguna Misra paraphrases it by 'upakarana,' paraphernalia.

<sup>9</sup> So the original, the sense is not clear. But see Svetâsvatara, p. 368.

<sup>10</sup> Knowledge, which, says Nîlakantha, is a manifestation of nature. Arguna Misra says the knowledge of the truth which the

and wick<sup>1</sup>, the light shines; but the flame is extinguished when the oil and wick are exhausted. Thus nature is perceived<sup>2</sup>; the being is laid down (as being) unperceived. Understand this, O Brâhmanas! Well now, I will tell you something more. One who has a bad understanding does not acquire knowledge even with a thousand (admonitions). And one who is possessed of knowledge enhances (his) happiness even with a fourth share<sup>3</sup>. Thus should one understand the accomplishment of piety by (apt) means. For the talented man who knows (these) means, attains supreme happiness<sup>4</sup>. As a man travelling along some way without provisions for the journey, travels with great discomfort, and may even be destroyed on the way, so should one understand, that by action<sup>5</sup> the fruit is or is not produced. For a man to see within (his) self<sup>6</sup> what is agreeable and what is disagreeable to him is good. And as one who is devoid of a perception of the truth rashly travels on foot by a long way unseen before<sup>7</sup>, while (another) goes by the same self acquires is by means of nature. Cf. Sâṅkhya-kârikâ 56, and comment.

<sup>1</sup> So Nīlakanṭha. Aṅgana Misra does not take *guṇa* here to mean 'wick.'

<sup>2</sup> I.e., I presume, in its manifestations; it is perceived for some time and then vanishes. Cf. Sâṅkhya-kârikâ 59-61; the Puruṣa is not 'perceived' in this sense. <sup>3</sup> Viz. of admonition, Aṅgana Misra.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Gītâ, p. 70, where the same phrase occurs.

<sup>5</sup> The fruit of this is uncertain; knowledge which is in one's self is the thing to be worked for.

<sup>6</sup> I.e. the mind, Nīlakanṭha. The meaning is, he should not care for external pleasure and pain. Cf. Gītâ, *inter alia*, p. 50.

<sup>7</sup> This seems to be so left imperfect in the original. The construction seems to be this: the progress of the latter is as great as that of one who drives in a chariot as compared with that of one who goes on foot with much suffering. Cf. the construction on next page.



way in a carriage<sup>1</sup> drawn by horses, and going swiftly, such is the progress of the men of understanding. Having climbed up a mountain one should not look at the surface of the earth<sup>2</sup>. One sees a man travelling in a chariot, and void of intelligence, afflicted by reason of the chariot. As far as there is a carriage-path, he goes in the carriage; where the carriage-path stops, a learned man goes on abandoning the carriage. So travels the talented man, who understands the procedure respecting (knowledge of the) truth and devotion<sup>3</sup>, and who knows about the qualities, comprehending the gradations<sup>4</sup> one above the other. As one who without a boat dives into the ocean with his arms only, through delusion, undoubtedly wishes for destruction; while a wise man likewise knowing distinctions<sup>5</sup>, and having a boat with good oars, goes in the water without fatigue, and soon crosses the reservoir, and having crossed (it) goes to the other shore, throwing

<sup>1</sup> I.e. the *Sâstras*, says *Nilakantha*. Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 117.

<sup>2</sup> When one has arrived at knowledge,—the highest seat, says *Nilakantha*,—one need not perform the dictates of the *Sâstras*, which are only preliminary to the acquisition of knowledge. Cf. *Gîtâ*, pp. 48, 73. Cf. as to this figure of the chariot and the next one about the boat, *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 695.

<sup>3</sup> I adopt *Arguna's* rendering of the original here, viz. Yoga. The meaning, on that rendering, is the same as it is in the *Gîtâ*.

<sup>4</sup> According to *Arguna Misra*, action with desire, action without desire, and lastly, knowledge. According to *Nilakantha*, action laid down in the *Sâstras*, then Yoga, and then the condition of *Hamsa*, *Paramahamsa*, &c. •

<sup>5</sup> Literally, one knowing divisions. I presume the meaning is distinctions between various things as to which suits which, and so forth. The boat, says *Nilakantha*, is a preceptor, and even a preceptor is not to be sought for after a man has achieved Yoga; hence the text proceeds to speak further on of casting aside the boat. Wishes for destruction= is sure to meet destruction.

aside the boat, and devoid of (the thought that this or that is) mine. This has been already explained by the parallel of the carriage and pedestrian. One who has come by delusion through affection, adheres to that like a fisherman to his boat, being overcome by (the thought that this or that is) mine. It is not possible to move on land after embarking in a boat. And likewise one cannot move in water after entering a carriage. Thus there are various actions in regard to different objects<sup>1</sup>. And as action is performed in this world, so does it result to them<sup>2</sup>. That which sages by their understanding meditate upon, which is void of any smell whatever, void of taste, and void of colour, touch, or sound, that is called the Pradhâna<sup>3</sup>. Now that Pradhâna is unperceived; a development of the unperceived is the Mahat; and a development of the Pradhâna (when it is) become Mahat is egoism. From egoism is produced the development, namely, the great elements; and of the elements respectively, objects of sense are verily stated to be the development<sup>4</sup>. The unperceived is of the nature of seed<sup>5</sup>, and also productive in its essence. And we have heard

<sup>1</sup> I.e. appertaining to the various orders of householders, &c., *Nîlakantha*. But I am not aware of any authority for this sense of *vishaya*.

<sup>2</sup> I.e. those who perform them.

<sup>3</sup> *Nîlakantha* says, 'Having stated above the means of knowledge, he now states the proper object of knowledge.'

<sup>4</sup> See p. 332 *supra*. The original for development is *guna*, literally quality.

<sup>5</sup> The meaning of this passage seems to be identical with that of *Sânkhya-kârikâ* 3. Productive (*Prasavâtmakam*) is probably to be explained as *Prasavadharmi* is at *Sânkhya-kârikâ* 11 (see commentary of *Vâkaspati*, pp. 59, 60), viz. always undergoing development. The great elements are of course the *tanmâtras*.

that the great self is of the nature of seed and a product. Egoism is of the nature of seed and a product also again and again. And the five great elements are verily of the nature of seed and products. The objects of the five elements are of the nature of seed<sup>1</sup>, but they do not yield products. Learn about their properties. Now space has one quality, air is said to have two qualities; it is said that light has three qualities; and water, too, is of four qualities; and earth, abounding with movables and immovables, the divine source of all entities, full of examples of agreeable and disagreeable (things), should be understood to be of five qualities<sup>2</sup>. Sound, touch, colour likewise, taste, and smell as the fifth—these, O best of the twice-born! should be understood to be the five qualities of earth. Smell always belongs to the earth<sup>3</sup>; and smell is stated to be (of) numerous descriptions. I will state at length the numerous qualities of smell<sup>4</sup>. Smell is agreeable or disagreeable, sweet, sour, and bitter likewise, diffusive and compact also, soft, and rough, and clear also<sup>5</sup>—thus should

<sup>1</sup> This is not clear, unless 'product' above means productive, and seed means a product, it being a product of the *aṅkura* or sprout. *Nilakantha* says, 'seed=cause; product=effect. The unperceived is an effect, and so the contrary doctrine of the *Sāṅkhya* is here shown to be wrong. The objects are causes, as their enjoyment causes an impression.'

<sup>2</sup> See pp. 285, 286 *supra*.

<sup>3</sup> That is to say, smell is the special property of the earth only, the other qualities are common to it with the other elements. The word in the original is *guṇa* or quality everywhere.

<sup>4</sup> See *Sānti Parvan* (*Moksha Dharma*), chap. 184, st. 27.

<sup>5</sup> Bitter, *Nilakantha* exemplifies by the smell of the chili, apparently interpreting *kaṭvi*, as it may be interpreted, to mean sharp; diffusive=overcoming all other smells, like *Asafoetida*; compact=made up of many smells. *Nilakantha* adds, that soft is like that of

smell, which belongs to the earth, be understood to be of ten descriptions. Sound, touch, and colour likewise, and taste, are stated to be the qualities of water. I will now give (some) information about taste. Taste is stated to be of numerous descriptions. Sweet<sup>1</sup>, sour, bitter, sharp, astringent, and saltish likewise—thus are the forms of taste, which is a development of water, said to be of six descriptions. Sound, touch, and likewise colour; thus is light said to have three qualities. The quality of light is colour, and colour is stated to be of numerous descriptions. White, black, red likewise, green, yellow, and grey likewise, short, long, narrow<sup>2</sup>, broad, square, and circular—thus is the colour of light said to be of twelve forms. It should be understood<sup>3</sup> by aged Brâhmanas, who speak the truth, and are conversant with piety. Sound and touch also should be understood; air is said to have (these) two qualities. And touch is the quality of air, and touch is stated to be of numerous descriptions. Rough, cold and hot likewise, tender and clear also, hard, glutinous, smooth, slippery, hurtful, and soft<sup>4</sup>—thus the quality of air is properly said by Brâhmanas who have reached perfection, who are conversant with piety and perceive the truth, to be of twelve descriptions. Now space has one quality,

liquid ghee, rough of the oil of mustard, and clear as of cooked rice. The Sânti Parvan passage omits 'sour.' <sup>1</sup> Cf. Gîtâ, p. 118.

<sup>2</sup> Literally, lean and fat. These are rather unusual qualities to attribute to colour. The Sânti Parvan passage gives more.

<sup>3</sup> Sic. Does it mean 'it is understood?' Cf. Pânini III, 3, 113.

<sup>4</sup> Tender=like the touch of a son, &c.; clear=like that of an excellent cloth, Nîlakantha; glutinous=like that of oil; smooth=like that of a gem; slippery=not really smooth, but appearing to be such, like that of saliva (?), Arguna Misra. The enumeration of these in the Sânti Parvan loc. cit. is again different.

and that is stated to be sound only. I will speak at length of the numerous qualities of sound. *Shadga*, *Rishabha*, together with *Gândhâra*, *Madhyama*, and likewise *Pañkama*, and beyond these should be understood to be *Nishâda* and *Dhaivata* likewise<sup>1</sup>; agreeable and disagreeable sound also, compact, and of (many) ingredients<sup>2</sup>. Thus sound, which is produced in space, should be understood to be of ten descriptions. Space is the highest element<sup>3</sup>, egoism is above that; above egoism is understanding, and above that understanding is the self<sup>4</sup>; above that is the unperceived, and above the unperceived is the being. One who knows which is superior and inferior among entities, and who knows the proper procedure in all actions, and who identifies himself with every being<sup>5</sup>, repairs to the imperishable self.

## CHAPTER XXXVI.

Brahman said:

Since the mind is ruler of these five elements, in (the matter of) absorbing or bringing (them) forth<sup>6</sup>,

<sup>1</sup> This is the Hindu Gamut.

<sup>2</sup> These are not in the *Sânti Parvan*; of many ingredients = collection of sounds, *Arguna Misra*.

<sup>3</sup> Being all-pervading, *Arguna Misra*. Cf. its position at *Taittiriya*, p. 67.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. *Kaṭha*, pp. 114, 115, 149, and *Sankarâkârya*'s commentary there, for an explanation of the whole passage. And see *Sânkhya-sâra*, p. 16, as to what are here called self and understanding.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 64, where the words are identical.

<sup>6</sup> The elements are perceived or are not perceived by the senses under the direction of the mind; absorbing = destroying; bringing forth = producing, *Nīlakanṭha*. See p. 268 supra, and *Sânti Parvan* (*Moksha*), chap. 240, st. 12.

the mind itself is the individual self<sup>1</sup>. The mind always presides over the great elements. The understanding proclaims its power<sup>2</sup>, and it is called the *Kshetragña*. The mind yokes the senses as a charioteer (yokes) good horses. The senses, the mind, and the understanding are always joined to the *Kshetragña*<sup>3</sup>. That individual self, mounting the chariot to which big horses<sup>4</sup> are yoked, and in which the understanding is the drag<sup>5</sup>, drives about on all sides. The great chariot which is pervaded by the Brahman<sup>6</sup>, has the group of the senses yoked (to it), has the mind for a charioteer, and the understanding for a drag. That learned and talented person verily, who always understands thus the chariot pervaded by the Brahman, comes not by delusion in the midst of all entities<sup>7</sup>. This forest of the Brahman<sup>8</sup> begins with the unperceived, and ends with the gross objects<sup>9</sup>;

<sup>1</sup> The word is the same as at *Maitrī*, p. 41, the comment on which should be seen.

<sup>2</sup> I.e. the mind's power is to be perceived by itself, *Nilakantha*. The meaning seems to be that the understanding can only operate on what the mind places before it.

<sup>3</sup> The passage at *Kaṭha*, p. 111 seq., and *Saṅkara's* commentary there, throw light on this, though the figure is not drawn out in the same way in both places. For a definition of *Kshetragña*, see *Sānti Parvan (Moksha)*, chap. 187, st. 23.

<sup>4</sup> I.e. the senses.

<sup>5</sup> I.e. that which holds the horses in check. *Nilakantha* seems to render it by 'whip,' but that is not correct, I think.

<sup>6</sup> So *Arguna Misra*. *Nilakantha* says, 'The senses, &c., when they turn towards the outer world make the self drive about, as an individual self; when turned inwards they show him that he is the Brahman.' *Nilakantha* thus likens this to the *Kaṭha* passage. See also p. 187 and notes there.

<sup>7</sup> Or it may mean, among all men.

<sup>8</sup> See p. 164 supra, note 2; and p. 285, note 4.

<sup>9</sup> That is to say, it includes all *Samsāra*, all the elements recognised by the *Sāṅkhya* philosophy, save the Being or *Purusha*.

and includes movables and immovables, receives light from the radiance of the sun and moon, is adorned with planets and nakshatras, and is decked on all sides with nets of rivers and mountains, and always beautified likewise by various (descriptions of) waters; it is (the means of) subsistence for all entities<sup>1</sup>, and it is the goal of all living creatures. In this the Kshetragña always moves about. Whatever entities (there are) in this world, movable or immovable, they are the very first<sup>2</sup> to be dissolved; and next the developments produced from the elements<sup>3</sup>; and (after) these developments, all the elements. Such is the upward gradation<sup>4</sup> among entities. Gods, men, Gandharvas, Pisākās, Asuras, Rākshasas, all have been created by nature<sup>5</sup>, not by actions, nor by a cause. These Brāhmanas<sup>6</sup>, the creators of the world, are born here again and again. And what-

<sup>1</sup> Cf. p. 371 supra.

<sup>2</sup> Another reading means 'they are dissolved in the waters.' As to the order, cf. Vedānta Paribhāṣhā, p. 48, and p. 335 supra.

<sup>3</sup> I take these to mean the gross elements of which things movable and immovable may be said to be made, if one may use a non-idealist phrase in the Sāṅkhya philosophy. Then the elements next spoken of are the subtle ones or tanmātras. Cf. the references in note 2. As to developments, see p. 382, note 4.

<sup>4</sup> Viz. gross object, gross element, subtle element.

<sup>5</sup> The original is svabhāva, which Arguna Misra renders by Prakṛiti. 'Actions' both Nīlakantha and Arguna Misra take to mean sacrifices, &c., and 'cause' the former interprets by Brahman; the latter by tanmātras or subtle elements, and adds, 'the sense is—not by sacrifice or tanmātras only.' Nīlakantha says, 'The gods, &c., are produced by nature, as the gods, &c., seen in a dream.' The meaning seems to be that there are energies in nature which evolve these forms of being. Cf. also Gītā, p. 65.

<sup>6</sup> I presume this means that the patriarchs (Marīki and others, says Nīlakantha) are also born again and again—that is to say, in different kalpas, I suppose—by nature only.

who are free from (all thought that this or that is) mine, and who are free from egoism, attaining concentration (of mind) on contemplation<sup>1</sup>, enter the highest world of the great, which is the unperceived. Born from that same unperceived<sup>2</sup> (principle), again acquiring knowledge, and getting rid of the (qualities of) passion and darkness, and resorting to the pure (quality of) goodness, a man gets rid of all sins, and abandons everything as fruitless. He should be understood to be the Kshetragña. He who understands him understands the Vedas<sup>3</sup>. Withdrawing from the mind the objects<sup>4</sup> of mental operations, a sage should sit down self-restrained. (He) necessarily (becomes) that on which his mind<sup>5</sup> (is fixed). This is the eternal mystery. That which begins with the unperceived and ends with the gross objects<sup>6</sup> is stated to be of the nature of ignorance<sup>7</sup>. But (you should) learn that whose nature is devoid

---

heightened.' He compares *Bṛhadâraṇyaka*, p. 816. See also *Taittirīya*, p. 112.

<sup>1</sup> See *Gîtâ*, p. 128, note 1, where *dhyâna* and *yoga* are taken separately. Here the compound is in the singular. *Nīlakantha's* reading is different.

<sup>2</sup> The sense here is not quite clear. It seems, however, to be this. The acquisitions mentioned in the preceding sentence take the acquirers to some temporary world from which they afterwards return; but when they get rid of the qualities, they get final emancipation. As to the unperceived, cf. *inter alia* *Gîtâ*, p. 112, note 2.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 111, and note 2 there. That seems to approach the question from the opposite point of view.

<sup>4</sup> So *Arguna Misra*. At *Gîtâ* XVI, 16, *kitta* means the operation itself. That also will do here.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 78; *Maitrī*, p. 178; *Prasna*, p. 194; and the quotations at *Sāṅkhya-sāra*, p. 3.

<sup>6</sup> This phrase has occurred before; it means all the developments which make up worldly life. See *Sāṅkhya-sāra*, p. 5.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 371 *supra*.



of qualities. Two syllables<sup>1</sup> are death ; three syllables the eternal Brahman. Mine is death, and not mine is the eternal<sup>2</sup>. Some men of dull understandings extol action. But as to the high-souled ancients they do not extol action<sup>3</sup>. By action a creature is born with a body and made up of the sixteen<sup>4</sup>. Knowledge brings forth<sup>5</sup> the being, and that is acceptable and constitutes immortality. Therefore those who are far-sighted have no attachment to actions. This being is stated to be full of knowledge, not full of action<sup>6</sup>. The self-restrained man who thus understands the immortal, changeless, incomprehensible, and ever indestructible and unattached (principle), he dies not<sup>7</sup>. He who thus understands the self to which there is nothing prior, which is uncreated, changeless, unmoving<sup>8</sup>, which is incomprehensible (even) to those who feed on nectar, he certainly becomes immortal<sup>7</sup> and not to be restrained<sup>9</sup>, in consequence of these means<sup>10</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> See *Sânti Parvan* (*Râgadharma*) XIII, 4. Cf. *Maitrî*, p. 180. This means the two and three syllables of 'mama' and 'na mama,' mine and not mine. Cf. *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 970, and *Khândogya*, p. 118, and p. 548, for a similar conceit.

<sup>2</sup> Final emancipation follows on abandoning the idea of 'mine ;' bondage on harbouring it.

<sup>3</sup> See *Mundaka*, p. 279.

<sup>4</sup> The eleven organs and the five great elements which go to form the body. See *Sâṅkhya-kârikâ* 3, and comment thereon ; *Sânti Parvan*, chap. 210, st. 32 seq. ; chap. 242, st. 7 seq. ; *Prasna*, p. 230.

<sup>5</sup> I. e. shows. <sup>6</sup> Cf. *Gîtâ*, p. 118 ; *Sânti Parvan*, ch. 242, st. 15.

<sup>7</sup> See p. 367 supra, note 6 ; and cf. *Kaṭha*, pp. 155, 156.

<sup>8</sup> I. e. which remains unconcerned, cf. *Îsa*, p. 10. *Apûrvam* (to which there is nothing prior), *Arguna Misra* renders by 'not familiarly known,' and *Nilakanṭha* by 'not understood by any other means of knowledge.' See also *Bṛihadâraṇyaka*, p. 502, and *Saṅkara* on that.

<sup>9</sup> This is not very clear, but I suppose the meaning to be the same as that of 'unconquerable' at p. 161, and see p. 231.

<sup>10</sup> I. e. the means mentioned further on, says *Nilakanṭha*.

know the mind to be my pupil. And, O Dhanañgaya! I have related this mystery to you out of love for you. If you have love for me, O supporter of the family of the Kauravas! then having heard this (instruction) relating to the self, always duly act<sup>1</sup> (according to it). Then when this piety is duly practised, you will attain the absolute final emancipation, getting rid of all sins. It was this same thing I stated to you before<sup>2</sup> when the time for battle had come, O you of mighty arms! Therefore fix your mind on this. And now<sup>3</sup>, O chief of the descendants of Bharata! it is long since I saw the lord my father. I wish to see him, with your consent, O Phālguna<sup>4</sup>!

Vaisampāyana said :

When *Kṛishna* spoke these words, Dhanañgaya replied (saying), O *Kṛishna*! let us verily go to-day to the city of Gagasa<sup>5</sup>. Be pleased, O you who understand piety! to see there king Yudhishtira, who is of a devout heart, and after taking leave of him to go to your own city.'

<sup>1</sup> Nīlakantha interprets the words without supplying anything, thus 'be devoted to yama niyama,' &c. Yama &c. are the eight requisites for Yōga or concentration of mind as taught by Patañjali.

<sup>2</sup> That is to say, in the Gītā.

<sup>3</sup> Here he takes up the thread of the story. In the first chapter it was hinted that *Kṛishna* was anxious to go to Dvārakā.

<sup>4</sup> This is a name of Arguna.

<sup>5</sup> I. e. Hastināpur, the capital of the Pāṇḍavas. They were, when the dialogue was held, at Indraprastha. See p. 229 supra.

# INDEX

## OF PRINCIPAL MATTERS.

In this Index, Roman and Italic letters, long and short vowels  
have been classed together.

- A, the letter, page 90.
- Abandonment, 49, 67, 71, 101, 110, 121, 122, 123, 154, 168, 177, 182, 246, 280, 283, 326, 369, 370, 371, 373, 390. See Renunciation.
- Abhimanyu, 37, 39.
- Ābhiras, 295.
- Abiding in everything. See Within.
- Abiding together. See Unity.
- Abode of Brahman. See Identification, Seat, and Unity.
- Abortive, nothing in Yoga, 47, 72. See Action, Life, Resolution, and Vain.
- Abridging, 357.
- Absolute, 248, 310, 367, 394.
- Absolution. See Release.
- Absorbent, 84, 104, 106, 112, 191, 258, 268, 279, 286, 318. See Assimilation, Dissolution, Life-winds.
- Absorption, 331, 341, 342, 351, 366, 385. See Assimilation.
- abstinence, 50.
- Abstraction, 10, 68, 69, 70, 75, 77, 78, 79, 86, 100, 114, 125, 128. See Concentration.
- Abuse, 166, 323.
- Acceptable, 391.
- Acceptance, 324, 325, 359, 364.
- Accessible, Supreme Being, 71, 79. See Approaching and Attainment.
- Accomplishment of all duty, 54, 114, 169, 193, 337, 344, 380, 388, 389, 393.
- Accumulation, 355, 364, 368.
- of honey, 188.
- of sin and merit. See Happiness, Merit, and Sin.
- Acid, 118.
- Acquisition, 48, 49, 55, 59, 70, 74, 84, 115, 323, 327, 332, 366, 372, 376, 388, 392. See Body.
- highest, 70, 225.
- new, for *Krishna*, 54.
- of anything desired. See Desire.
- Act, auspicious. See Auspicious.
- thought and word. See Body, Mind, and Speech.
- Action, 48, 49, 52, 53, 54, 55, 56, 59, 60, 62, 63, 65, 67, 77, 81, 82, 95, 98, 99, 102, 103, 106, 108, 109, 110, 111, 115, 117, 118, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 127, 128, 152, 153, 156, 179, 180, 182, 184, 185, 188, 191, 193, 232, 233, 238, 240, 241, 243, 244, 256, 261, 278, 279, 280, 283, 286, 289, 293, 297, 302, 306, 307, 309, 313, 314, 315, 316, 319, 320, 321, 326, 338, 339, 348, 349, 355, 357, 358, 365, 368, 369, 370, 374, 375, 377, 380, 381, 382, 385, 387, 389, 391, 393.
- abandonment of. See Abandonment and Inaction.
- bond of, 47, 53, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 65, 82, 85, 107, 108, 115, 123, 125, 307. See Taint.
- burning of. See Burning.
- capacity for, 65, 104, 241.
- causes of, 65, 123, 278.
- dedication of, to Brahman, 55, 61, 64, 83, 85, 100, 105, 128, 168. See Renunciation.
- defect in, cured, 121.
- destruction of, 241, 242. See Destruction.
- different from soul. See Soul.
- evil, 121, 127, 235, 238, 240, 242, 257, 302, 320.
- exhaustion of, 236, 237, 240, 241, 242.
- ferocious. See Ferocious.
- freedom from. See Freedom.
- fruit of. See Fruit.
- instrument of. See Instrument.
- man of, 73, 255, 256.
- marks of, 239, 321.
- meritorious, 72, 76, 109, 130, 233, 238, 240, 242, 257, 314, 320, 321.
- motive to, 48, 49. See Duty and Fruit.

- Action, ordinary and special, 102.
- organs of, 337. See Organs and Senses.
- performance of, 108, 378.
- prescribed, 53, 54, 67, 115, 117, 118, 120, 122, 124, 125, 126, 305, 309, 353, 381. See Duty.
- prohibited, 60, 117, 119, 120, 125, 309.
- prompting to, 123.
- pursuit of, 59, 60, 63.
- release from. See Freedom.
- ripening of, 241.
- success of, 59.
- to propitiate Supreme. See Propitiation.
- unnecessary, 54.
- vain, 82. And see Destruction, Success.
- world of, 239.
- Active mind, 70.
- principle. See Soul, not active.
- Activity, 65, 88, 104, 108, 110, 114, 160, 185, 319, 332, 334, 351, 358, 374. See Soul, not active.
- Acute, 163, 164.
- Adhibhūta, 77, 78.
- Adhidaiva, 77, 78.
- Adhiyagñā, 77, 78.
- Adhvaryu. See Priest.
- Adhyātma, 77, 90, 316, 338, 342. See Soul, science of.
- Ādityas, 88, 92, 94, 219.
- Admonition. See Advice.
- Advice, 174, 380.
- Adviser, 105.
- Æon. See Kalpa.
- Afar, 104, 369.
- Affection, 50, 51, 56, 59, 68, 103, 124, 127, 166, 178, 193, 194, 246, 250, 322, 324, 342, 382. See also Aversion, Favourite.
- Affliction, 101, 107, 122, 284, 322, 323, 381. See Trouble.
- Affluence, 304.
- Affright. See Fear.
- Age, 59, 79, 80, 330, 353. See Kalpa.
- old, 44, 77, 103, 109, 140, 151, 170, 187, 194, 233, 247, 249, 250, 289, 349, 356, 371, 384.
- Agent, 55, 65, 123, 124, 278. See Soul.
- Agitation, 42, 50, 56, 66, 68, 108, 110, 344, 366, 369.
- of world, 101. And see Perturbation, Vexation.
- Agni, 219, 220, 345.
- Agnihotra, 129, 191, 321.
- Agnishṭoma, 158.
- Agreeable, 50, 66, 85, 101, 103, 110, 118, 119, 122, 151, 177, 183, 189, 246, 278, 312, 360, 362, 370, 371, 380, 383, 385.
- Agriculture, 127.
- Āgyabhāga, 676.
- Āhavanīya, 262.
- Ailment, 233, 237, 245, 321, 343, 356. See Disease.
- Aims of life, 100, 117, 125, 156, 177, 314, 331, 378.
- Air, 73, 82, 179, 260, 289, 305, 316, 339, 343, 361, 368.
- Airāvata, 89.
- Aitareya-āranyaka, 87, 90, 102, 123, 180, 239, 249, 250, 259, 339.
- brāhmaṇa, 19, 221, 265, 276, 277, 280.
- upanishad, 120, 123, 153, 179, 187, 189, 191.
- Ākhyānas, 145, 170.
- Alarka, 296, 297, 298, 299.
- Alarm at sight of universal form, 94, 96, 98.
- Alexander the Great, 223.
- Alike to all, 65, 68, 70, 71, 85, 101, 106, 110, 128, 292, 356, 379, 392, 393. See Equability.
- All-comprehending. See Universal form.
- All-pervading. See Pervading principle.
- All, supreme, 97.
- Alms, 43, 216, 360, 361, 362, 363.
- Alone. See Solitary.
- Altar, 262.
- Amazement, 93, 94, 130, 300. See Alarm.
- Ambarīsha, 301, 303.
- Ambiguous. See Equivocal.
- Amusement, 97, 251. See Recreation.
- Analysar, 173.
- Analysis, 174.
- Ānandagiri, 18, 49, 87, 113, 159, 186, 251, 266.
- Ananta, 89.
- Anantagītā, 28.
- Anantavigaya, 38.
- Ancestors, 41. See Manes.
- Ancient being. See Primeval.
- Ancients, 59, 78, 86, 87, 260, 340, 369, 378, 391. See Elders.
- Ancient times, those who know about, 101. See Old times.

- Anger. See Wrath.  
 Âṅgīrasa, 314.  
 Animals. See Beasts and Offerings.  
 Animate, 74, 244, 356.  
 Animating new body, 45, 112.  
 Animosity, 60, 99, 167, 182, 183, 281, 321. See Hatred.  
 Anointment, 93. \*  
 Antelope, 155, 295.  
 Antipathy, 168. See Animosity.  
 Antiquary, Indian, 27, 28, 139, 222.  
 Anugītā, 158, 161, 162, 166, 256.  
 — age of, 206 seq.  
 — authorship of, 204 seq.  
 — comparison of, with Āpastamba, 215 seq.; with Gītā, 207 seq.  
 — divisions of, 198, 200, 201, 204.  
 — extent of, 198 seq., 204.  
 — geography of, 222.  
 — gods mentioned in, 219, 220.  
 — interpolations, 205.  
 — language of, 226.  
 — mountains mentioned in, 222.  
 — numbering of chapters, 201.  
 — Parvan of Bhārata, 197, 199, 200, 310.  
 — recapitulation of Gītā, 197.  
 — scheme of, 197 seq., 206.  
 — state of society disclosed in, 207, 208.  
 — style of. See language of.  
 — substance of sections of, 201.  
 — tribes in, 222.  
 — upanishad, 200.  
 — verse of, 226.  
 Anus, 258, 261.  
 Anushrubh, 142.  
 Anxiety, 48, 302, 366, 367.  
 Apāna, 258, 338. See Life-winds.  
 Āpastamba, 14, 20, 21, 22 seq., 24, 29, 30, 32, 69, 101, 103, 118, 120, 147, 176, 177, 208, 210, 211, 215, 216, 217, 218, 225, 236, 243, 275, 291, 302, 322, 353, 358, 359, 360, 361, 362, 365, 367, 370, 375, 389.  
 Ape, 39.  
 Appearance. See Entity and Real.  
 Application. See Assiduous.  
 Appointment, 365.  
 Apportionment, 59.  
 Apprehension, 82, 257, 283, 314.  
 Approaching Brahman, 59, 75. See Accessible.  
 — preceptor. See Preceptor.  
 Appropriating, 60, 243, 365.  
 Appurtenances, 357. See Belongings.  
 Apsarases, 178, 347.  
 Aquatic beings, 89.  
 Arani, 284, 308.  
 Āranyakas, 17.  
 Argument, 90, 102, 124, 276, 323.  
 Arguna, 3, 4, 6, 9, 12, 17, 28, 34, 35, 37, 38, 40, 42, 47, 48, 52, 53, 54, 56, 58, 59, 62, 63, 69, 71, 72, 73, 75, 76, 77, 79, 81, 82, 84, 87, 88, 89, 90, 91, 92, 93, 96, 98, 99, 109, 117, 121, 122, 125, 128, 130, 131, 135, 197, 198, 205, 229, 230, 293, 294, 310, 393, 394. See Bhārata, Favourite, Forgetfulness, Kuntī, and Prithā.  
 — Mīra, 199, 200, 201, 204, 227, 232, 236, 237, 238, 239, 240, 241, 242, 243, 244, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 259, 260, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 269, 270, 271, 272, 273, 276, 277, 278, 280, 281, 282, 284, 286, 287, 288, 289, 290, 292, 293, 300, 301, 302, 303, 304, 305, 306, 308, 309, 310, 312, 313, 314, 315, 316, 318, 319, 320, 323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329, 330, 331, 332, 333, 334, 335, 339, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 346, 347, 348, 349, 350, 352, 353, 354, 355, 356, 357, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, 372, 373, 374, 375, 376, 379, 380, 381, 384, 385, 386, 387, 388, 389, 390, 391, 392, 393.  
 Arka, 219, 346.  
 Arms, 93, 94, 381.  
 — mighty, 39, 45, 51, 55, 58, 63, 64, 71, 72, 74, 86, 94, 107, 121, 123, 229, 252, 393, 394.  
 — thousand, 94, 98, 293, 294.  
 — unnumbered, 94.  
 Army, 38, 294.  
 Array. See Battle-array.  
 Arrogance, 116, 128. See Boastful, Egotism, Pride, and Vanity.  
 Arrows, 42, 294, 296, 297, 298, 299, 300, 301.  
 Arteries, 257.  
 Articulation. See Speech.  
 Artisans, 208, 365.  
 Aryaman, 89.  
 Āryas, 222, 223.  
 Āryavidyāsudhākara, 27, 33, 224.  
 Asad, 120, 121.  
 Asafoetida, 383.

- Ascent, 321, 385.  
 Ascertainment of truth, 64.  
 Ascetics, 61, 63, 66, 78, 123, 159, 212, 217, 232, 246, 289, 290, 292, 293, 312, 316, 354, 358, 363.  
 Ashes, 62, 276.  
 Asita, 87.  
 Asking alms, 362.  
 Asoka, 223.  
 Aspirations. See Expectations.  
 Āsramas, 30, 216, 307, 315. See Orders.  
 Ass, 20.  
 Assault, 41.  
 Assemblages of men. See Society.  
 Assiduous, 50, 63, 72, 73, 83, 101, 112, 115, 125, 161, 253, 255, 360, 361. See Industry.  
 Assimilation with Brahman, 52, 59, 66, 69, 70, 85, 99, 100, 104, 106, 107, 109, 110, 128, 156, 176, 178, 253, 308, 313, 316, 342, 370.  
 Association, 233, 355, 359, 370, 374, 378. See Company, Dissociation, and Society.  
 — with preceptor, 177, 178.  
 — with senses, 288.  
 Astringent, 363, 384.  
 Astrologers, 377.  
 Asura, 83. See Demons.  
 Āśvalāyana, 61, 68, 119, 236, 358.  
 Āsvamedha, 156.  
 — Parvan, 197.  
 — Parvan, sections of, 198 seq.  
 Āsvattha, 89, 111, 189, 247.  
 Āsvatthāman, 38.  
 Āsvins, 92, 94.  
 Asylum, 84, 129, 361, 363. See Resort.  
 Atharva-veda, 18, 19, 180.  
 Atheism, 115.  
 Atmosphere. See Air.  
 Atom, 78, 194.  
 Atomists, 377.  
 Atmā, 314.  
 Attachment, 48, 50, 52, 53, 54, 55, 59, 60, 61, 64, 65, 66, 67, 82, 99, 101, 103, 104, 107, 109, 111, 116, 118, 122, 124, 125, 127, 154, 161, 166, 181, 182, 232, 236, 241, 242, 246, 250, 289, 322, 324, 328, 341, 357, 362, 364, 365, 367, 368, 371, 377, 379, 391, 392.  
 Attack of vice, 167.  
 Attainment to Brahman, 52, 54, 59, 60, 61, 62, 64, 71, 75, 76, 78, 79, 80, 81, 82, 84, 85, 86, 87, 99, 100, 104, 106, 116, 127, 129, 162, 164, 167, 173, 174, 175, 185, 189, 191, 230, 257, 287, 339, 348, 367, 369, 370, 372, 373, 385, 392. See Brahman.  
 Attendance, 324. See Preceptor.  
 Attention, 251. See Assiduous.  
 Attraction, 327.  
 Attractive, 189.  
 Attrition, 308.  
 Auspicious act, 120, 324.  
 Austerity. See Penance.  
 Author. See Creator.  
 Authority, 54, 117, 243.  
 Automaton. See Free-will and Machine.  
 Autumn, 159.  
 Avarice, 41, 43, 108, 109, 114, 117, 155, 166, 181, 284, 302, 303, 320, 332, 333, 344, 357, 361, 378. See Covetous.  
 Aversion, 50, 51, 56, 62, 63, 68, 76, 101, 103, 110, 122, 123, 124, 128, 322, 363. See Affection.  
 Avimukta, 257.  
 Awake. See Day and Night.  
 Axe, 294.  
 Back, 367.  
 Backbiting, 114, 168, 183, 323, 326, 364.  
 Bâdarāyana, 30, 33.  
 Bahu. See Bhūman.  
 Bali-offering, 216.  
 Balls of food for ancestors, 41.  
 Bamboo, 346, 359.  
 Bâza Bhatta, 13, 27.  
 Banks of rivers, 344.  
 Bark, 361.  
 Barley-seed, 353.  
 Basis. See Real.  
 Bathing, 48, 64, 122, 361, 364, 375, 377.  
 Battle, Arguna directed to engage in, 44, 47, 55, 78, 96, 127, 128.  
 — array, 4, 37.  
 — field, 3, 4, 5, 37, 38, 42, 294, 296, 323, 394.  
 — righteous, 46.  
 — running away from, 127.  
 Baudhāyana, 32.  
 Beams. See Rays.  
 Beasts, 89, 90, 105, 109, 116, 167, 284, 289, 290, 321, 345, 353, 356, 389.  
 Beauty, 177, 178, 238, 256, 260, 261,

- 264, 267, 268, 270, 272, 275, 286,  
307, 323, 347.
- Bed, 389.
- Bees, 155, 188, 309.
- Beggar. See Ascetic and Asking.
- Beginning and end and middle, 44,  
46, 66, 88, 90, 93, 94, 111, 307,  
335, 351, 352.
- void of, 44, 86, 94, 103, 104, 106,  
157, 313.
- Behaviour. See Conduct.
- Being. See Spirits.
- Ancient, 96, 97. See Primal.
- Best, 77, 87, 92, 113, 114, 377.
- Divine, 78, 87, 186, 187, 188, 189,  
190, 191, 192.
- Eternal, 87, 94.
- Primal, 111.
- Supreme, 54, 57, 78, 81, 83, 85,  
111, 113, 157, 188, 281, 284.  
See Brahman and God.
- Beings, beginning of. See Source.
- created. See Creatures.
- embodied. See Embodied soul.
- friend of. See Friend.
- higher, 111.
- living. See Creatures.
- lord of. See Lord.
- seed of. See Seed.
- tempers of. See Tempers.
- two, 113.
- two classes of, 93, 115.
- within all, 113, 194. See Within.
- Belief. See Convictions and Faith.
- Belongings, 60, 68, 128, 160, 170,  
247, 324, 365, 369, 373. See  
Appurtenances.
- Beloved. See Favourite, Husband.
- Belt. See Girdle.
- Beneficial speech, 119.
- Benefit, 76, 178, 182, 184, 185, 189,  
309, 324, 325, 360.
- Benevolence, universal, 66, 94, 99,  
100, 101, 114, 322.
- Beyond. See Highest.
- Bhagavadgītā, 135, 137, 138, 142,  
143, 144, 145, 146, 147, 148, 150,  
151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 158, 159,  
160, 164, 165, 167, 168, 170, 171,  
172, 173, 175, 176, 177, 179, 180,  
184, 185, 186, 188, 189, 193, 194,  
197, 203, 207, 208, 210, 215, 218,  
222, 226, 230, 231, 232, 233, 234,  
235, 236, 239, 240, 242, 243, 244,  
245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251,  
253, 254, 255, 256, 257, 258, 260,  
261, 262, 266, 270, 277, 278, 279,  
281, 282, 283, 284, 285, 288, 289,  
291, 292, 295, 305, 306, 307, 310,  
313, 315, 317, 318, 319, 320, 321,  
323, 324, 325, 326, 327, 328, 329,  
330, 331, 332, 334, 335, 338, 342,  
343, 344, 345, 346, 349, 351, 352,  
353, 355, 358, 359, 360, 362, 363,  
364, 365, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370,  
371, 372, 373, 375, 378, 380, 381,  
384, 385, 387, 388, 390, 391, 392,  
393, 394.
- Bhagavadgītā, appropriateness of, 4,  
6, 135.
- author of, 6, 28.
- Brahmanization of, 4, 6, 21, 22.
- character of, 4, 7, 8, 10, 13, 17, 25.
- connexion of, with Bhārata. See  
appropriateness, supra.
- date of, 17, 19, and Introduction,  
passim.
- dissemination of, 129, 130.
- frame of, 2, 3.
- genuineness of, 2, 4, 5, 6.
- inconsistencies of, 11.
- language. See style, infra.
- names of, 2, 28.
- non-systematic. See character,  
supra.
- Parvan of the Mahābhārata, 2.
- Phalarutī in, 143.
- Philosophy of. See character,  
supra.
- position in Sanskrit literature, 17,  
34, 138.
- relation to Buddhism, 24, 34.
- relation to Vedas, 16, 17. See  
character, supra.
- relation to Yoga-sūtras, 8.
- responsible for want of history, 1.
- scheme of, 2, 3.
- stanzas, common with other  
works, 18, 27.
- stanzas of, number of, 35.
- study of. See dissemination,  
supra.
- style and language of, 4, 11, 13,  
14, 15.
- teaching of, 16.
- terminology of, 11.
- text of, 34.
- upanishad, 2, 200.
- verse of, 15. See History.
- Bhagavān, meaning of, 157.
- Bhāṇḍārkar, Professor R. G., 28, 107,  
137, 199, 227.

- Bharadvāga, 314.  
 Bharata, 39, 43, 44, 46, 55, 57, 59, 63, 74, 75, 76, 79, 80, 92, 102, 105, 106, 107, 108, 111, 114, 115, 117, 119, 122, 126, 129, 149, 150, 170, 176, 194, 231, 254, 255, 256, 394.  
 Bhārata. See Bharata and Mahābhārata.  
 — varsha, 39.  
 Bhārgava, 314.  
 Bhārtrihari, 14, 32, 220, 221, 239.  
 Bhāsa, 222, 346.  
 Bhāshya. See Patañjali.  
 Bhārogī, 33.  
 Bhāu Dājī, Dr., 27.  
 Bhavabhūti, 13.  
 Bhikshu-sūtra, 32, 33.  
 Bhima, 37, 38.  
 Bhishma, 3, 38, 39, 42, 95, 96.  
 — Parvan, 2, 6, 40.  
 — roaring of, 38.  
 Bhramara, 188.  
 Bhṛigu, 89, 294. See Bhārgava.  
 Bhūman, 173.  
 Bhūr, 174, 393.  
 Bhūtas, 85, 118, 306, 345, 354.  
 Bhūtis, 92.  
 Bile, 343.  
 Billow, 388.  
 Bilva, 360.  
 Bipeds, 171, 209, 339.  
 Birds, 90, 109, 142, 164, 189, 321, 345, 353, 371, 389.  
 Birth, 45, 48, 58, 59, 76, 86, 103, 105, 109, 110, 170, 176, 177, 194, 231, 233, 237, 239, 241, 245, 247, 257, 302, 313, 339, 341, 390.  
 See Death, and Meditation at time of death.  
 — after lapse of time, 339.  
 — as devotee, 72.  
 — bond of, 49, 62, 115, 201.  
 — causes of, 48, 105.  
 — certainty of, 45, 151.  
 — divine, 29, 59.  
 — freedom from, 56, 59, 67, 79, 105, 107, 109, 188, 241.  
 — in low species, 152.  
 — knowledge of, 58, 72.  
 — low, 85.  
 — number of, 49, 58.  
 — of deity, 59.  
 — previous. See Life.  
 — repeated, 49, 58, 59, 67, 73, 75, 79, 105, 107, 154, 185, 191, 242, 302, 325, 361, 367, 371, 378, 387.  
 See Return.  
 Birth, sinful, 85, 255.  
 Biting, 282.  
 Bitter, 118, 363, 383, 384.  
 Black, 179, 384.  
 Blame and praise, 101, 110, 185, 324, 392.  
 Blank, 376.  
 Blind man, 155.  
 Blindness, 320, 322.  
 Bliss, 52, 66. See Brahmic state.  
 Blood, 43, 155, 241, 252, 275, 335, 342.  
 Boar, 37.  
 Boastful, 167, 170, 181, 324. See Arrogant.  
 Boat, 31, 381, 382.  
 — of knowledge, 62.  
 Bodily and mental, 247, 251, 359, 362, 364.  
 Bodily, mental, vocal, 119 seq.  
 Body, 55, 64, 69, 71, 72, 77, 83, 92, 102, 103, 104, 105, 106, 107, 108, 111, 112, 113, 118, 123, 128, 155, 173, 176, 177, 178, 179, 186, 187, 191, 193, 235, 236, 237, 240, 242, 245, 246, 248, 249, 250, 252, 253, 257, 259, 262, 279, 288, 289, 290, 302, 307, 326, 331, 332, 342, 344, 345, 362, 367, 376, 391, 392.  
 — acquisition of, 44.  
 — city of nine portals, 65, 108, 317.  
 — development of, 252.  
 — distinct from soul, 44, 45, 375.  
 — distribution of, on death, 290, 302.  
 — leaving, 59, 66, 78, 79, 112, 235, 237, 238, 239, 250, 252, 253, 255, 257, 266, 331.  
 — liquids in, 342. See Liquids.  
 — movement of, 343.  
 — of Krishna, 92, 93.  
 — passages of, 79. See Passages.  
 — perishable, 44, 45.  
 — produced from qualities, 109.  
 — release from. See leaving, supra.  
 — ruler of, 112.  
 — source of, 244.  
 — subtle, 190, 333.  
 — support of, 53, 60, 159, 291, 318, 359, 363, 366.  
 — supporter of, 228, 262.  
 — two kinds of, 160.  
 See Bond and Deities.  
 Boehlingk, 144.  
 Boisterous. See Mind and Senses.  
 Bond, 66, 107, 146, 246, 247, 248,



- 317, 323, 342, 351, 355, 368, 371, 391.  
 Bond, of qualities, 107. See Action and Birth.  
 Bone, 252, 343.  
 Books, 57, 326.  
 Boon. See Present.  
 Borrowing. See Common passages.  
 Bosom, 239.  
 Boughs, small, 313, 371. See Branches.  
 Bows, 37, 39, 42, 293, 294, 296, 311. See Salutation.  
 Brahmâ, 79, 80, 93, 96, 219, 220, 231, 234, 244, 257, 264, 271, 312, 314, 315, 317, 323, 325, 328, 332, 333, 337, 339, 345, 352, 354, 355, 360, 372, 378, 385, 393. See Priest.  
 Brahma Gîtâ, 198 seq., 255, 310. See Anugîtâ.  
 Brahmakârin, 69, 79, 119, 146, 152, 153, 169, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 216, 242, 283, 284, 312, 316, 326, 354, 358, 360, 361, 362, 364.  
 --- Naish/bika, 377.  
 Brahman, 52, 56, 61, 62, 64, 65, 66, 70, 72, 77, 79, 81, 84, 87, 90, 91, 102, 103, 106, 107, 108, 110, 113, 120, 121, 127, 128, 146, 147, 149, 151, 152, 153, 156, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 167, 168, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 175, 178, 180, 181, 182, 185, 186, 187, 189, 190, 191, 192, 226, 230, 234, 235, 238, 241, 243, 244, 245, 246, 248, 250, 251, 252, 253, 255, 257, 258, 260, 265, 277, 282, 283, 284, 286, 287, 288, 296, 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 312, 313, 316, 317, 326, 327, 336, 339, 341, 342, 344, 347, 354, 367, 368, 369, 372, 375, 377, 386, 387, 391, 392. See God, Being-Supreme, Seat, and Vedas.  
 Brahmânanda. See Felicity.  
 Brahma-yagñâ, 61, 184.  
 Brahma-loka, 20.  
 Brahma-vidyâ, 166.  
 Brahma-sûtras, 31.  
 Brâhmana, 21, 22, 23, 24, 38, 48, 65, 86, 119, 120, 126, 147, 150, 158, 159, 160, 161, 165, 171, 172, 173, 174, 175, 179, 182, 185, 189, 193, 209, 210, 217, 218, 239, 245, 248, 252, 254, 255, 256, 261, 263, 264, 265, 266, 267, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 281, 284, 285, 288, 293, 295, 296, 299, 300, 303, 304, 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 311, 315, 320, 322, 325, 326, 329, 332, 338, 339, 345, 346, 347, 348, 353, 359, 360, 369, 374, 375, 376, 377, 380, 384, 387, 389, 393.  
 Brâhmana Gîtâ. See Brahma Gîtâ.  
 Brâhmana's wife. See Brâhmana.  
 Brâhmanas. See Vedas.  
 Brâhmanical age, 4.  
 Brâhmanism, 4, 6, 22, 25, 26.  
 Brahmic state, 52, 66, 176.  
 Branch. See Knowledge.  
 Branch and moon, 142, 146, 172  
 Branches downwards, 111.  
 — many, 47, 294, 313, 371.  
 Brave, 122, 160, 294, 300, 341. See Valour.  
 Breach. See Regulation and Duty.  
 Breast, 233. See Bosom.  
 Breath, 64, 67, 78, 201, 238, 252, 270, 276, 341. See Life-winds.  
 Bribing, 91.  
 Bridge of piety, 315, 348.  
 Brihadâranyakopanishad, 6, 81, 119, 149, 152, 153, 155, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 166, 171, 172, 173, 174, 178, 179, 181, 185, 186, 187, 189, 192, 193, 204, 208, 231, 239, 249, 251, 255, 258, 259, 261, 264, 268, 271, 274, 279, 283, 287, 289, 290, 295, 304, 313, 314, 324, 327, 342, 347, 353, 381, 389, 390, 391.  
 Brîhadratha, 180.  
 Brihaspati, 89, 214, 314, 346.  
 Brîhatsâman, 90, 180.  
 Brilliant, 78, 93, 187, 192, 287, 347.  
 Bringing forth. See Production.  
 Broad, 384.  
 Brooding on evil, 168.  
 Brothers, 40, 290.  
 Brothers-in-law, 40.  
 Brow, 67, 78, 257. See Head.  
 Brute force, 116.  
 Brutes. See Beasts.  
 Buddhism, 9, 20, 23, 24, 25, 26, 69, 146, 147, 212, 213, 214, 215, 224, 225, 226, 306, 376.  
 Bühler, J. G., Dr., 14, 20, 21, 27, 32, 33, 208, 213, 215, 224, 353.  
 Bull, 345.  
 Burden, beasts of, 321.  
 Burnell, Dr., 20, 31.  
 Burning taste, 118.  
 — of action by knowledge, 60, 62, 279.  
 — of Arguna's skin, 40.

- Burning of soul, 45.  
 Business, 183. See Management.  
 Butter, 83, 184, 276.  
 Butterflies, 95, 155  
 Buying and selling, 323.  
 Calamity, 50. See Distress.  
 Calmness, 119. See Tranquillity.  
 Calumny, 116, 129, 325. See Carping and Censoriousness.  
 Capacity of doing action. See Action and Activity.  
 Capital, 394.  
 Captivity, 207, 233. See Bond.  
 Car, great, 37, 38, 39, 42, 46, 381, 382, 386.  
 — without horse, 40.  
 Carelessness. See Heedlessness.  
 Carnal. See Love.  
 Carping, 56, 81, 130, 320, 364, 368. See Calumny.  
 Carriage. See Car.  
 Caste, 21, 23, 24, 25, 30, 59, 126, 129, 208, 217, 315, 316, 320, 322, 329, 358.  
 — author of, 59.  
 — commingling, 41, 45.  
 — rites of, 41.  
 Casting aside, 343, 344, 357.  
 Cataclysm, 94.  
 Cattle, 59, 127, 345, 389.  
 Cause, 96, 192, 247, 278, 309, 335, 383, 387, 388, 392. See Consequence.  
 — material, 58, 106, 113, 191, 244. See Action, Inconstant, Nature, and Source.  
 Caution, 63, 97. See Heedlessness and Circumspection.  
 Cave, 333, 363.  
 Celebration of God's name. See Glorification.  
 Celestial pleasures, 84.  
 Censoriousness, 166, 167, 181, 182, 183.  
 Censure, 150. See Blame.  
 Centering. See Concentration.  
 Ceremonies, 112, 169, 171, 172, 293, 321, 322, 353, 358, 361, 366, 370. See Rites.  
 Ceylon, 223.  
 Change, 157, 327, 331, 345, 356, 372. See Development and Unchangeable.  
 Channel. See Current.  
 Chanting verse, 15.  
 Characteristics. See Qualities.  
 Chariot, 187, 221, 294, 380. See Car.  
 Charioteer, 4, 338, 386.  
 Charioteer's son. See Karna.  
 Charity, 169, 324.  
 Charm. See Enamoured.  
 Chastity, 275.  
 Cheat, 91. See Crafty and Deceitful.  
 Check, 243, 306, 328, 357. See Restraint.  
 Childhood, 178. See Infancy.  
 Children, 63, 64, 116, 124, 154, 159, 161, 185, 246, 304. See Heroes.  
 Chili, 383.  
 Choristers. See Gandharvas.  
 Churning, 89.  
 Circular, 384.  
 Circumference, 306.  
 Circumspection, 364. See Caution.  
 City, 251, 318, 394. See Body.  
 Class, 65, 103.  
 Classical Sanskrit. See Kāvya.  
 Cleanliness, 68, 103, 114, 119, 126, 128, 359, 360, 363, 364. See Purity.  
 Clear, 383, 384, 392. See Mind and Undistinguished.  
 Cleverness, 128, 324.  
 Closing. See Eyelid.  
 Cloth, 45, 68, 217, 359, 360, 364, 384.  
 Cloud, 72, 179.  
 Cognition, 332.  
 Cold, 118, 238, 384.  
 Cold and heat, 44, 48, 68, 88, 101, 167, 284, 323, 356.  
 Colebrooke, H. T., 2, 7, 29, 32, 186, 225.  
 Collections, 188.  
 Colour, 92, 93, 94, 179, 247, 252, 258, 260, 285, 286, 342, 368. See Objects of sense.  
 Combination. See Production.  
 Combustible, 45.  
 Comfort, 95, 98, 118.  
 Coming and going, 44, 80, 84, 231.  
 Commentators on Gītā, 11, 35.  
 Commission. See Omission.  
 Common earnings. See Earnings.  
 — passages, 18, 27, 139, 140, 202 seq., 225, 354.  
 — people, 51.  
 Compact, 383, 385.  
 Companion, 40, 159. See Association.  
 Company, 97, 293, 359.  
 Comparison of one's own with others' pleasures and pains, 71.

- Compassion, 87, 101, 114, 231, 243, 326, 359, 362, 364. See Affection and Pity.
- Compounds, 13, 90.
- Comprehension. See Understanding.
- Comprehensiveness, 124, 372.
- Compulsion. See Free-will.
- Concealed. See Nature.
- Concentration, 12, 61, 65, 66, 68, 69, 73, 78, 79, 99, 100, 101, 105, 110, 128, 153, 160, 169, 181, 185, 189, 232, 242, 243, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 254, 255, 257, 279, 280, 285, 287, 299, 300, 301, 315, 326, 332, 340, 342, 344, 360, 361, 362, 363, 366, 368, 388, 389, 390, 394. See Intent.
- of breath. See Breath.
- Conch, 38, 39.
- Conclusion. See Resolution.
- Condition. See State.
- Conditioning of soul, 107.
- Conduct, 9, 115, 159, 170, 178, 232, 243, 283, 312, 320, 324, 341, 358, 359, 362, 364, 367, 368, 369, 378, 392. See Ill-conducted, and Goodness, Darkness, Passion, and Sinful.
- of one transcending qualities. See Qualities.
- of steady-minded man. See Steady-minded.
- unknown. See Unknown.
- Confidence, 326.
- Confinement of mind, 79. See Quiescence.
- Confluence, 287.
- Confusion, 43, 49, 50, 52, 59, 160, 182, 254, 269, 308, 377. See Distraction and Soul.
- Conjunction, 330.
- Connexions. See Kinsmen.
- Conquered. See Accomplishment.
- Conquest. See Victory.
- Conscience, 41.
- Consciousness, 82, 88, 102, 103, 176, 181, 188, 238, 239, 242, 245, 290, 334, 350, 356, 359.
- Consequences, 156, 124, 126. See Effect.
- Consonants, 348.
- Constancy. See Perseverance.
- Constant, 100, 120, 125, 248, 289, 331, 332, 360, 369, 375, 376.
- Constituents, 246, 318, 336, 343, 344. See Ingredient.
- Constitution, 236.
- Constraint. See Free-will.
- Consubstantial, 163.
- Consummation of devotion, 72.
- Contact with Brahman. See Assimilation.
- with knowledge, 72.
- with objects, 44, 66, 126, 154, 335, 343.
- Contamination. See Taint.
- Contemn, 246. See Despise.
- Contemplation, 47, 49, 50, 61, 100, 111, 156, 162, 169, 181, 234, 245, 283, 309, 389, 390.
- Contemporary Review, 5, 18.
- Contempt, 97, 120, 154.
- Contentment, 54, 60, 68, 86, 87, 101, 166, 168, 240, 286, 288, 302, 325, 326, 334, 361.
- Continence, 169, 361, 389.
- Continuous meditation, 78, 79, 100, 269.
- Control of nature. See Nature.
- of senses. See Restraint, Senses.
- of tongue. See Taciturnity.
- Controversialists, 90, 365.
- Contumely, 324.
- Conversation, 87, 232.
- Convictions, 55, 239, 304, 305.
- demoniac, 118.
- wrong, 52, 120, 320. See Notion, false.
- Cooked rice, 384.
- Cooking, 53, 279, 363.
- Copulative compound. See Compounds.
- Copyright, 5, 18. See Common passages.
- Coronet, 93, 96, 98.
- Corruption of women, 41.
- Cotton, 300.
- Counsellor, 280, 283.
- Counting of sins, 89.
- Country, 342.
- Courage, 48, 70, 90, 94, 102, 103, 114, 124, 125, 126, 127, 167, 168, 176, 182, 288, 301, 302, 325, 332, 373.
- Course of life. See Life.
- Cousin, Victor, 1.
- Covering, 375.
- Covetous, 125. See Avarice.
- Cow, 65, 89, 209, 265, 353.
- Cowell. See Maitrî Upanishad.
- Crafty, 125. See Cheat, Deceitful.
- Craving, 107, 166, 181, 342.

- Devout, 85, 394. See Pure.  
 Dexterity, 38, 127, 326, 362.  
 Dhaivata, 385.  
 Dhammapada, 35, 50, 51, 52, 69, 71, 84, 101, 102, 108, 110, 123, 241.  
 Dhanaṅgaya, 38, 48, 49, 63, 74, 93, 100, 125, 130, 230, 310, 394.  
 Dharma, 219, 223, 306.  
 Dhātu. See Elements.  
 Dhṛishṭadyumna, 39.  
 Dhṛishṭaketu, 37.  
 Dhṛitāśhira, 3, 35, 37, 39, 40, 41, 42, 43, 95, 135, 136, 141, 149, 150, 151, 155, 156, 157, 158, 162, 163, 164, 165, 166, 170, 174, 175, 179.  
 Dhyānayoga, 128.  
 Diadem. See Coronet.  
 Dialects &c. of South India, 222.  
 Dialogue, 5, 130, 263. And see Itihāsa.  
 Dice, 91.  
 Difference, apparent, 104, 105, 124, 193. See Soul, State, Unity.  
 Difficult deeds, 296.  
 — penance, 300.  
 Difficulty, 120, 128, 388, 389.  
 — of looking at Universal form, 93, 99.  
 — of worship, 100.  
 Diffusive, 383.  
 Digestion, 113, 236, 252, 273, 275.  
 Dignity, 74.  
 Din, 38, 39, 356.  
 Dinner, 97.  
 Directions. See Quarters.  
 Direct knowledge, 82.  
 Director, 281, 385.  
 Disagreeable. See Agreeable.  
 Disaster, 160.  
 Discarding of entities. See Indifference to worldly objects.  
 Discernment, 50, 53, 56, 67, 74, 76, 91, 110, 112, 114, 117, 118, 123, 125, 126, 154, 155, 166, 183, 256, 300, 331.  
 Disciple. See Pupil.  
 Discomfort, 380.  
 Discontent. See Contentment.  
 Discrimination. See Discernment.  
 Discuss, 93, 98.  
 Discussion, 276. See Controversialists.  
 Disdain. See Arrogance.  
 Disease, 103, 118. See Ailment.  
 Disgrace, 42, 46, 86. See Honour.  
 Disguise of Dharma, 223.  
 Disgust, 151, 324.  
 Dishonest, 243.  
 Dishonour. See Honour.  
 Disorder. See Body and Mind.  
 Disparagement of gods &c., 209, 214, 320.  
 Disposition, 43, 117, 182.  
 — evil, 320.  
 Disrespect, 83, 97, 159, 324, 368.  
 Dissatisfaction. See Disgust.  
 Dissociation. See Association and Severance.  
 Dissolution, 80, 82, 84, 92, 112, 189, 192, 317, 335, 344, 387. See Destruction and Order of dissolution.  
 Distinction, 83, 124, 126, 157, 285, 331, 335, 341, 370, 374, 375, 381. See Difference.  
 Distinguished, 168.  
 Distinguishing power, 318. See Discernment.  
 Distraction, 49, 67, 269, 377. See Confusion.  
 Distress, 75, 101, 368. See Calamity.  
 Distribution of food, 119, 273, 275.  
 Ditch, 155, 302.  
 Diversified. See Variegated.  
 Diversity, 313, 344, 374.  
 Dividing soul. See Indivisible.  
 Divine Being. See Being.  
 — form. See Form.  
 — nature, 75, 83, 367, 383.  
 — speech, 265.  
 — state. See Brahmic state.  
 Divinities, 59, 75, 76, 77, 84, 115, 123, 178. See Deities.  
 Division, 327, 381.  
 — of honey, 188.  
 Doctrine, esoteric &c., 149.  
 — holy, 82, 185, 255, 256.  
 Doer. See Agent and Soul.  
 Dog, 20, 65, 142, 160.  
 Dolphin, 90.  
 Domain. See Kingdom.  
 Domination of Supreme, 75.  
 Dominion. See Kingdom.  
 Door, 270.  
 Doubt, 72, 260, 375, 376. See Misgivings, Objects of sense.  
 — secret and open, 149.  
 Downfall, 233, 355. See Fall.  
 Downwards. See Branches and Up.  
 Drag, 386.  
 Drama. See Kāvya.  
 Draupadī, 37, 39.

- Dravidas*, 225, 295.  
*Dream*, 249, 269, 387, 392.  
*Drink*, 113, 159, 183, 236, 259. See  
     Objects of sense and Senses.  
*Drinking*, 48, 279, 354, 389.  
*Driving*. See *Car*.  
*Drona*, 37, 39, 42, 95, 96.  
*Drooping of Arguna's limbs*, 40.  
     See *Despondency*.  
*Drupada*, 37, 39.  
*Drying up of mouth*, 40.  
   — of organs, 43.  
   — of souls, 45.  
*Dulness*, 320, 391. See *Ignorance*.  
*Dumb*, 321.  
*Duryodhana*, 37, 38, 39.  
   — leaders of his army, 39.  
*Dushyanta*, 39.  
*Dust*, 57.  
*Duty*, 21, 43, 46, 54, 55, 56, 59, 67,  
     74, 108, 114, 115, 116, 117, 118,  
     119, 120, 122, 125, 126, 127, 128,  
     129, 157, 178, 209, 210, 231, 247,  
     255, 291, 295, 296, 302, 322, 325,  
     326, 329, 348, 359, 360, 361, 362,  
     364, 365, 378, 393. See *Ac-*  
     *complishment*, *Action*, *pre-*  
     *scribed and prohibited*, *Right*  
     *and wrong*.  
*Dvārakā*, 198, 230, 394.  
*Dwelling in Brahman*, 71, 75, 80, 82,  
     84, 85, 100, 106, 194. See *Assi-*  
     *milation and Attainment*.  
   — of a *Brāhmaṇa* &c., 159. See  
     *House and Residence*.  
   — of a donor, 185.  
  
*Eagle*, 90.  
*Earnings*, 54, 60, 363, 364. See *Gain*.  
*Ears*, 65, 103, 112, 253, 259, 261, 290.  
     See *Senses*.  
*Earth*, 73, 74, 94, 102, 112, 113, 126,  
     156, 179, 187, 192, 260, 261, 290,  
     291, 303, 304, 305, 339, 343, 352,  
     364, 365, 381.  
   — sovereignty of, 40.  
*Ease*, 65, 314.  
*East*, 354.  
*Easy*, 82.  
*Eating*, 61, 62, 64, 69, 85, 113, 118,  
     236, 269, 279, 321, 353, 358, 362,  
     363, 364, 365.  
*Eclipses*, 224, 330.  
*Edge, sharp*. See *Arrows*.  
*Effect*, 119, 383, 388. See *Cause*.  
*Effects, household*, 253.  
  
*Effeminate*, 42.  
*Effort, personal*, 46. See *Assiduous*.  
*Effulgence*, 94, 95. See *Radiance*  
     *and Refulgence*.  
*Eggs*, 321, 339, 353.  
*Ego and non-ego*, 377.  
*Egoism*, 52, 55, 65, 74, 101, 102, 103,  
     118, 123, 124, 128, 153, 246, 280,  
     287, 313, 317, 318, 326, 332, 333,  
     334, 335, 336, 338, 350, 355, 356,  
     362, 366, 368, 370, 371, 382, 383,  
     385, 389, 390, 392.  
*Egotism*, 118, 124, 128, 268. See  
     *Arrogance*, *Pride*, and *Vanity*.  
*Eight*, 373.  
*Elders*, 291. See *Ancients*.  
*Elements*, 84, 102, 179, 181, 238, 245,  
     246, 247, 334, 335, 340, 343, 346,  
     348, 352, 353, 355, 357, 368, 371,  
     376, 377, 382, 385, 386, 387, 388  
     391.  
   — gross. See *Constituents and Ele-*  
     *ments*.  
   — subtle, 186, 285, 287, 313, 317.  
*Elephant*, 65, 89, 155, 208, 345.  
*Elevated place*, 68.  
*Elevation of self*. See *Exaltation*.  
*Eleven*, 318, 336.  
*Emanation*, 87, 88, 89, 91, 106, 111,  
     127.  
*Emancipated*. See *Emancipation*.  
*Emancipation*, 48, 50, 52, 54, 58, 59,  
     67, 69, 72, 73, 89, 90, 99, 111,  
     115, 120, 122, 125, 127, 146, 156,  
     157, 162, 165, 170, 176, 178, 184,  
     189, 190, 191, 221, 231, 232, 242,  
     243, 245, 246, 247, 248, 249, 252,  
     253, 254, 255, 265, 276, 278, 280,  
     284, 286, 287, 293, 301, 306, 307,  
     309, 310, 311, 312, 313, 314, 317,  
     322, 325, 326, 331, 333, 336, 344,  
     362, 363, 364, 366, 367, 368, 370,  
     371, 374, 375, 388, 390, 391, 392,  
     393, 394.  
   — path of, 47, 48, 54, 58, 72, 73.  
*Embodied soul*, 44, 45, 46, 50, 51, 57,  
     63, 65, 77, 100, 107, 108, 109,  
     117, 122, 154, 158.  
*Embodiment of Brahman*, 110.  
*Embryo*, 389.  
*Emperor*, 72, 232.  
*Empty*. See *House*.  
*Emulation*. See *Superiority*.  
*Enamoured*, 96, 107, 334.  
*End, evil*, 72, 81, 103, 243.  
   — of the great cause, 192, 287.

- Fire, discarding, 67.  
 — of destruction, 95.  
 — of knowledge, 60, 62.  
     See Brahman and Sense.  
 Firm, 45, 49, 101. See Fixed.  
 Firmness in vows, 83.  
 — of belief, 77.  
 — of mind, 49.  
 — of resolution, 70, 125. See Courage, Faith, and Understanding.  
 First, 161, 345, 352 seq.  
 First-born. See First.  
 Fish, 90, 155, 374.  
 Fisherman, 382.  
 Fit donee &c See Gift.  
 Fixed firmly, 29, 89, 111.  
 Fixing. See Concentration.  
 Flame. See Fire.  
 Flamingo, 138, 189.  
 Flesh, 252, 335, 343, 367.  
 Flickerings, 69.  
 Flippancy, 183.  
 Flower and fruit, 85, 93, 285, 286, 309, 313, 365, 371, 388.  
 — bunches, 313.  
 Flowery talk, 47.  
 Flowing element, 342.  
 Foam and water, 104.  
 Foe. See Enemy.  
 — terror of, 42, 43, 58, 62, 76, 82, 84, 91, 97, 99, 126, 232, 234, 311.  
 Foetus, 57, 144, 176, 240, 242.  
 Following. See Imitation and Obedience.  
 Folly, 126. See Frenzy.  
 Fondness, 74. See Acquisition.  
 Food, 83, 118, 119, 144, 156, 159, 188, 216, 233, 235, 238, 252, 254, 270, 279, 343, 353, 360, 363, 364, 388.  
     See Eating.  
 — cooking for oneself only, 53.  
 — digestion and distribution of, 273, 277.  
 — fourfold, 113.  
 — moderation in. See Eating.  
 — origin of creatures, 54.  
 Forbearance. See Forgiveness.  
 Force. See Brute force.  
 Forest, 173, 259, 284, 285, 286, 288, 307, 342, 361, 362, 363, 372, 386.  
 Forester, 217, 307, 316, 345, 354, 358, 362.  
 Forest-products, 361.  
 Forgetfulness of Arguna, 230.  
 — of Krishna, 230.  
 • — of one's nature, 50, 152, 154.  
 Forgiveness, 86, 90, 101, 103, 114, 126, 176, 181, 182, 183, 320, 321, 325, 326, 359, 362, 373.  
 Form divine, 92, 93, 229.  
 — divine, entry into. See Entrance.  
 — divine, sight of, desired by gods, 99.  
 — divine, wonderful, 94.  
 — fierce, 95. See Terrible.  
 — human. See Human.  
 — infinite, 97, 98.  
 — material of Brahman, 58.  
 — of Brahman. See Brahman.  
 — universal, 97, 98, 99, 130. See Degradation.  
 Former life. See Life, previous.  
 Formless, 233, 247.  
 Forms, many, 83, 92, 93, 274. See Real.  
 — of all, 93.  
 — of nature, 74.  
 Fortnight, 81, 188, 316, 330, 352, 356.  
 Fortune, 90, 131.  
 Four-handed, 98.  
 Fragrance, 74, 247, 257, 258, 286, 291, 309. See Objects of sense, Perfume, and Senses.  
 Free, 60, 65, 243, 342.  
 Freedom from action, 52, 54, 56, 127, 256, 257, 362.  
 — from delusion, 75, 76.  
 — of will. See Desire and Free-will.  
 Freeman, E. A., 5, 18, 203.  
 Free-will, 53, 56, 80, 82, 128, 156, 157.  
 Frenzy, 115, 116, 151, 168, 183, 323. See Folly.  
 Friend, 40, 41, 58, 67, 68, 72, 84, 97, 98, 101, 110, 167, 181, 183, 184, 233, 246, 290, 295, 364.  
 Friendly, 101, 342.  
 Frivolous, 308.  
 Fruit, connexion of, with action, 65.  
 — of action, 48, 49, 58, 59, 60, 65, 67, 73, 76, 81, 84, 85, 100, 101, 109, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 125, 126, 153, 156, 158, 165, 188, 191, 236, 240, 243, 264, 264, 267, 312, 325, 326, 348, 355, 365, 369, 373, 380, 382.  
 — of Sāṅkhya and Yoga, 64.  
 — of worship, 76, 81, 84. See Flower, Phalaruti, and Tree.  
 Frustration of desire, 50. See Desire.  
 Fuel, 62, 247, 259, 261, 268, 283, 286, 290, 291, 307, 308, 342.  
 Fugitive. See Perishable.  
 Full of Brahman, 59.

- Funeral rites. See Balls of food.  
 Future, 76, 79, 90, 170, 194, 269, 314, 325, 331, 366, 392. See Entities and World.  
 Gadfly, 284.  
 Gāgasa, 394.  
 Gāhnavī. See Ganges.  
 Gain and loss, 47, 151, 170, 246. See Earnings.  
 Gainas, 224, 225, 226, 364.  
 Gamadagni, 294, 295, 300.  
 Gambling, 324. See Game.  
 Gambu, 346.  
 Game, 91. See Gambling.  
 Gamut, 385.  
 Ganaka, 5, 54, 215, 222, 303, 304, 306.  
 Ganamegaya, 229.  
 Ganārdana, 41, 42, 52, 88, 99, 233, 393.  
 Ganas, 346.  
 Gandhāra, 385.  
 Gandharvas, 89, 94, 178, 347, 387.  
 Gandīva, 40.  
 Gaṅgam, 223.  
 Ganges, 90, 222, 354.  
 Gapa, 89, 184.  
 Gārhapatya, 262.  
 Garrulity, 168, 181. See Taciturnity.  
 Garuda, 90.  
 Gasp, 239.  
 Gastric. See Fire.  
 Gaudapāda, 160, 324, 376.  
 Gautama, 208, 213, 218, 224, 236, 314, 353, 354, 359, 362, 363, 365. See Buddhism.  
 Gayadratha, 96.  
 Gāyatrī, 90, 353.  
 Gem, 384.  
 General, 89.  
 — his position in army, 38.  
 Generation, 74, 89, 260, 287, 336. See Organs and Senses.  
 Generosity. See Gifts.  
 Genital organ, 261, 336, 338.  
 Gentle, 114, 119, 341.  
 Germs, 339.  
 Ghee, 384.  
 Gifts, 21, 22, 23, 81, 84, 85, 86, 98, 99, 114, 116, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 127, 147, 167, 169, 173, 182, 183, 184, 218, 242, 282, 320, 321, 324, 325, 326, 330, 340, 359, 364, 376. See Dakṣiṇā.  
 Girdle, 217, 360.  
 Gishnu, 219, 332.  
 Gītā. See Bhagavadgītā.  
 Given up to God. See Devotion.  
 Gladstone, W. E., 4.  
 Gleaning corn, 21, 217.  
 Glorification, 64, 83.  
 Glorious, 172, 289, 303.  
 Glory, 43, 74, 86, 91, 93, 96, 97, 98, 112, 126, 158, 164, 179, 180, 185, 186, 192, 276, 287, 308, 376, 377.  
 Glow-worm, 239.  
 Glutinous, 384.  
 Gñānakāṇḍa. See Vedas.  
 Gñānendra Sarasvatī, 33.  
 Gnat, 374, 379.  
 Goal, 59, 61, 65, 67, 69, 73, 75, 79, 80, 81, 83, 85, 86, 87, 97, 99, 100, 102, 104, 106, 107, 117, 156, 163, 167, 182, 231, 233, 255, 256, 258, 311, 315, 333, 349, 358, 372, 387, 388, 392.  
 Goat, 290, 321, 353.  
 God, 98, 192, 284.  
 — dear to man of knowledge, 75.  
 — form of, 76, 78.  
 — full of. See Full.  
 — manifest, not to all, 76.  
 — mover of world. See Movement.  
 — not active agent, 59, 65, 106. See Soul.  
 — primal, 96.  
 — source unknown, 86.  
 — superior none, 74. See Brahman, Deity, Dependence, Hatred, and Īvara.  
 Goddess, 347.  
 Godlike. See Endowments.  
 Gods, 16, 53, 61, 80, 84, 86, 87, 88, 93, 94, 95, 99, 105, 108, 109, 118, 119, 126, 146, 151, 153, 160, 169, 186, 241, 250, 254, 255, 282, 283, 305, 306, 316, 320, 322, 324, 327, 331, 338, 345, 347, 354, 377, 387, 389, 390.  
 — censure of, 150.  
 — disparagement of. See Disparagement.  
 — first of, 87, 93, 95, 97.  
 — lord of, 84, 87, 93, 95, 96, 98.  
 — nature of. See Endowments.  
 — sacrifice to, 61.  
 — sovereignty of, 43.  
 — world of, 84, 254, 322. See World.  
 Going and returning. See Coming and going, and Return.

- Gold, 68, 110, 189, 209, 333, 353, 365, 389.  
 Goldstücker, Prof., 3, 5, 6, 8, 14, 20, 33, 74, 79, 89, 118.  
 Good, 42, 43, 52, 53, 59, 68, 85, 91, 105, 108, 109, 115, 118, 120, 124, 168, 175, 178, 191, 243, 276, 277, 282, 287, 290, 292, 293, 300, 301, 302, 311, 314, 316, 319, 320, 325, 326, 348, 349, 358, 359, 368, 377, 390.  
 — deeds, doers of, 72, 75, 105, 153, 243.  
 Goodness, 75, 91, 106, 107, 108, 109, 117, 118, 120, 122, 124, 125, 126, 184, 276, 278, 300, 306, 318, 319, 326, 327, 328, 329, 330, 331, 334, 373, 374, 376.  
 Government of tongue. See Taciturnity.  
 — of world. See Universe.  
 Governor. See Ruler of universe.  
 Govinda, 40, 43.  
 Gracious, 95, 98.  
 Gradation, 381, 385, 387, 388.  
 Gradual progress, 70. See Improvement.  
 Grain, 361.  
 Grammarian, 174.  
 Grammatical blunders of demons, 152.  
 Grandsire, 38, 40, 83, 194, 244, 271, 289, 295, 300, 303, 304, 314, 374.  
 — great, 97.  
 Grandson, 40.  
 Grass, 68, 142, 159, 360.  
 Gratitude, 176, 177.  
 Great, capacity of becoming, 92. See Large.  
 — men, 54, 72.  
 Greatness, 333, 347, 354.  
 Greatness of Supreme, 92, 97, 128, 157, 287, 336.  
 — worldly, 151, 178.  
 Greek poetry, 5, 18, 203.  
 Green, 384.  
 Grey, 179, 384.  
 Grief, 42, 43, 44, 45, 46, 66, 101, 115, 118, 126, 128, 166, 181, 183, 193, 250, 284, 285, 301, 320, 326, 327, 343, 354, 355, 356, 356, 366, 393. See Sorrow.  
 Griffiths, R. T. H., 90.  
 Grote, G., 5, 6.  
 Group. See Collection.  
 — of senses. See Senses.  
 Gudâkera, 39, 43, 88, 92.  
 Guesses at truth, 8, 12.  
 Guests, 216, 243, 285, 286, 306, 358, 361, 364.  
 Guide, 348.  
 Guilt, 98. See Fault.  
 Guru. See Preceptor.  
 Gurushyâsâmvâda, 199 seq. See Anugîtâ.  
 Guruskandha, 222, 346.  
 Gyotishoma, 156, 164.  
 Habit of pondering, 78, 250.  
 Habitation, 251. See Dwelling.  
 Hair, 40, 93, 130, 362.  
 — matted. See Matted hair.  
 — thick, 39.  
 Half-hearted, 73.  
 Hall, F. E., 8, 10, 28, 141, 197, 201, 202, 204, 219, 221, 222, 244, 280, 285, 300, 317, 327, 332, 333, 334, 337, 338, 373, 390, 392.  
 Hamilton, Sir W., 378.  
 Hamsa, 381.  
 Hands, 53, 261, 359, 367.  
 — four, 98.  
 — joining, 93, 94, 96, 294, 311.  
 — on all sides, 103, 203, 253, 332.  
 — one thousand. See Arms.  
 Hanging, 237.  
 Hankering. See Craving, Desire.  
 Hanumat. See Ape.  
 Happiness, 51, 63, 65, 66, 70, 76, 85, 87, 101, 103, 107, 108, 110, 116, 117, 126, 170, 185, 189, 233, 242, 250, 255, 270, 285, 300, 311, 314, 325, 341, 342, 347, 348, 369, 378, 380, 389. See Enjoyment, Pleasure, and Unhappiness.  
 Hard, 341, 384.  
 Hari, 92, 130, 219, 347.  
 Harmlessness, 83, 86, 101, 103, 114, 119, 124, 325, 364, 373, 376.  
 Harshakarita, 28.  
 Harshavardhana, 27, 28.  
 Harshness, 114, 181, 256. See Mercilessness.  
 Haste, 175.  
 Hartinâpur, 2, 394.  
 Hateful to Supreme Being, 85. See Likes and dislikes.  
 Hatha-yoga, 297.  
 Hatred, 68, 85, 99, 101, 116, 168, 182, 194, 281, 288, 289, 301, 320, 323, 365. See Antipathy.  
 Haug, M., 19, 221, 276, 277.  
 Haughty, 167, 168, 320, 324.



- Head, 69, 79, 93, 103, 238, 253, 332, 367. See Bow.
- Heads smashed, 95.
- Headstrong, 125, 320. See Stubborn.
- Health, 118.
- Heard instruction, 49, 105, 173, 283.
- Hearer, 282, 283.
- Hearing, 130, 246, 258, 259, 309, 351. See Heard, Instruction, Senses.
- Heart, 42, 43, 50, 51, 52, 64, 69, 70, 79, 85, 87, 88, 98, 104, 113, 114, 118, 119, 122, 129, 153, 177, 183, 187, 192, 194, 232, 239, 242, 251, 252, 278, 281, 282, 283, 287, 293, 303, 308, 332, 342, 345, 350, 361, 394.
- Heat, 84, 95, 237, 329, 330. See Warmth.
- and cold. See Cold and heat.
- Heaven, 42, 46, 47, 48, 49, 72, 81, 84, 93, 94, 120, 125, 126, 130, 156, 158, 159, 165, 179, 187, 192, 240, 264, 281, 289, 290, 307, 322, 325, 327, 344, 360, 361, 362, 368, 389.
- degrees in, 240.
- sovereignty of, 43.
- touching, 94.
- voice from, 295.
- Heaviness, 320, 327. See Lazy.
- Heedlessness, 63, 97, 108, 109, 126, 152, 153, 155, 156, 168, 169, 170, 176, 183, 253, 324, 359.
- Hell, 41, 42, 116, 155, 183, 190, 233, 240, 259, 321, 378.
- ways to, 116.
- Helpless, 336, 365.
- Helplessness of Arguna, 43.
- Herbs, 83, 113, 346, 388. See Vegetables.
- Heretics, 171.
- Hermitage, 221, 285, 294.
- Hero, 37, 95, 98, 295.
- Hidden. See Concealed.
- Hideous, 343.
- Highest, 74, 99, 108, 113, 244, 309, 326, 336, 342, 344, 347, 351, 354, 368, 369, 372, 389, 390. See Supreme.
- High position, 68, 178, 233.
- High-souled, 75, 79, 83, 94, 96, 98, 151, 294, 295, 296, 314, 327, 348, 389, 391, 393.
- Hill, 284, 287. See Mountain.
- Himâlaya, 29, 89, 222, 346.
- Hiranyagarbha, 108, 111, 186, 315, 333.
- History, 1.
- Holes, dwellers in, 345.
- Holiness. See Purity.
- Holy, 87, 119, 331, 333, 336, 347, 354, 377, 378, 392. See Devout.
- dialogue, 129, 130.
- means of immortality, 102.
- men, 72.
- world, 84.
- Home, 113, 170, 355.
- of woes, 79.
- Homeless, 101, 103, 352, 355.
- Homeric question, 4, 5.
- Honey, 188, 190.
- Honour, 116, 118, 119, 160, 243, 246, 302, 361, 363.
- and dishonour, 68, 101, 110.
- Hope, 82, 115.
- Horizontally, 287.
- Horrific. See Terrible.
- Horses, 89, 187, 381, 386.
- white, of Arguna, 38.
- Hospitality, 286, 294. See Guest.
- Host, 358.
- Hosts. See Army.
- Hot, 118, 246, 384.
- Hotri. See Priest.
- House-decoration, 207, 344. See Habitation.
- Householder, 307, 316, 354, 358, 360, 362, 377.
- Hrishîkêsa, 38, 39, 43, 96, 121, 242, 248, 270, 363, 367.
- Hue. See Colour.
- Human form, 76, 83, 87.
- world, 20. See World, human.
- Humility, 65, 116, 314, 326. See also Modesty.
- Hunger, 151, 356, 359.
- Hunter, 142, 167.
- Hurry. See Haste.
- Hurtful, 384.
- Hurtfulness. See Harmlessness.
- Husband and wife, 98, 256.
- Hymns, 94, 102, 280. See Sâman.
- Hypocrite, 53, 164.
- Idâ, 257, 277, 318.
- Idealism, 107, 387.
- Identification with Brahman, 52, 61, 62, 64, 65, 69, 70, 71, 75, 83, 106, 114, 120, 128, 156, 162, 164, 167, 169, 176, 181, 188, 189, 190, 191, 193, 234, 283, 385. See Unity.
- of self with all, 62, 64, 246, 307, 310. See Unity.

- Identification of self with wife &c.,  
     64, 103, 248.  
 Identity. See Soul.  
 Idiots, 321.  
 Ignominy, 233. See Disgrace.  
 Ignorance, 63, 65, 76, 87, 100, 103,  
     109, 114, 116, 120, 151, 155, 157,  
     160, 168, 171, 178, 186, 267, 319,  
     322, 357, 390.  
 — about Supreme, 75, 76, 309.  
 Ignorant people, 55, 63, 76, 109, 451,  
     156, 158.  
 Ikshvâku, 58.  
 Ill-conducted, 71, 85, 105, 321.  
 Ill-success. See Success.  
 Illumination of world, 178, 186.  
 Illustrious. See Great men.  
 Image, 208, 242. See Embodiment  
     and Representative.  
 Imitation, 55.  
 Immaculate. See Soul.  
 Immaturity, 320.  
 Immediate knowledge. See Direct.  
 Immortal, 43, 44, 45, 84, 86, 102, 103,  
     109, 110, 143, 152, 153, 166, 168,  
     170, 176, 179, 180, 182, 185, 187,  
     189, 190, 191, 192, 193, 244, 255,  
     282, 313, 343, 357, 367, 372, 373,  
     391.  
 Immovable, 100, 159, 266, 307, 321,  
     330, 331, 353, 355, 383, 387.  
     See Movable.  
 Immutable. See Unchangeable.  
 Impartiality, 85, 101, 128. See Alike  
     and Equability.  
 Impassable, 284, 285, 389.  
 Impatience, 166.  
 Impediment. See Obstacle.  
 Imperceptible, 234, 241. See Per-  
     ceptible.  
 Imperfect. See Knowledge.  
 Imperfection, 168.  
 Imperishable, 58, 81, 128, 245, 248,  
     357, 367, 385.  
 Impérmanence. See Perishable.  
 Impiety, 41, 125, 158, 246, 319, 348.  
     See Piety.  
 Implement. See Instrument.  
 Important. See Excellent.  
 Impression, 247, 264, 266, 318, 358,  
     383, 392.  
 Improvement, 321.  
 Impure, 118, 125, 154.  
 Inaccessible, 295.  
 Inaction, 48, 53, 60, 67, 115, 122, 125,  
     320. See Freedom from action.  
 Inanimate creation, 77, 244.  
 Inattention. See Heedlessness.  
 Incarnation, 59, 221. See Manifesta-  
     tion.  
 Incautious, 97. See Heedlessness.  
 Incendiary, 41.  
 Inclination, 282, 283, 318. See Dis-  
     position.  
 Incombustible, 44, 45.  
 Incomprehensible, 391. See Un-  
     knowable.  
 Inconstancy, 287, 289, 335.  
 Incontinent, 236.  
 Incorrect. See Conviction and  
     Knowledge.  
 Indecision. See Misgivings.  
 Indefeasible, 110.  
 Indefinable, 44, 94, 97.  
 Independence, 326. See Dependent  
     on none.  
 Indescribable, 100.  
 Indestructible, 44, 45, 46, 54, 66, 77,  
     78, 80, 94, 96, 99, 100, 113, 173,  
     179, 244, 248, 257, 292, 391.  
 India, South. See Dialect and  
     Tank.  
 Indication of Brahman, 102.  
 Indicative use of words, 272.  
 Indifference, means of, 341.  
 — to ordinary books, 49.  
 — to worldly objects, 9, 10, 69, 71,  
     89, 101, 103, 111, 128, 168, 169,  
     233, 247, 326, 341, 365, 366, 392.  
 Indifferent, 68, 82, 100, 110, 113.  
 Indigent, 256, 304, 376.  
 Indignities, 233. See Ignominy.  
 Indische Studien, 33.  
 Individual soul. See Soul.  
 Indivisible, 45.  
 Indolence, 108, 320. See Lazy.  
 Indra, 88, 89, 96, 175, 219, 250, 261,  
     282, 316, 338, 346, 388.  
 Indraprastha, 229, 394.  
 Indu, 346.  
 Indulgence of senses, 54. See Senses.  
 Industry, 91. See Assiduous.  
 Inexhaustible, 44, 45, 58, 59, 75, 76,  
     83, 84, 90, 92, 94, 106, 107, 111,  
     113, 124, 187, 250, 332, 372.  
 Inexpugnable, 312.  
 Infamy. See Disgrace.  
 Infancy compared to death, 44.  
 Inference, 160, 291, 367, 373, 374.  
 Inferior. See Beasts, Entities, and  
     Path.  
 Infidel, 378.

- Infinite, 93, 96, 97, 98, 344, 348.  
 Information. See Knowledge.  
 Ingenious, 173.  
 Ingredient, 385.  
 Inheritance, 21, 217.  
 Initiation, 285, 286, 347, 361.  
 Injury, 101, 114, 119, 124, 159, 167, 168, 176, 182, 378, 323. See Harmlessness.  
 Insatiable. See Desire.  
 Inscriptions, 13, 28, 223.  
 Insects, 225, 321, 339.  
 Insignificant, 124, 335.  
 Inspiration, 76, 281.  
 Instruction, 21, 22, 23, 87, 102, 105, 172, 176, 177, 218, 248, 251, 254, 264, 281, 282, 283, 290, 312, 324, 359, 365, 393, 394.  
 Instructor. See Preceptor.  
 Instrument, 61, 123, 278, 348, 357, 365.  
 Intellect, 86, 90, 257, 309, 320.  
 Intelligence, 86, 125, 127, 234, 241, 242, 263, 269, 276, 284, 286, 296, 304, 305, 308, 311, 332, 371, 381.  
 Intelligent. See Unintelligent.  
 Intent, 66, 73, 110, 308, 392. See Concentration.  
 Interest, 54, 193.  
 Interminglings. See Caste.  
 Interpolation in Mahâbhârata, 4, 34, 340. See Anugîtâ.  
 Interspace between earth and sky, 94.  
 Intoxicating drinks, 183, 279.  
 Introspection, 105.  
 Invincible, 180, 389. See Unconquerable.  
 Invisible, 192. See Movement, concealed, and Regulation.  
 Involuntary action. See Free-will.  
 Irascible, 167. See Wrath.  
 Iron, 208, 242.  
 Irregular worship, 84.  
 Īsopaniṣad, 54, 62, 71, 104, 106, 153, 160, 180, 187, 192, 193, 194, 248, 305, 391.  
 Īṣvara, 219, 315, 354.  
 Īṣvaragîtâ, 2.  
 Itihâsa, ancient, 198, 207, 210, 226, 238, 256, 261, 268, 270, 274, 277, 282, 289, 293, 296, 303, 310.  
 Jaws, 94, 95.  
 Jewels, 347, 353.  
 Joint, 237, 258, 356.  
 — earnings. See Earnings.  
 Journey, 380.  
 Joviality, 326.  
 Joy, 86, 96, 98, 101, 116, 131, 183, 185, 284, 300, 301, 325, 326, 357, 363, 378.  
 Joy and sorrow, 125, 183.  
 Judgment, 51, 76. See Discernment.  
 Juice, 113, 236, 238, 257, 363.  
 Jungle. See Forest.  
 Just, 123.  
 Justice, 131.  
 Kâdambarî, 27, 28.  
 Kaffirs, 97.  
 Kakrapravartana. See Wheel, turning of.  
 Kakravartin, 232.  
 Kâlidâsa, 13, 14, 28, 29, 30, 80, 220, 221, 224.  
 Kalpa, 82, 387.  
 Kâlukyâs, 28.  
 Kâmadhenu. See Cow.  
 Kâṇḍâ, 23, 322, 343.  
 Kandra, 219, 220.  
 Kândrâyaṇa, 164.  
 Kâṇḍîpura, 223.  
 Kapila, 89, 105, 124, 211.  
 Karmakâṇḍa. See Vedas.  
 Karmamârga, 171.  
 Karmayoga, 105.  
 Karma, 7, 38, 95, 96.  
 Kârtavîrya, 221, 293.  
 Kârvâka, 24, 214, 376, 377.  
 Kâśî, 37, 39.  
 Kâśikâ, 32.  
 Kâśyapa, 205, 231, 232, 234, 235, 245, 314, 389.  
 Kathâsaritsâgara, 32, 206.  
 Kâthavate, A. V., Prof., 137, 199.  
 Kâṭhâpaniṣad, 45, 46, 57, 65, 66, 67, 76, 78, 79, 80, 108, 111, 112, 124, 129, 152, 153, 154, 156, 157, 158, 160, 162, 163, 169, 170, 172, 173, 175, 176, 179, 180, 186, 187, 188, 192, 193, 211, 212, 233, 234, 246, 247, 249, 253, 264, 286, 313, 317, 333, 337, 338, 339, 341, 346, 370, 385, 386, 388, 391, 392.  
 Kâturhotra, 277.  
 Kâtyâyana, 32.  
 Kaumudî. See Siddhânta-kaumudî.  
 Kaunteya. See Kuntî.  
 Kauravas, 2, 3, 6, 26, 38, 39, 40, 62, 88, 98, 135, 136, 311, 312, 393, 394.  
 Kaushîtaki-upaniṣad, 112, 180, 208, 249, 259, 264, 268, 271, 277, 314, 362, 389.

214.

Kavyas and Narakas, 13, 15, 142, 144.

Keeping people to duty. See Duty.

Kekitāna, 37.

Kenopanishad, 163, 257.

Kerala, 223.

Kesava, 35, 40, 49, 52, 87, 96, 130, 229, 230.

Keshub Chunder Sen, 26.

Kesin, 121.

Kettledrum, 38.

Khandas, 16, 111, 146, 164, 171, 172.

See Vedas.

Khândogya-upanishad, 17, 20, 58, 64, 68, 79, 81, 84, 88, 90, 91, 114, 120, 141, 143, 145, 150, 152, 156, 158, 161, 164, 165, 166, 167, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 175, 176, 178, 179, 187, 189, 190, 191, 193, 194, 224, 233, 234, 236, 238, 239, 241, 243, 246, 249, 252, 258, 259, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 268, 269, 270, 271, 277, 285, 287, 290, 291, 295, 312, 314, 320, 321, 322, 331, 337, 339, 340, 345, 347, 353, 389, 391, 393.

Killing, 96, 116. See Murder.

Kind. See Compassion.

King, 23, 30, 72, 82, 89, 90, 95, 162, 167, 169, 170, 171, 175, 178, 179, 181, 185, 233, 294, 296, 299, 303, 346, 347, 348. See Ruler.

Kingdom, 43, 96, 302, 303, 304, 305. See Sovereignty.

Kinnaras, 347, 354.

Kinsmen, 40, 41, 42, 68, 159, 233, 246, 281, 294.

Kintāmani, 179.

Kitraratha, 89.

Knowable. See Knowledge, object of.

Knower. See Knowledge, subject of.

Knowledge, 12, 17, 44, 46, 47, 52, 55, 56, 57, 58, 59, 60, 61, 62, 63, 65, 67, 68, 72, 73, 75, 181, 82, 83, 84, 86, 87, 89, 91, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103, 104, 106, 107, 108, 109, 113, 114, 115, 123, 124, 126, 127, 128, 129, 147, 154, 156, 158, 159, 162, 164, 166, 167, 168, 173, 174, 175, 176, 177, 178, 179, 180, 181, 187, 188, 189, 190, 194, 231, 239, 242, 245, 247, 253, 254, 256, 261, 262, 263, 264, 266, 267, 276, 279, 280, 286, 287, 288, 292, 307, 308, 309, 310, 312, 313, 314, 315, 316, 317, 319, 320, 322, 326, 331,

332, 335, 337, 339, 341, 344, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 355, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, 372, 373, 374, 375, 377, 378, 379, 380, 381, 388, 389, 390, 391, 392.

Knowledge, boat of. See Boat.

— branches of, 84, 315.

— ceasing of, 239. See Perception.

— clear, 126.

— complete, 73.

— constancy in. See Perseverance.

— culmination of, 127.

— deprivation of, by desire, 75.

— destruction of, 113.

— devotion better than, 73.

— direct, 82.

— exhaustive, 73.

— eye of, 106, 112, 239.

— fire of. See Fire.

— goal attainable by, 104.

— highest, 73, 106, 151, 240, 261.

— immediate. See Direct.

— imperfect, 55, 125, 309.

— incorrect, 125.

— inexpugnable. See Inexpugnable.

— insignificant. See Insignificant.

— lamp of, 87.

— light of, 66.

— little, 115.

— loss of, 75.

— man of, 11, 51, 54, 56, 57, 62, 72, 73, 75, 91, 119, 146, 156, 158, 373, 392.

— modification of, 312.

— mysterious, 81.

— object of, 83, 94, 97, 103, 104, 123, 172, 262, 310, 312, 382.

— of creation, 341.

— of everything, 114. See Universal.

— of geography, 222 seq.

— of God, 99.

— of previous lives, 58.

— of self, 46, 51, 65, 87, 126, 334.

— of supreme, 87.

— of truth, 103, 335, 348, 381.

— practical, 349.

— prompting to, 123.

— pursuit of. See Perseverance.

— removal of, 113.

— seeker of, 75.

— source of, 248, 308.

— subject of, 97, 123, 262.

— sword of, 63, 371.

— three branches. See Branches, supra.

— through faith, 63. See Faith.

- Knowledge, want of, 49, 73, 84, 162.  
 See Ignorance.  
 — within oneself, 62, 66, 380.  
 See Progress, Sacrifice, and Understanding.
- Kola, 223.  
 Kolharkar, V. M., 137.  
 Kosegarten, 139.  
 Koshtbavat, 222, 346.  
 Kratu, 83.  
 Kṛpā, 38.  
 Kṛishna, 3, 4, 9, 11, 12, 34, 40, 41, 48, 49, 52, 56, 58, 59, 63, 67, 71, 72, 73, 78, 88, 91, 95, 96, 97, 98, 99, 102, 106, 110, 111, 117, 121, 130, 131, 197, 198, 205, 229, 230, 231, 254, 284, 310, 393, 394. See Being-Supreme and Brahman.  
 — Dvaipāyana. See Vyāsa.  
 — imitation of, 55.  
 — nought to do, 54. See Embodiment.
- Kṛta, 353.  
 Kṛtavīrya. See Kārtavīrya.  
 Kshatriyas, 22, 23, 24, 43, 46, 126, 127, 128, 152, 155, 162, 165, 174, 179, 185, 205, 209, 217, 221, 255, 295, 300, 329, 345.  
 — kinsmen of, 295, 296.  
 Kshetra, 102, 104, 105, 106, 310, 350, 372.  
 Kshetragṇa, 102, 105, 106, 109, 253, 284, 287, 288, 293, 308, 310, 350, 351, 352, 374, 377, 378, 379, 386, 387, 390, 393.  
 Kubera, 88, 347.  
 Kullūka Bhāṣa, 262.  
 Kumārasambhava, 29, 69, 80, 220, 257.  
 Kumārila, 31.  
 Kunte, M. M., 30.  
 Kuntī, 38, 40, 44, 47, 50, 53, 57, 66, 71, 74, 78, 79, 82, 84, 85, 95, 102, 106, 107, 116, 117, 127, 128, 254, 393.  
 Kuntibhoga, 37.  
 Kuru, 47, 72, 108. See Kauravas.  
 Kurukshetra, 3, 37, 198.  
 Kuśa grass, 68, 159.
- Labour, 69, 100, 184, 323, 324, 356.  
 Ladle, 261.  
 Lalita Vistara, 146, 183, 208, 212, 226, 261, 275, 284, 289, 337.  
 Lamentation. See Grief.  
 Lamp, 69, 242, 253.
- Lamp of knowledge. See Knowledge.  
 Lances, 294.  
 Land, 339, 382.  
 Language, 90. See Bhagavadgītā, Dialects, and Style.  
 Lapse of time, 58.  
 Large, 285, 327, 357.  
 Lassen, 2, 31, 34, 35, 91.  
 Lassitude, 320.  
 Last moments. See Death.  
 Laudation, 324. See Praise.  
 Law, 4, 207, 268, 269. See Regulations.  
 — sacred, 82.  
 Lazy, 125, 126, 151, 320, 326. See Indolence and Stolidity.  
 Leaf, 85, 313, 361, 365, 371, 374.  
 — of Asvattha, 111, 189.  
 Lean, 288, 384.  
 Learned, 44, 49, 50, 55, 56, 60, 63, 64, 65, 66, 87, 102, 121, 122, 152, 154, 157, 160, 161, 162, 164, 172, 174, 176, 185, 257, 260, 270, 278, 279, 284, 312, 315, 332, 337, 339, 341, 360, 367, 370, 371, 374, 378, 379, 381, 386. See Well-read.  
 Learner. See Pupil.  
 Learning, 65, 114, 124, 128, 178, 182, 232, 239, 269, 308, 326, 341, 348, 353, 359, 388, 389. See Instruction and Study.  
 Leavings, 53, 62, 118, 358, 360.  
 Left-hand, shooting, 96.  
 Leg, 189. See Feet.  
 Leibnitz, 268.  
 Letter, single. See Om.  
 Letters, 90, 264.  
 Lewes, G. H., 57.  
 Libation to manes, 41.  
 Liberality. See Gifts.  
 Licking, 95, 113.  
 Life, 40, 54, 74, 89, 118, 160, 162, 177, 181, 192, 246, 268, 269, 276, 279, 289, 290, 291, 295, 302, 317, 318, 321, 325, 355, 357. See Birth and Death.  
 — conditions of, 233.  
 — course of, 89, 111, 190, 191, 201, 233, 235, 243, 245, 253, 258, 259, 284, 285, 287, 306, 312, 313, 338, 341, 355, 357, 359, 361, 368, 370, 386, 390.  
 — exhaustion of, 236.  
 — form unknown, 111.  
 — forms of, 154, 321.  
 — higher, 285, 322.

- Life, limit of, 244, 311.  
 — long, 236.  
 — many a, 58, 73, 75.  
 — offering to supreme, 87.  
 — previous, 56, 58, 72, 117, 188, 243, 244.  
 — subtle, 284.  
 — transient and miserable, 79, 86.  
 — vain, 54.  
 Life-winds, 61, 62, 67, 78, 79, 113, 123, 125, 140, 157, 189, 190, 237, 238, 242, 246, 257, 258, 259, 263, 264, 265, 266, 270, 271, 272, 273, 274, 275, 276, 277, 280, 289, 290, 292, 318, 331, 336, 353, 372, 373.  
 — concentration of. See Breath.  
 — production and preservation of, 238.  
 Light, 69, 74, 110, 163, 180, 186, 260, 305, 316, 319, 330, 332, 334, 344, 369, 379, 380, 387. See Object of sense.  
 — of knowledge, 66, 108.  
 — within oneself, 66. See Enlightenment.  
 Lightness, 319, 327, 332.  
 Lightning, 179, 337, 340.  
 Likes and dislikes, 56, 71, 118, 288, 289. See Affection and Aversion.  
 Limbs, 50, 177, 242, 342, 359, 366.  
 Limitation. See Perfection and Time.  
 Linen, 360.  
 Lion, 38, 90, 295, 345.  
 — manner of, 353.  
 Liquid, 354. See Flowing element.  
 Liquors, 389.  
 Lispering, 322.  
 Literature, 1, 13, 15.  
 Littleness, 46, 191.  
 Livelihood. See Body, support of.  
 Lokāyatas. See Kārvākas.  
 Long, 384.  
 Longing. See Desire.  
 Looker on, 55. See Activity, Soul, passive spectator.  
 Looking-glass. See Mirror.  
 Lord, 65, 83, 87, 88, 92, 97, 105, 109, 113, 116, 128, 165, 173, 188, 190, 231, 263, 267, 293, 294, 303, 333, 345, 347, 388, 393, 394.  
 — in the bodies of all, 116, 118.  
 — of all, 83.  
 — of beings, 58, 273.  
 — of gods. See Gods.  
 Lord of sacrifices, 84.  
 — of speech. See Speech.  
 — of universe. See Universe, lord of.  
 — of worlds. See Worlds, master of.  
 — supreme, 106, 352.  
 Loss, 124, 166.  
 — of the Brāhman, 71.  
 Lotus-eye, 92, 294.  
 — heart, 194, 342, 344, 392.  
 — leaf, 64, 92, 289, 374, 379.  
 — seat, 93.  
 Love, 74, 87, 89, 394.  
 Low. See High.  
 Lower species, 241, 330, 339. See Beasts and Creatures.  
 Lunar light, 81.  
 — mansions, 88, 158, 346, 352, 387.  
 — world, 20, 240.  
 Lust, 115, 116, 117, 125, 166, 167, 183, 233, 246, 325, 331, 359.  
 Mace, 93, 98.  
 Machine, 129.  
 Mādhava, 38, 40, 230, 231, 252.  
 Mādhavākārya, 32, 90, 135, 139, 214.  
 Madhu, 40, 42, 71, 77, 231, 252.  
 Madhusūdana, 5, 19, 35, 72, 89, 91, 92, 96, 107, 108, 113, 123.  
 Madhvākārya, 30, 31.  
 Mādhyama, 385.  
 Mādhyamika Bauddhas, 376.  
 Maghavat, 219, 317.  
 Mahābhārata, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 28, 31, 35, 135, 136, 137, 138, 140, 155, 160, 170, 181, 187, 197, 201, 202, 203, 204, 205, 206, 209, 221, 225, 227, 229, 234, 253, 256, 271, 281, 284, 292, 295, 301, 304, 305, 308, 310, 315, 318, 319, 325, 328, 329, 342, 344, 351, 353, 354, 358, 360, 370, 374, 383, 384, 385, 386, 391. See Bhishma Parvan.  
 Mahābhāshya. See Patañjali.  
 Mahat, 157. See Understanding.  
 Mahāvratā, 180.  
 Mahendra, 222, 223, 346.  
 Māheśvarī, 219, 347.  
 Mahidhara, 248.  
 Maintenance. See Body, support of.  
 Maitrī-upanishad, 50, 51, 52, 53, 61, 68, 79, 100, 102, 105, 112, 152, 155, 158, 160, 162, 170, 171, 173, 175, 185, 186, 187, 189, 192, 194, 233, 234, 238, 241, 243, 247, 251, 252, 255, 259, 263, 268, 269, 270,

- 271, 274, 277, 305, 320, 323, 361,  
370, 371, 378, 379, 386, 390, 391,  
392.
- Makara, 90.
- Maker, 379.
- Male, 346.
- and female, 115, 244.
- Malicious, 125. See Malignity.
- Malignity. See Harmlessness and Injury.
- Mallināth, 30, 293.
- Mālyavat, 222, 346.
- Man, creation of, 74. See Creation.
- descendant of Manus, 86.
- highest, 129.
- Management, 324. See Business.
- Māndukya-upanishad, 79, 247, 251,  
259, 324, 376.
- Manes, 83, 85, 89, 93, 153, 169, 221,  
296, 306, 324, 325, 345, 366, 389.
- Manifestation, 65, 76, 77, 83, 87, 88,  
104, 107, 108, 292, 312, 317, 318,  
374, 379, 380. See Form, Incarnation, and Nature.
- Manifold, 375, 377. See Forms, many.
- Mazipushpaka, 39.
- Mankind, 345, 347, 348, 353, 354  
356, 378, 386, 387, 389.
- Manliness, 74.
- Man-lion, 89.
- Mansions, 108.
- Mantras, 119, 209, 264. See Verse, sacred.
- Manu, 20, 21, 22, 23, 24, 27, 30, 37,  
48, 58, 80, 86, 147, 153, 159, 179,  
203, 208, 210, 217, 218, 225, 233,  
262, 279, 284, 339, 353, 354, 358,  
359, 360, 361, 362, 363, 364, 365,  
368.
- Mārgaśrīṣha, 27, 90, 91.
- Marīkī, 88, 387.
- Marriage, 121.
- Marrow, 252.
- Maruts, 88, 92, 94, 346.
- Master of world, 97. See World.
- Match. See Equal.
- Material cause. See Cause and Nature.
- Materialists, 24, 27.
- Matsya-purāṇa, 113.
- Matted hair, 360, 375.
- Matter, 379.
- Maturity, 177.
- Maurice, F. D., 1.
- Maya, 197, 229.
- Mâyâ. See Nature.
- McRindle, 223.
- Mean, 116.
- Means, 376, 377, 380, 391. See Wealth.
- Meat, 236.
- Medicine, 83, 388.
- Meditation, 64, 79, 84, 88, 100, 103,  
105, 128, 192, 248, 249, 251, 252,  
299, 300, 332, 341, 349, 353, 368,  
376, 377, 382, 388.
- at time of death, 78, 390.
- continuous, 78, 79, 100, 309.
- exclusive, 78, 79, 84, 99.
- mystic, 136, 150.
- on Supreme, 61, 78, 88, 99, 100,  
103, 128.
- See Concentration of mind and Pondering.
- Melancholy, 125.
- Memory, 90, 98, 113, 164, 320, 332,  
335.
- confusion of, 50, 51.
- destruction of, 113.
- Mendicancy, 307, 361.
- Mental operation. See Mind.
- pain. See Pain.
- penance. See Penance.
- Mercilessness, 114, 166, 181. See Harshness.
- Merging in Brahman. See Absorbent and Assimilation.
- Merit, 12, 49, 65, 72, 76, 109, 151,  
158, 164, 165, 166, 169, 178, 184,  
185, 232, 241, 246, 341, 376, 377,  
— exhaustion of, 84. See Action.
- Merriment, 97.
- Meru, 88, 222, 354.
- Meshasrīṅga, 346.
- Metals, 209.
- Metre, 15, 90, 142, 226, 353.
- Midday bath, 122.
- Middle. See Beginning and Up.
- Migration, 153, 154, 185, 190, 232,  
234, 244.
- Mild. See Gentle.
- Military. See Kshatriyas.
- Milk, 265.
- Mimāṃsā, 31, 32, 376, 377.
- Mind, 9, 43, 47, 49, 50, 51, 53, 55,  
57, 60, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68,  
69, 70, 71, 73, 75, 78, 79, 83, 86,  
87, 88, 99, 100, 101, 102, 105, 107,  
112, 119, 122, 123, 125, 126, 128,  
129, 162, 163, 169, 170, 172, 173.

- 103, 111, 112, 121, 126, 127, 152, 154, 155, 166, 167, 168, 170, 173, 174, 175, 184, 190, 238, 247, 259, 260, 261, 267, 268, 269, 270, 273, 275, 278, 279, 284, 286, 288, 291, 297, 300, 305, 306, 313, 317, 318, 327, 334, 335, 336, 337, 340, 341, 342, 344, 348, 349, 350, 351, 352, 365, 367, 368, 371, 382, 383, 384, 385, 386, 388, 390, 392. See Destruction of entities and Enjoyment, Perceptible and Perishable.
- Oblation, 61, 77, 83, 121, 188, 261. See Offering.
- Obligation. See Duty.
- Oblivion. See Forgetfulness.
- Obscurity. See Darkness.
- Obsequies. See Balls of food.
- Obsequious, 159.
- Observances, 67, 112, 115, 143, 145, 147, 156, 164, 167, 182, 283, 324, 355, 364.
- Obstacles, 47, 162, 168, 183, 279, 363.
- Obstinate, 71. See Headstrong.
- Obstructors, 284.
- Occupancy, 22.
- Occupations. See Duties.
- Ocean, 51, 89, 95, 100, 179, 192, 245, 293, 294, 296, 307, 343, 346, 354, 374, 381, 388.
- Odious. See Agrecable.
- Offence, 256, 303. See Sin.
- Offering, 61, 77, 83, 169, 184, 185, 260, 261, 262, 276, 279, 280, 325, 353, 358, 360, 371. See Leavings.
- of action. See Action, dedication of.
- of life, 87.
- of self, 128.
- Officiating at sacrifices, 22, 23, 218, 324, 359.
- Offspring. See Children.
- Oil, 79, 379, 384.
- Old age. See Age.
- times, 314, 316, 358.
- Oleaginous, 118, 130.
- Om, 74, 79, 83, 89, 120, 121, 163, 282, 353.
- Omens, 40, 365.
- Omission and commission, 54, 359. See Action and Inaction.
- Omniscience and omnipotence, 58, 234.
- Omniscient, 174.
- One, 102, 317, 375.
- One, everything. See Mind, Unity.
- Open. See Secret.
- Opening eyelid. See Eyelid.
- Operation of mind. See Mind.
- Opinion of *Krishna*, 56.
- Opponent. See Enemy.
- Opposites. See Pairs.
- Opposition, 3α.
- Oppression, royal, 207, 208.
- Optimists, 376.
- Order, 129, 307, 354, 358, 382. See *Āramas*.
- of dissolution of entities, 335, 387.
- Ordinances, 84, 117, 118, 119, 120. See Rule and Scripture.
- Organs, 53, 64, 93, 118, 123, 189, 219, 243, 247, 257, 258, 261, 271, 287, 292, 318, 336, 337, 357, 359, 364, 391. See Bodily and mental, Drying up, and Senses.
- Origin. See Source and Species.
- Orissa, 222.
- Ornaments, 93, 326.
- Ostentation, 103, 114, 115, 116, 118, 119, 159, 160, 161, 164, 165, 282, 324, 363.
- Overcome. See Invincible.
- Oviparous. See Eggs.
- Pain, 70, 76, 110, 118, 120, 159, 169, 233, 238, 239, 245, 250, 291, 292, 301. See Pleasure and pain.
- Pairs, 48, 60, 63, 74, 76, 111, 160, 167, 168, 233, 244, 246, 247, 257, 276, 277, 292, 351, 357, 358, 366, 369, 370, 379.
- Palace, magical, 197, 229.
- Palāsa, 360.
- Palate, 252, 262.
- Pāṇḍava, 2, 6, 37, 38, 39, 62, 67, 91, 93, 95, 99, 110, 136, 197, 229, 230, 255, 394.
- Pāṇḍavas, leaders of the army of, 3.
- Pāṇḍu. See Pāṇḍavas.
- Pāṇḍya, 223.
- Pāṇini, 32, 33.
- Pāṇḍaganya, 38.
- Pañśhotri, 270.
- Pañkāma, 385.
- Pañkātantra, 29, 139, 206.
- Parade. See Ostentation.
- Parallel, 97, 116, 187.
- Paramahansa, 381.
- Paraphernalia, 379. See Appurtenances.
- Parāsara, 33, 164.



- Pârâjarya, 32, 33.  
 Parasurâma, 221, 294, 295, 299.  
 Pardon, Arguna asks, 97, 98.  
 Pâriyâtra, 222, 346  
 Part, 112, 379. See Soul, individual.  
 Pârtha. See Prithâ.  
 Partiality. See Favouritism and Impartiality.  
 Pârvatî, 219, 347.  
 Passages of body, 79, 253, 265, 273, 275, 277, 318, 343. See Body.  
 — of heart, 252.  
 Passing through, 388, 389. See Impassable.  
 Passion, 57, 70, 75, 89, 106, 107, 108, 109, 110, 117, 118, 119, 120, 122, 124, 125, 126, 276, 278, 292, 301, 302, 318, 319, 323, 325, 328, 329, 330, 331, 334, 342, 343, 345, 356, 363, 369, 390.  
 Past. See Birth, Entities, and Future life.  
 Patañjali. See Yoga-sûtras.  
 — Mahâbhâshya, 19, 32, 139, 140, 152, 211, 223, 346.  
 Path, 47, 59, 64, 72, 80, 81, 82, 116, 125, 127, 153, 156, 165, 248, 257, 284, 307, 311, 314, 316, 320, 331, 348, 364, 369, 380, 381. See Southern.  
 Paths, three, 354.  
 — of emancipation, 47, 52.  
 — unfamiliar, 380.  
 Patience. See Forgiveness.  
 Patriarchs, 86, 354, 387.  
 Paundra, 38, 295.  
 Peace, 91, 323.  
 Pearls, simile of, 74.  
 Pebbles, 365.  
 Pedestrian, 382.  
 Penance, 11, 12, 59, 61, 67, 73, 74, 81, 85, 86, 98, 99, 114, 117, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 126, 129, 147, 164, 165, 166, 170, 173, 178, 182, 184, 221, 231, 242, 247, 248, 254, 258, 259, 288, 296, 299, 300, 308, 311, 312, 315, 326, 339, 355, 356, 367, 369, 376, 388, 389.  
 People. See Creatures.  
 — common. See Populace.  
 Perceptible, 76, 80, 96, 180, 192, 193, 257, 264, 309, 313, 377, 380, 385, 386.  
 Perception of worlds, 174.  
 — organs of, their operations, 57, 64, 108, 112, 123, 238, 270, 316, 329, 331, 336. See Organs and Senses.  
 Perception, personal. See Experience.  
 Perfect, 173, 186, 248, 251, 287.  
 Perfection, 52, 54, 62, 73, 73, 79, 100, 107, 116, 117, 127, 176, 232, 233, 234, 287, 300, 302, 310, 314, 334, 384, 388, 389, 393.  
 Performance. See Pride.  
 Perfume, 93, 112. See Fragrance.  
 Peril, 42. See Danger.  
 Periplus, 223.  
 Perishable, 44, 66, 76, 77, 79, 81, 120, 154, 158, 304, 307, 355, 375, 376. See Inconstantly.  
 Permanent. See Constant.  
 Permeating. See Pervading.  
 Permission. See Preceptor.  
 Perplexed, 98.  
 Perseverance, 51, 60, 79, 87, 103, 111, 114, 120, 175, 255.  
 Perspiration, 339.  
 Perturbation, 110, 352. See Agitation.  
 Pervading principle, 44, 45, 80, 82, 83, 87, 88, 93, 94, 95, 96, 97, 98, 100, 104, 106, 113, 127, 187, 242, 244, 253, 258, 307, 317, 332, 385.  
 Pessimists, 376.  
 Phalanx, 38.  
 Phalaruti, 143.  
 Phâlguna, 394.  
 Philanthropy. See Benevolence.  
 Philosopher, 44, 377.  
 Philosophy, Indian, 7, 26.  
 Phlegm, 155, 343.  
 Physical pain. See Pain.  
 Piety, 47, 59, 74, 89, 110, 114, 125, 128, 158, 159, 161, 168, 182, 183, 230, 231, 232, 242, 243, 246, 252, 254, 311, 314, 315, 316, 318, 325, 326, 339, 341, 348, 349, 351, 359, 360, 362, 363, 364, 367, 368, 369, 375, 376, 377, 380, 384, 392, 393, 394. See Merit.  
 — and impiety, 59, 125, 292.  
 — protector of, 59, 89, 94, 125, 130, 231, 235.  
 Pilgrimage, 143.  
 Pillar. See Pole.  
 Pîngala, 16.  
 Pîngalâ, 257, 277, 318.

- Radiance, 94, 104, 186, 190, 387. See Effulgence and Light.  
 Râgadharma. See Mahâbhârata.  
 Râga-yoga, 300.  
 Raghuvamśa, 29, 224, 293.  
 Rahasyas. See Upanishads.  
 Râhu, 224, 303.  
 Rain, 54, 84, 363.  
 Rakshas, 83, 88, 118, 345, 347, 354, 387.  
 Râma, 90, 294, 300.  
 Râmânuga, 30, 31, 32, 35, 66, 84, 89, 90, 107, 112, 116, 124, 346, 378.  
 Râmâyana, 10, 28, 90, 139, 140, 221.  
 Rambling. See Restraint and Senses.  
 Râmmohun Roy, 27.  
 Rash, 380.  
 Rathantara, 180.  
 Ravenous, 57. See Eating.  
 Rays, 287, 289.  
 Readiness of resource, 127.  
 Reading much, 171, 309.  
 Real and unreal, 44, 154, 155, 164, 191, 323, 392. See Entity, real.  
 Reason, 51, 124, 183. See Mind and Understanding.  
 Receipt. See Acceptance.  
 Receptacle, 84, 245.  
 Reception, 119, 150. See Youth.  
 Recitation. See Vedas.  
 Reclamation of bad men, 121. See Improvement.  
 Recognition, 249.  
 Recreation, 66. See Sport.  
 Red, 179, 360, 384.  
 Reduced. See Desire.  
 Refinement, 112, 123, 193, 308, 358, 361, 369.  
 Reflexion, 169.  
 Refuge. See Asylum.  
 Refulgence, 74, 94. See Effulgence, Light, and Radiance.  
 Regard. See Fruit.  
 — for wife, child, &c., 103. See Respect.  
 Regulation, 61, 76, 83, 84, 85, 150, 170, 180, 254, 257, 269, 279, 283, 288, 291, 296, 307, 311, 312, 315, 316, 320, 321, 324, 326, 355, 356, 358, 359, 360, 361, 367.  
 Regulator, 89, 91.  
 Rejection. See Casting aside.  
 Rejoicing, 116. See Joy.  
 Relation, 103, 104. See Soul.  
 • Relative, 68. See Kinsmen.  
 Release, 63. See Birth, Body, Bond, Delusion, Free, Nature, Society.  
 — from sin. See Sin.  
 Relish, 118. See Taste.  
 Reluctant, 72.  
 Remainder of offerings. See Leavings.  
 Remembrance of Deity, 78.  
 Removal of knowledge, &c. See Destruction.  
 Renouncer. See Renunciation.  
 Renown. See Fame.  
 Renunciation, 52, 63, 64, 65, 67, 85, 114, 121, 122, 123, 127, 257, 312, 349, 361, 369, 373, 376, 377. See Abandonment and Action, dedication of.  
 Repeated happiness, 126.  
 — thought. See Continuous meditation.  
 Repentance, 167.  
 Repetitions of passages, 144, 145, 181.  
 — of words and phrases, 14.  
 Repining, 168, 323.  
 Representative of Deity for meditation, 88.  
 Repression. See Qualities.  
 Reptiles, 284, 339, 353.  
 Reservoir, 48, 89, 193, 344, 354, 381.  
 Residence, 84, 233, 240, 250, 260, 287. See Dwelling.  
 Residue. See Leavings.  
 Resolution, 47, 70, 101, 110, 115, 119, 314. See Determination.  
 — good, 85.  
 — vain, 128.  
 Resort, 50, 59, 75, 85, 102, 107. See Asylum.  
 Resource, 190, 377. See Readiness.  
 Respect, 83, 119, 120, 159, 161, 162, 182, 246, 283, 324, 363.  
 Rest, 150. See Dependence.  
 Restraint, 9, 50, 53, 56, 57, 58, 60, 61, 63, 64, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 86, 91, 99, 100, 103, 114, 119, 125, 126, 127, 128, 161, 162, 163, 167, 168, 232, 242, 243, 248, 251, 257, 282, 296, 297, 301, 306, 336, 342, 344, 355, 358, 360, 361, 362, 364, 372, 391, 392.  
 — mutual, 315.  
 Result, 126. See Consequences.  
 Retard. See Wheel.  
 Retrogression. See Wheel.  
 Return of service, 120, 183.  
 — time of, 180, 244. See Preceptor.

- Return to birth, 65, 79, 80, 81, 82, 84, 111, 112, 113, 116, 165, 234, 306, 322, 390. See Birth.
- Revelation. See Vedas.
- Reverence, 42, 78, 80, 83, 85, 86, 119, 129.
- Revilng, 166, 168, 181, 321.
- Revolution, 356, 357. See Universe and Wheel.
- Riches. See Wealth.
- Richest, 287.
- Right and wrong, 50, 166, 183, 319, 366. See Duty.
- Righteous feeling, 326.
- Rigid. See Regulation.
- Rik*, 18, 20, 83, 146, 162, 163, 179, 224, 277, 280, 284.
- Rikika*, 295.
- Rim, 355.
- Rishabha, 385.
- Rishis. See Sages.
- Rite. See Ceremony, Family, Funeral, and Observances.
- Ritter, 1.
- River, current of, 95. See Stream.
- Roar of Bhīṣma, 38.
- Robber, 41. See Thief.
- Rod, 91.
- Roots, 111, 316, 361, 388.
- Rotation. See Universe and Wheel.
- Roth. See Nirukta.
- Rough, 118, 383, 384.
- Round. See Circular.
- Royal sage, 58, 86, 296, 300.
- saint, 23, 86.
- Rudra, 88, 92, 94, 219, 338, 347, 354.
- Ruin, 51, 55, 56, 63, 72, 85, 128, 151, 154.
- of soul, 115, 117, 155, 236, 245, 279. See Destruction.
- Rule. See Regulation and Scripture.
- against, 116. See Ill-conducted and Ordinances.
- heavenly, 231.
- Ruler, 249, 318, 385. See Body.
- of men, 44, 89, 95, 209, 346. See King.
- of universe, 78, 115, 167, 182, 219, 279, 332, 347. See Atheism.
- Running away. See Slinking away.
- Ruts, 356.
- Sabarās, 222, 295.
- Sabarāsvāmin, 32.
- Sabbā Parvan, 174, 229.
- Sacred learning. See Learning, Study, and Vedas.
- Sacrifice, 12, 22, 23, 53, 54, 60, 61, 62, 67, 81, 83, 84, 85, 86, 89, 98, 99, 114, 116, 118, 119, 120, 121, 122, 129, 147, 161, 164, 167, 169, 173, 180, 184, 185, 189, 193, 218, 241, 260, 262, 276, 279, 280, 284, 287, 288, 289, 290, 293, 309, 324, 325, 326, 330, 334, 340, 347, 353, 355, 358, 359, 360, 362, 367, 376, 387.
- enjoyer of, 12, 67.
- fire, 216.
- giver of desires, 53.
- instrument, 61.
- knowledge of, 62, 83, 130.
- lord of. See Enjoyer.
- not performing, 62.
- rain from, 51.
- result of action, 54, 62.
- various classes, 61. See, too, Kiatu and Yagña.
- Sad, 120, 121.
- Sādhyas, 94.
- Safety. See Fear.
- Sage, 50, 51, 59, 64, 66, 67, 86, 87, 89, 91, 93, 94, 102, 107, 162, 164, 173, 174, 178, 209, 221, 281, 282, 283, 286, 291, 296, 312, 314, 315, 316, 322, 331, 342, 345, 358, 360, 361, 362, 368, 374, 375, 382, 388, 390, 393.
- ancient, 86.
- divine, 87, 89.
- seven, 29, 213, 281, 287. See Royal sage and Royal saint.
- Sahadeva, 38.
- Sahya, 222, 346.
- Saibya, 37.
- Saint. See Sage.
- Sakra. See Indra.
- Sakuntalā, 29, 39, 243.
- Saliva, 384.
- Sālmali, 346.
- Saltish, 118, 384.
- Salutation, 61, 62, 82, 93, 95, 96, 97, 140, 176, 294, 314, 324, 351, 366, 370.
- Salvation. See Emancipation.
- Sāman, 18, 20, 83, 88, 90, 145, 146, 162, 163, 180, 280.
- Samāna, 258.
- Sāmavidhāna, 32.
- Sambhu, 219, 332.

Samnyâsin. See Ascetic.

Sanaka, 86.

Sanandana, 86.

Sanâtana, 86, 149.

Sanatkumâra, 17, 86, 135, 141, 150.

Sanatsugâtâ, 125, 136, 141, 149, 150,  
151, 152, 156, 157, 163, 164,  
165, 166, 174, 175, 179, 193,  
309, 311, 314.

Sanatsugâtîya, 48, 135, 136, 138, 143,  
144, 145, 146, 197, 202, 203, 206,  
211, 226, 227, 231, 232, 234, 240,  
245, 246, 249, 251, 253, 255, 282,  
285, 323, 326, 327, 339, 342, 343,  
349, 351, 363, 364, 369.

— age of, 140, 147, et passim.

— character of, 144.

— connexion with Bhârata, 135, 136.

— genuineness of, 137.

— language and style, 140, 142, 143.

— metre of, 142.

— name of, 135, 138.

— position of, 147.

— relation to Vedas, 145.

— text of, 137, 138, 148, 203. See  
Phalasruti.

Sanctification, 59, 62, 64, 68, 69, 81,  
83, 85, 101, 103, 122, 193, 247,  
341. See Purity.

Saṅgaya, 3, 35, 37, 39, 42, 92, 96, 98,  
136.

Saṅkara, 88.

Saṅkarâkârya, 2, 6, 19, 20, 27, 30,  
31, 32, 35, 45, 49, 52, 58, 59,  
60, 64, 73, 79, 80, 81, 85, 87,  
88, 90, 93, 103, 105, 107, 112,  
114, 119, 121, 123, 124, 125, 127,  
128, 129, 135, 137, 138, 141, 143,  
144, 151, 152, 153, 154, 155, 156,  
157, 159, 160, 161, 162, 163, 164,  
165, 166, 168, 169, 170, 171, 173,  
174, 176, 177, 179, 180, 181, 184,  
186, 187, 188, 190, 193, 197, 201,  
202, 203, 204, 206, 226, 230, 231,  
239, 241, 247, 248, 251, 255, 256,  
262, 263, 266, 271, 280, 290, 313,  
327, 333, 339, 342, 345, 347, 353,  
376, 385, 386, 391.

Saṅkara-vigaya, 135.

Sâṅkhya, 8, 27, 47, 52, 63, 64, 74,  
123, 210, 215, 313, 332, 368, 372,  
373, 374, 383, 386, 387, 392.

— Kârîkâ, 240, 258, 265, 286, 291,  
319, 321, 322, 329, 331, 334, 337,  
351, 356, 371, 380, 382, 391.

• — Sâra. See Hall, F. E.

Sâṅkhyâ Sûtra, 123, 190, 244, 265,  
286, 321, 331, 332, 334, 337, 339,  
354, 368, 392.

— Tattvakaumudî. See Sâṅkhya  
Kârîkâ.

— Yoga, 105.

Sanskâra. See Ceremony.

Sanskrit literature, 13, 15. See Kâ-  
vyas.

Sânti Parvan, 155, 160, 170. See  
Mahâbhârata.

Saptahotri, 266.

Sarasvatî. See Speech.

Sârîraka Bhâṣya. See Saṅkarâkârya.

Sarvadarśanasaṅgraha, 32, 214.

Sarvagṛha Nârâyana. See Nârâyana.  
Sâstra, 280.

Sâstras, 11, 50, 56, 74, 161, 166, 176,  
177, 303.

Sat. See Asad and Sad.

Satakratu, 219.

Satapatha, 248, 265.

Satiety, 88.

Satisfaction. See Contentment.

Sattva, 193.

Sâtyaki, 39.

Satyaloka. See World.

Saugatas, 213, 377.

Savana, 277.

Saviour. See Deliverer.

Sâvitri, 353.

Savoury, 118. See Taste.

Savyasâkin, 96.

Scandal, 324.

Scenes, 93.

Sceptic. See Atheism, Faith and  
Infidel.

Schlegel, 34, 35, 38. See Lassen.

Science, 6, 81, 90, 114, 388.

Scripture, 117, 118, 119, 120, 231,  
238, 242, 290, 291, 314, 349, 358,  
364, 379, 381. See Sâstras.

Sea. See Ocean.

Search for Brahman, 173.

— for faults. See Fault.

Season, 91, 236, 330, 352.

Seaf, 49, 64, 68, 78, 79, 80, 81, 111,  
112, 128, 129, 162, 163, 194, 230,  
234, 239, 240, 245, 251, 257, 306,  
316, 326, 339, 344, 348, 354, 361,  
368, 369, 378, 388, 393.

— for practising abstraction, 68.

— of desire and wrath, 57.

Seclusion. See Solitary.

Second, without, 349.

Secrecy. See Mystery.

- Secret, 68, 91, 366.  
 Sects, 7.  
 Securing, 365.  
 Security. See Fear.  
 Seed, 74, 84, 91, 107, 241, 313, 371, 382, 383.  
 Seeing, 309, 351. See Senses.  
 Seeker after knowledge. See Knowledge.  
 Seer, 78.  
 Self, 170, 317. See Atman in the Sanskrit index and Embodied soul and Soul in this.  
 Self-consciousness, 102, 322, 333, 336, 338.  
 Self-contained, 110.  
 Self-contemplation, 50.  
 Self-control, 48, 126, 127, 183, 236, 246, 366.  
 Self-destruction, 106, 279.  
 Self-existent, 333, 354.  
 Self-illuminated, 342.  
 Self-knowledge. See Knowledge.  
 Self-possessed, 63, 246, 248.  
 Self-restraint, 9, 10, 21, 51, 61, 64, 65, 66, 68, 71, 77, 86, 100, 101, 103, 114, 119, 127, 149, 167, 168, 170, 173, 182, 190, 243, 249, 250, 292, 300, 312, 317, 320, 327, 332, 342, 359, 390, 391.  
 Selling. See Buying.  
 Semen, 238, 241, 261, 275, 338.  
 Sen, Keshub Chander, 26.  
 Sensation not permanent, 44.  
 Sense, good. See Learned.  
 Senses, 26, 44, 50, 51, 53, 54, 55, 56, 57, 60, 61, 62, 63, 64, 66, 67, 68, 69, 70, 71, 79, 86, 88, 93, 99, 102, 104, 105, 108, 111, 112, 123, 125, 126, 153, 154, 160, 161, 162, 165, 167, 168, 170, 173, 182, 185, 186, 187, 188, 190, 193, 232, 238, 242, 246, 248, 249, 251, 253, 256, 257, 261, 262, 264, 266, 267, 268, 269, 278, 279, 280, 282, 283, 285, 286, 290, 291, 292, 297 seq., 300, 305, 306, 313, 317, 318, 329, 332, 334, 336, 337, 338, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344, 348, 349, 350, 355, 358, 360, 362, 364, 366, 367, 368, 371, 386, 388. See Absorbent, Contact, Organs, Soul, Bodily and mental.  
 —lord of, 38.  
 —objects of enumerated, 102.  
 —operations of, 61, 64.  
 Separation, 233, 313.  
 Serpent. See Snake.  
 Service, 62, 127, 243, 324, 326.  
 —return of. See Return.  
 Serving devotee, 59.  
 Severance. See Separation and Dis-sociation.  
 Shackle. See Bond.  
 Shade, 286, 356. See Shadow.  
 Shadow, 385.  
 Shadow, 312. See Shade.  
 Shaken, not to be, 161.  
 Shakespeare, 113.  
 Shapes, various, 92.  
 Sharing with others, 364, 365.  
 Sharp, 118, 383, 384.  
 Shaving, 375.  
 Sheep, 345.  
 Shelter. See Asylum.  
 Shining bodies, 88, 291, 330, 341, 353.  
 Shore, 381.  
 Short, 384.  
 Shortcoming. See Fault.  
 Show. See Ostentatiousness.  
 Shower. See Rain.  
 Siddhanta Kaumudī, 33.  
 Siddhas, 89, 94, 96, 232, 233, 235, 236, 239, 314.  
 Sides, both, 68.  
 Sighs, 303.  
 Sight. See Scene and Visual power.  
 —of Brahman, 99.  
 —of universal form, 98, 99.  
 Significance, 174.  
 Sikhandin, 39.  
 Silence, 91, 245. See Taciturnity.  
 Similes, 142.  
 Sin, 12, 41, 42, 46, 47, 49, 53, 54, 56, 60, 62, 64, 65, 66, 68, 70, 71, 73, 76, 84, 86, 89, 127, 129, 130, 139, 146, 149, 151, 157, 160, 163, 164, 165, 166, 167, 168, 170, 181, 182, 232, 233, 241, 246, 288, 290, 293, 296, 311, 314, 317, 319, 320, 321, 322, 327, 340, 343, 344, 351, 355, 358, 369, 372, 378, 389, 390, 394. See Counting.  
 Sinful, 57, 62, 68, 85, 164, 283, 293.  
 Singers, 232.  
 Single, 284.  
 Sinless, 52, 107, 114, 233, 252, 254, 256, 314, 364.  
 Sinsapā, 346.  
 Sitting, 49, 97, 232, 360, 390.  
 Siva, 219, 333, 347.  
 Sixteen, 371.  
 Skanda, 89.

- Skin, 40, 259, 261, 267, 298, 305, 361, 375. See Senses.
- Sky. See Heaven.
- Slander. See Backbiting.
- Slaughter, 168. See Murder.
- Slave, 304.
- Sleep, 64, 67, 69, 77, 97, 108, 112, 126, 236, 258, 259, 268, 269, 301, 320, 360.
- lord of. See Gudākeśa.
- Slinking away from battle, 127.
- Slippery, 384.
- Sloth, 55, 192, 194, 301, 361, 376, 389.
- Slow, 125. See Gradual.
- Small, 92, 285, 331.
- Smell. See Fragrance and Senses.
- Smile, 43, 253, 256, 265.
- Smoke, 57, 81, 127, 276, 362.
- Smooth, 384.
- Smṛiti, Gītā regarded as, 2, 6, 30.
- Sanatsugātīya regarded as, 138.
- Smṛitis, 7, 27, 30, 83, 153, 158, 169, 321.
- Snake, 89, 93, 190, 281, 282, 283, 321, 345, 347, 353, 354.
- Society, 68, 103, 364, 365.
- Sod, 68, 110.
- Soft, 383, 384. See Gentle.
- Soilure. See Dust.
- Solar world, 240.
- Solicitude. See Acquisition.
- Solitary, 68, 97, 151, 232, 251, 256, 287, 311, 363.
- Solstices, 81, 352.
- Soma, 84, 219, 220, 337, 340, 346, 347.
- Somadatta, 38.
- Son, 40, 59, 74, 103, 121, 169, 170, 178, 183, 189, 194, 284, 384.
- of preceptor. See Preceptor.
- Sorrow, 119, 126, 330. See Grief, Joy and sorrow.
- Soul, 44, 49, 50, 51, 54, 64, 65, 66, 67, 68, 70, 73, 88, 105, 107, 108, 152, 154, 159, 160, 162, 180, 190, 191, 194, 224, 235, 237, 238, 239, 242, 246, 247, 248, 249, 250, 252, 253, 254, 256, 257, 258, 262, 263, 274, 276, 278, 279, 280, 281, 282, 286, 288, 292, 300, 304, 308, 309, 312, 331, 332, 333, 334, 336, 337, 340, 341, 342, 343, 344, 345, 351, 354, 355, 367, 369, 371, 372, 374, 375, 376, 380, 382, 385, 389, 391, 392, 393, 394.
- Soul, all-pervading, 45, 193. See Unity.
- association with, 288, 336.
- beauty of, 177.
- beginningless, 44, 45.
- destruction of, 44 seq., 160, 374.
- different from qualities and actions, 55, 56, 105.
- distinct from nature, 201, 289.
- distinct from senses, 160, 173, 285, 289, 305.
- distinct from universe, 164.
- embodied, 44, 45, 46, 65, 77, 232, 238, 240, 244, 249, 252.
- eternal. See Eternity.
- existence of, 26.
- favour of, 234.
- form, 45.
- high and low, 232.
- highest. See Highest.
- immaculate, 123.
- immortal. See Immortality.
- indivisible, 44.
- indestructible, 44, 46.
- individual, 77, 112, 157, 188, 192, 253, 258, 263, 269, 310, 315, 337, 340, 341, 350, 371, 386.
- individual's relation to supreme, 31, 55, 77, 92, 97, 103, 111, 112, 153, 154, 156, 186, 189, 316, 342, 350.
- indivisible, 45.
- inexhaustible, 45.
- killing and being killed, 44, 45.
- knowledge of, 46, 66, 106, 163.
- loss of, 151.
- manifestation of. See Manifestation.
- migration to new body, 44.
- not active agent, 55, 65, 105, 106, 109, 123, 125, 285.
- primeval, 45.
- science of, 49, 90, 173, 181. See Adhyātma.
- seats of, 237, 240.
- stable, 45.
- unchangeable, 45.
- union. See Individual's &c., supra.
- wonder, 46.
- Soul, supreme, 82, 86, 105, 106, 112, 113, 156, 172, 173, 175, 189, 190, 248, 259, 284, 310, 342.
- abode of. See Seat.
- access to. See Attainment.
- connexion of with world, 189.

- Soul, does nothing, 64, 65, 106, 123.  
 — origin of all, 87.  
 — origin of gods and sages, 86.  
 — part of, individual, 31, 112, 186.  
 — passive spectator, 100, 105.  
 — relation of, to individual. See Soul, individual's &c., supra.  
 — source unknown, 86.  
 — union of with individual. See Union.
- Sound, 61, 74, 127, 155, 247, 258, 260, 266, 271, 273, 343. See Objects of sense.
- Sour, 383, 384.
- Source of things, 46, 74, 75, 80, 83, 84, 87, 90, 107, 112, 127, 191, 194, 283, 284, 311, 315, 323, 333, 334, 354, 357, 377, 383.  
 — and end, 46, 84. See Beginning, Production, and Soul, supreme.
- South path, 314.
- Sovereignty, great, 303.  
 — of earth, 40, 42, 43, 47, 96, 300.  
 — of three worlds, 40, 307.  
 — within, 302.
- Space, 73, 74, 82, 106, 156, 186, 241, 251, 260, 289, 316, 339, 343, 356, 368, 375, 377. See Time and place, and Objects of sense.
- Speaking ill, 182, 183.
- Species, origin of, 244. See Eggs.
- Spectator, soul is, 105.
- Speech, 49, 87, 90, 119, 123, 128, 161, 177, 184, 185, 243, 257, 261, 262, 263, 264, 265, 266, 275, 295, 336, 338, 348, 359, 361, 366. See Objects of sense.  
 — forms of, 265.
- Speed, 357, 364, 381. See Velocity.
- Spirit, 104, 105, 331, 333, 351, 367, 368, 373, 380, 385, 386.  
 — departed. See Departed spirits.  
 — supreme. See Soul, supreme.
- Spiritual topics, 51, 296, 310.
- Spirituous, 389.
- Splendour, 91, 95, 240.  
 — Brahmic, 162, 232, 287.
- Spoke, 306, 355.
- Spontaneous earnings, 60, 101, 362, 365.
- Sport, 251. See Play and Recreation.
- Spring, 90.
- Sprouts, 111, 313, 371, 383.
- Square, 384.
- Śravaṇa, 352.
- Sreya and Preya, 161.
- Śrīdharasvāmin, 35, 38, 45, 49, 54, 64, 67, 71, 80, 85, 89, 96, 105, 107, 108, 110, 112, 116, 117, 120, 123, 124, 127, 129, 346, 378.
- Śruti. See Vedas.
- Stable, 45, 367.
- Staff, 37, 217, 359, 360.
- Staggering, 356.
- Stale, 118.
- Standard, 39.
- Standing, 360.
- Stars, 179, 240.
- State, 117, 304. See Brahmic, Mind, and Vilest state.  
 — differences of, 59, 82, 356.  
 — normal, 99.
- Slaves, three, 318.
- Steady, 49, 70, 103, 110, 167, 357.
- Steady-minded, 49, 50, 51, 52, 66, 68, 69, 70, 78, 83, 100, 101, 103, 109, 110, 117, 250, 296, 300, 352.
- Stealing. See Thief.
- Steeds, white, 38.
- Steps. See Gradually.
- Stick. See Staff.
- Stinginess, 325. See Gifts.
- Stinking, 118.
- Stolidity, 320.
- Stomach, 93, 94, 252, 367.
- Stone, 68, 110, 179.  
 heated, standing on, 118.
- Stoppage, 357, 358.
- Store. See Provisions.
- Store-room, 253.
- Storm-gods, 88.
- Story, ancient. See Itihāsa.
- Stotra, 280.
- Straightforward, 103, 114, 119, 126, 161, 320, 325, 326, 364, 373.
- Strangers, 159.
- Straw, 142, 155.
- Stream, 90, 95, 192, 284, 287, 307, 344, 346, 354, 363, 387. See River.
- Strength, 74, 116, 118, 124, 179, 236, 252, 294, 323. See Power.
- Strī Parvan, 187.
- Strong, 71, 116, 158, 346.
- Stubborn, 118, 128. See Headstrong and Obstinate.
- Student, 177, 216. See Pupil.
- Study, 22, 23, 61, 68, 81, 98, 99, 114, 119, 120, 121, 164, 167, 172, 174, 181, 185, 269, 324, 334, 340, 355, 358, 360, 361, 362, 376.

Study of Gītā, 130.

—of Vedas. See Vedas.

Style. See Anugītā, Bhagavadgītā, and Sanatsugātīya.

Subandhu, 13.

Subdivision, love of, 10.

Subduing. See Self-restraint.

Subhadra, 37, 39.

Subjects, 295, 378. See Object.

Subjugation. See Self-restraint.

Sub-quarters. See Quarters.

Subsistence. See Entities.

Substratum, 123, 249, 289, 292.

Subtle topics. See Spiritual.

Subtlety, 104, 106, 160, 241, 285, 296, 310, 320, 336, 341, 342.

Success, 47, 48, 49, 59, 60, 124.

Sûdra, 22, 24, 85, 126, 127, 136, 150, 322, 329.

Sughosha, 39.

Summer, 122, 363.

Summum bonum, 117, 214. See Aim, Emancipation, Heaven.

Sun, 58, 65, 74, 78, 83, 88, 94, 106, 110, 111, 178, 179, 186, 189, 224, 251, 277, 287, 289, 290, 303, 316, 329, 330, 337, 340, 346, 350, 352, 354, 364, 387.

—eye of divine form, 94.

—one thousand, 93.

Sunrise. See Morning, Sun.

Sunset. See Evening, Sun.

Sunshine, 356.

Sûnyavâdins, 376.

Superhuman cause of pain. See Pain.

Superior to God none. See Equal.

Superiority, feeling of, 158, 159. See Envy.

Supervisor, 82, 83, 105, 109, 188.

Suppliant, 169, 183.

Support of Arvattha, 111.

—of body. See Body.

—without, 72.

See Dependent.

Supporter, 83, 84, 105, 257, 348.

—of universe, 78, 80, 82, 91, 94, 97, 105, 113, 180, 192, 258.

Supreme, 49, 50, 54, 64, 65, 69, 77, 79, 81, 83, 85, 93, 94, 106, 113, 176, 188, 192, 326, 369, 379.

—belongs to none, 194.

—form of, 193.

—loss of, 71.

—manifestation of, 77. See Incarnation.

Supreme, part of, supports all, 91.

See Being-Supreme, Brahman, and Highest.

Surface. See Earth.

Sûrya, 219.

Sushumâ, 156, 277, 318.

Suspension. See Hanging.

Susruta, 144.

Sustainer, 83.

Sustenance. See Body, support of.

Sûtras, 7, 11, 30.

Sutta Nipâta, 14, 19, 24, 36, 40, 45, 46, 48, 49, 50, 51, 56, 59, 60, 62, 63, 64, 65, 66, 68, 69, 70, 79, 88, 89, 101, 103, 105, 108, 109, 111, 112, 114, 118, 121.

Svadhâ, 83, 324, 370.

Svâhâ, 324, 352, 366.

Swapâka, 65.

Sveta, 222, 346.

Svetâsvatropanishad, 65, 68, 78, 89, 102, 103, 104, 105, 112, 113, 129, 138, 157, 160, 163, 165, 166, 172, 176, 179, 180, 186, 187, 189, 190, 192, 193, 238, 249, 265, 308, 311, 313, 322, 327, 331, 332, 333, 338, 343, 348, 355, 370, 376, 379.

Swallowing, 95, 353.

Swamy, Sir M. C. See Sutta Nipâta.

Sweet, 363, 383, 384.

Swerving. See Moving and Truth.

Swift. See Speed.

Sword, 63, 294, 302, 313.

Syâdvâdin, 376.

Syâmâka. See Grain.

Syena, 82, 353.

Syllable, 391. See Om.

Symbols, 160, 307, 308, 309, 350, 367.

Systematic arrangement, 7, 10, 13. See Philosophy.

Tabor, 38.

Taciturnity, 101, 119, 159, 161, 162, 163, 168, 173.

Tad, 120, 161.

Taint, 43, 49, 59, 64, 82, 106, 107, 109, 123, 127, 154, 155, 160, 163, 186, 247, 248, 289, 366. See Bond.

Tairthikas, 376.

Taittirīya Āraṇyaka, 159, 164, 170, 178, 186, 188, 190, 259, 261, 262, 266, 277, 280, 327, 347, 389.

—Brāhmaṇa, 261, 262, 266.

—Upanishad, 103, 120, 123, 127, 152, 155, 156, 161, 163, 164, 168, 171,



- 180, 191, 192, 220, 236, 238, 244,  
280, 293, 302, 343, 360, 361, 378,  
385, 388, 389, 390.
- Taking, 64.
- Talent, 37, 72, 120, 177, 182, 191,  
193, 255, 292, 299, 310, 312, 314,  
316, 317, 326, 327, 332, 335, 369,  
377, 378, 380, 381, 386.
- Talk, 47, 64, 124, 164, 320.
- Tândya Brâhmana, 180.
- Tanks, 222, 324.
- Tapas, 166.
- Târânâtha Tarkavâkâspati, Prof., 28,  
33, 329, 334, 342.
- Târkikas, 376.
- Tarpana, 325.
- Taste, 74, 257, 258. See Objects of  
sense, Relish, and Savoury.
- by another, 269, 270.
- for objects of sense, 50, 166.
- Tasteless, 118, 247.
- Tawny, 179.
- Teacher. See Preceptor.
- Teaching. See Instruction.
- Tears, 42.
- Technical terms, 10.
- Teeth, 95, 113.
- Temperate. See Food and Sleepi-  
ness.
- Temper, 86, 322.
- Temporary. See Perishable.
- Temptation, 154, 327.
- Ten, 373.
- Tender, 384.
- Terminable. See Perishable.
- Termination of Life. See Death.
- Terrible, 94, 95, 98, 343.
- Test, 306.
- Texts, 102.
- Vedic, 48, 269, 290, 305, 322. See  
Mantra.
- Thief, 53, 160, 169, 284, 324, 330, 389.
- Thigh, 94.
- Thirst, 151, 168, 356.
- Thomas, E., 224, 225.
- Thomson, Archbishop, 268.
- Thought, 87, 115, 116, 192, 259, 263,  
321, 348, 350, 378. See Con-  
tinuous meditation and Mind.
- evil, 323.
- Thoughtless, 183, 359. See Rash.
- Thread, 74, 359, 360.
- Throat, 96, 252, 262, 266, 271.
- Throwing out, 64.
- Thumb, 190, 192.
- Thunderbolt, 37, 89.
- Tie. See Bond.
- Tiele, C. P., Prof., 21, 23, 24, 27, 97.
- Tiger, 142, 153, 155.
- like, 230, 294.
- Time, 62, 81, 90, 120, 176, 186, 244,  
276, 316, 356, 357, 363, 366, 375,  
377.
- and place, soul unlimited by, 45,  
186, 343, 356.
- lapse of, 58. See Birth.
- of return, &c., 80. See Death  
and Gift.
- wheel of, 343, 355.
- To-day, 305.
- Toil. See Labour.
- To-morrow, 305.
- Tone, 264.
- Tongue, 219, 252, 259, 261, 292.  
See Senses and Taciturnity.
- Tooth. See Teeth.
- Tortoise, 50, 342, 366.
- Torture, 118, 237, 240.
- Touching, 247, 257, 258, 343. See  
Senses.
- Town, 173, 212, 361, 363.
- Trade, 127.
- Tradition, 314.
- Tranquillity, 21, 51, 52, 63, 65, 67, 68,  
69, 70, 85, 86, 94, 101, 108, 114,  
119, 120, 126, 128, 129, 190, 232,  
243, 246, 247, 248, 250, 256, 257,  
277, 287, 288, 301, 307, 312, 317,  
326, 342, 355, 370, 372, 373, 375,  
389, 392.
- Transcendent Brahman, 76, 78, 113,  
333, 351, 372.
- happiness, 70.
- nature, 76.
- Transcending. See Qualities, Source.
- Transgressing. See Ill-conducted  
and Sin.
- Transient, 44, 70, 86, 154, 179, 187,  
246, 250, 355, 390. See Life.
- penance, 120.
- Transmigration, 322. See Life,  
higher.
- Travellers, 329, 380, 381.
- Treachery, 41, 151, 324, 344.
- Treasure, 115.
- Trees, 89, 111, 112, 142, 172, 241,  
284, 285, 286, 294, 296, 313, 316,  
321, 346, 361, 363, 365, 370, 371,  
373, 379, 388.
- Tremour, 40, 96, 239.
- Trespasses. See Sin.
- Trikûavat, 222, 346.

- Tīn y, 88, 220, 347.  
 Trouble, 56, 71, 118, 122, 124, 183, 329, 356, 362. See Agitation.  
 Trumpet, 38.  
 Trunk, 313, 371.  
 Trust. See Faith.  
 Truth, 44, 60, 62, 64, 70, 83, 86, 87, 92, 103, 110, 114, 115, 119, 124, 160, 161, 162, 167, 168, 169, 170, 171, 172, 174, 175, 176, 177, 182, 184, 185, 280, 284, 293, 296, 311, 313, 314, 315, 324, 325, 326, 331, 335, 336, 338, 344, 351, 360, 362, 364, 366, 367, 368, 369, 370, 371, 373, 375, 378, 380, 381, 384.  
 Turbid, 42.  
 Turning back. See Wheel.  
 Tvashtri, 219, 346.  
 Twelve, 373.  
 Twenty-four, 373.  
   plus one, 317.  
 Twenty-two, 373.  
 Twice-born, 156, 160, 163, 166, 209, 231, 232, 285, 291, 293, 296, 299, 304, 311, 314, 316, 327, 336, 339, 340, 348, 353, 360, 373, 383.  
 Twofold, 375.  
 Ubiquitous, 82.  
 Udāna, 258.  
 Uḍulomaś, 377.  
 Udumbara, 374, 379.  
 Udyoga Parvan, 135, 138, 139, 140.  
 Ukkaiśravas, 89.  
 Umā, 219, 347.  
 Unasked, 365.  
 Unattached. See Attachment.  
 Unavoidable, 46.  
 Unborn, 45, 58, 76, 86, 87, 192, 194, 331.  
 Uncertain, 120, 380.  
 Unchangeable, 45, 100, 317, 331, 333, 371, 391.  
 Unchecked, 357.  
 Uncle, maternal, 40.  
 Unconcern, 82, 110, 326, 391. See Indifference.  
 Unconfused, 307.  
 Unconquerable, 161, 231. See Invincible.  
 Uncreated, 45, 347, 391. See Self-existent.  
 Undegraded, 39, 97, 130, 310.  
 Underlying principle. See Substratum.  
 Understanding, 47, 57, 64, 65, 67, 70, 73, 78, 97, 100, 101, 102, 112, 123, 125, 127, 161, 175, 177, 179, 181, 187, 188, 189, 190, 193, 236, 247, 259, 260, 267, 279, 284, 287, 302, 306, 307, 308, 309, 310, 313, 316, 318, 332, 336, 337, 338, 341, 343, 344, 348, 349, 350, 351, 355, 357, 366, 367, 368, 370, 372, 377, 380, 381, 382, 385, 386, 391, 392. See Knowledge.  
 Understanding, world of, 333.  
 Undesponding. See Despondency.  
 Undeveloped, 331.  
 Undiscerning. See Discernment.  
 Undistinguished colours, 286.  
 Unfathomable, 313.  
 Unfriendliness, 320. See Antipathy.  
 Ungrateful, 254.  
 Unhappiness, 49, 51, 53, 66, 69, 70, 78, 79, 86, 101, 103, 107, 109, 126, 151, 157, 232, 233, 215, 247, 255, 313, 331, 370, 372. See Pain.  
 Unholy, 116, 343.  
 Unintelligent, 160, 172, 312, 320, 330, 351, 356, 371, 379.  
 Uninterrupted, 341.  
 Union, 66, 70, 71, 115, 275.  
 Unity of everything, 62, 71, 75, 83, 104, 105, 106, 107, 112, 116, 121, 128, 312, 313, 344, 370, 374. See Difference, Identification. And Soul, all-pervading.  
   of work, 6.  
 Universal benevolence. See Benevolence.  
   form, 92, 333, 344.  
   knowledge, 76, 114.  
 Universe, constituents of, 336.  
   — destruction of, 80.  
   — devoid of truth, 115, 315.  
   — divisions of, 93, 261.  
   — eternal, 158.  
   — government of, 115, 327.  
   — heated by universal form, 94, 95.  
   — illumination of, 178, 186.  
   — lord of, 83, 86, 87, 93. See Atheism and Ruler.  
   — movement of, 82, 87. See Movement.  
   — producer and destroyer of, 74, 95, 157, 158, 287, 354, 392.  
   — support of, 74, 78, 80, 82, 93, 94, 97, 104, 112, 180, 192.  
   — upholding. See Support.

- Universe, welfare of, 29, 94. See Benevolence.
- within and without. See Within.
- See Body of *Krishna* and Ruler.
- Unknown, 76, 104, 160, 247.
- Unknown, 159, 160, 349, 368. See Incomprehensible.
- Unmanageable, 57.
- Unmoved, 51, 68, 69, 110, 248, 352, 391.
- Unpeopled. See Solitary.
- Unperceived, 45, 46, 76, 80, 82, 88, 96, 99, 100, 102, 193, 313, 317, 318, 331, 332, 349, 350, 351, 354, 368, 371, 372, 373, 380, 382, 383, 385, 386, 389, 390.
- Unpleasant, 122. See Agreeable.
- Unreal, 41.
- Unreasonable, 237.
- Unrighteous, 53.
- Unseen, 115. See Unperceived.
- Unshaking, 331.
- Unsteady. See Steady.
- Unsubstantial, 255.
- Unswerving, 125, 336.
- Untainted, 367, 369, 379. See Gift, Lotus-leaf, and Worlds.
- Unthinkable, 45, 78, 100, 354, 369.
- Untruthfulness, 168, 183.
- Unwilling. See Reluctant.
- Up and down, going, 109, 240, 321, 322, 325, 327, 329.
- Upanishads, 2, 5, 7, 8, 13, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 23, 26, 27, 34, 36, 135, 141, 142, 113, 114, 147, 174, 181, 207, 210, 211, 212, 215, 223, 226, 251.
- dialogues in, 5.
- Upāsana. See Meditation.
- Upavarsha, 32.
- Upholding. See Support.
- Upwards and downwards, branches, 111, 184, 287, 354. See Up and down.
- Urine, 261.
- Uśanas, 91.
- Uśmapas, 94.
- Uttamaugas, 37.
- Vaiu, 321, 327. See Life.
- Vaisampāyana, 150, 151, 229, 230, 394.
- Vaisvānara, 191, 259, 276.
- Vaiśya, 22, 24, 85, 126, 127, 217, 255, 329.
- Vaivasvata, 153.
- Vâkspati Mîśra, 319, 322, 329, 356, 371, 382.
- Valiant, 332. See Valour.
- Vallabhākārya, 30, 31.
- Valour, 126, 323, 326, 367.
- Valuables. See Precious things.
- Vâmadeva, 193.
- Vâmadevya, 277.
- Vanishing of nature, 380.
- Vanity, 103, 114, 115, 116, 166, 181, 246, 320, 321. See Arrogance and Pride.
- Vanquished, 96, 152, 388, 389. See Victory.
- Variable, 330.
- Variegated colours, 286, 357.
- Variety. See Diversity.
- Varuna, 89, 97, 219, 220, 345, 346.
- Vâsavadattâ, 28.
- Vashat, 324.
- Vasîkâra saṅgîhâ, 9.
- Vasishṭha, 159, 160, 314.
- Vasu, 88, 92, 94.
- Vâsudeva, 75, 83, 91, 98, 110, 130, 230, 235, 251, 310, 312, 393.
- Vâsuki, 89, 353.
- Vâyû, 219, 340. See Wind.
- Veda, 171, 172.
- Vedânta, 8, 17, 113, 123, 147, 159, 174, 246, 331.
- Paribhāṣhâ, 220, 258, 286, 314, 333, 338, 339, 387.
- Sâra, 186.
- Sûtras, 30, 31, 32, 33, 105, 188, 191.
- Vedas, 5, 14, 15, 16, 17, 18, 19, 25, 26, 48, 54, 61, 62, 68, 74, 78, 81, 83, 84, 88, 91, 98, 99, 102, 110, 111, 112, 113, 114, 115, 119, 120, 121, 143, 144, 145, 146, 152, 153, 156, 157, 158, 159, 161, 162, 163, 164, 166, 169, 170, 171, 172, 173, 174, 177, 182, 185, 193, 211, 214, 226, 262, 269, 276, 306, 309, 312, 320, 322, 326, 331, 353, 354, 358, 367, 369, 378, 388, 390.
- Atharva, 18, 19, 145.
- consubstantial with Brahman, 163.
- disparagement of. See Disparagement.
- like reservoir, 48.
- theogony of, 220.
- three, 19, 83, 84.
- two Kândas of, 17, 146.
- Vedic words, 48.
- Vegetables, 83, 113, 144, 156, 353.
- See Herbs.

- Worship, exclusive, 73, 75, 78, 79,  
     80, 83, 84, 85, 99, 100, 103, 110.  
 — irregular. See Irregular.  
 — mode of, 83, 114, 127, 245, 353.  
 — of divinities, 59, 75, 118.  
 Worshippers go to deity wor-  
     shipped, 76, 84.  
 — receive due fruit, 59.  
 Woven. See Weaving.  
 Wrath, 50, 57, 59, 66, 67, 101, 114,  
     115, 116, 117, 128, 151, 154, 155,  
     156, 160, 165, 166, 181, 183, 185,  
     233, 241, 246, 281, 289, 294, 301,  
     315, 320, 322, 323, 325, 332, 343,  
     357, 364. See Irascible.  
 Wretched, 49.  
 Wrong. See Modesty, Right and  
     wrong.  
 Yâdava, 97.  
 Yagña, 83.  
 Yâgñavalkya, 5, 237, 304, 344.  
 Yagñesvar Sâstrin, 33, 224.  
 Yagus, 18, 20, 83, 146, 162, 163,  
     180.  
 Yakshas, 88, 94, 118, 345, 347, 354.  
 Yama, 89, 97, 153, 219, 233, 346.  
 Yâska, 225.  
 Years, 330.  
 Yellow, 384.  
 Yoga, 9, 10, 11, 27, 47, 61, 63, 64,  
     74, 297, 306.  
 — Sûtras, 8, 9, 10, 74, 210, 211, 212,  
     215, 226, 234, 248, 250, 251, 252,  
     260, 266, 271, 274, 285, 286, 300,  
     319, 322, 324, 327, 343, 372, 373,  
     394.  
 — Vâsishtha, 206, 240.  
 Yogâkâras, 213, 377.  
 Yogin, 52, 293.  
 Youth, 175.  
 — compared to death, 44.  
 — receiving senior, 139, 203.  
 Yudhâmanyu, 37.  
 Yudhishtîra, 38, 394.  
 Yuyudhâna, 37.

# SANSKRIT INDEX.

B. = Bhagavadgītā; S. = Sanatsugātīya; A. = Anugītā.

N.B. Only in some cases have references been given to all the passages in which a certain word occurs. In most cases, only the passages in which words are used in noteworthy senses are referred to.

Akāmabhūta, (A.) XXIII, 5.  
Akshara, (B.) III, 15; VIII, 3, 11, 21;  
X, 2, 5, 33; XI, 18, 37; XII,  
1, 3; XV, 16, 18. (S.) III, 18,  
45; IV, 18. (A.) III, 27; IV, 14;  
V, 11; XIII, 22; XXXVI, 33.  
Āketanā, (A.) XXI, 15.  
Adhishṭhāna, (B.) III, 40; XVIII, 14.  
Adhyātma, (A.) XX, 40; LXI, 4.  
Anādiyoga, (S.) IV, 20.  
Anāmaya, (B.) II, 51; XIV, 6.  
Aniketa, (B.) XII, 19; (A.) XXVIII,  
42.  
Anukalpa, (S.) VI, 11.  
Anvikas, (S.) III, 37.  
Anta, (B.) II, 16.  
Antariksha, (S.) VI, 4.  
Apara, (B.) IV, 4; VII, 5. (A.)  
XXVII, 34; XXXV, 56.  
Aparaspara Sambhūta, (A.) XVI, 18.  
Aparyāpta, (B.) I, 10.  
Apratishṭha. See Pratishṭha.  
Abhikrama, (B.) II, 40.  
Abhidhyā, (S.) II, 11.  
Abhyāsa, (B.) VI, 35, 44; XII, 9, 10,  
12; XVIII, 35.  
Ayana, (B.) I, 11.  
Alolutva, (B.) XVI, 2.  
Avyakta, (B.) II, 25, 28; VII, 24;  
VIII, 18, 20, 21; IX, 4; XII, 1,  
3, 5; XIII, 5. (A.) I, 42; III,  
6; XII, 1, 3, 5; XIX, 8; XX,  
20, 47; XXI, 1; XXIV, 22, 24,  
25; XXV, 1; XXVIII, 25, 35,  
37; XXIX, 17; XXXI, 59;  
XXXII, 12; XXXIII, 4, 5;  
XXXV, 16, 33, 34, 55; XXXVII,  
7, 23 seq.  
Asaṅgraha, (S.) III, 27.  
Asiddhi, (S.) III, 25.  
Ahaṅkāra, (B.) II, 71; III, 27, 28;  
VII, 4; VIII, 1, 3; XII, 13;  
XIII, 5, 8; XVI, 18; XVII, 5;  
XVIII, 24, 53, 58, 59. (A.) XX,

19, 20, 47; XXIII, 5; XXV,  
9; XXVI, 1, 2, 5; XXVII,  
1, 12, 30; XXIX, 22; XXX,  
6; XXXI, 45, 55; XXXII,  
9, 12, 15; XXXV, 33 seq., 54,  
55; XXXVI, 21.  
Ahaṅkrīta, (B.) XVIII, 17. (A.)  
XXXVI, 22.  
Ahaṅgīta, (S.) II, 7.  
Ātman, (B.) II, 41, 43, 44, 45, 55, 64;  
III, 6, 13, 17, 27, 43; IV, 6, 7,  
21, 27, 35, 38, 40, 41, 42; V, 7,  
11, 16, 17, 21, 25, 26; VI, 5, 6,  
7, 8, 10, 11, 12, 14, 15, 18, 19, 20,  
25, 26, 28, 29, 32, 36, 47; VII,  
18, 19; VIII, 2, 12, 15, 19; IX,  
5, 26, 28, 31, 34; X, 11, 15, 16,  
18, 19, 20; XI, 3, 4, 24, 47, 50;  
XII, 11, 14; XIII, 7, 22, 24,  
28, 29, 31, 32; XIV, 24; XV,  
11, 13, 17; XVI, 9, 17, 18, 21,  
22; XVII, 16, 19; XVIII, 16,  
27, 37, 39, 49, 51, 54. (S.) I,  
6, 7; II, 10, 15, 18, 30, 32;  
III, 8, 9, 41, 54; IV, 22; V,  
12; VI, 11, 16, 25, 26. (A.) I,  
39, 40; II, 3, 7, 8, 18, 36; III,  
3 seq., 30; IV, 2, 3, 5, 7, 9, 10,  
15 seq., 42, 46, 51, 56, 58; V, 5,  
9, 11; VIII, 23; X, 9, 15, 17;  
XI, 9; XII, 21, 22; XIII, 22, 24;  
XV, 29; XVI, 3, 12; XVII, 11,  
18 seq.; XVIII, 8; XIX, 1, 7;  
XX, 16, 47; XXV, 1, 2, 3, 8;  
XXVI, 4; XXVII, 8, 9, 39, 51,  
53, 54, 63, 64, 66; XXXI, 12, 22;  
XXXI, 45, 46, 49; XXXII, 6,  
17; XXXIII, 2, 3, 5; XXXV,  
20, 35 seq., 55, 56; XXXVI,  
4, 23, 33 seq.  
Ādadhrikī, (S.) VI, 4.  
Āpas, (S.) VI, 4.  
Āpomaya, (A.) XIII, 19.

- 18, 47; XII, 1, 6, 9, 11; XIII, 10, 24; XIV, 26; XVI, 1; XVIII, 33, 52, 57, 75, 78. (S.) II, 7, 9, 10, 20, 21; V, 18. (A.) I, 13, 29; III, 13; IV, 15, 17, 18, 33, 66; X, 14; XV, 28 seq., XX, 35; XXV, 6; XXVIII, 26; XXXV, 25; XXXVI, 22 seq. See Kshema.
- Yogin, (B.) III, 3; IV, 25; V, 11, 24; VI, 1, 2, 8, 10, 15, 19, 27, 28, 31, 32, 42, 45, 46, 47; VIII, 14, 23, 25, 27, 28; X, 17; XII, 14; XV, 11. (S.) VI, 1 seq. (A.) III, 21; IV, 15, 22, 23.
- Yoni, (S.) IV, 5. (A.) V, 24; XX, 32; XXIV, 8; XXVII, 38; XXXII, 1.
- Rati, (S.) V, 19. (A.) XXVIII, 16.
- Rûpa, (A.) IV, 9, 13 seq.
- Linga, (S.) VI, 11.
- Vadânya, (S.) V, 2.
- Varga, (S.) III, 9, 18.
- Vikarman, (B.) IV, 17.
- Vikâra, (S.) II, 21. (A.) XXIV, 23.
- Vigñâna, (B.) III, 41; VI, 8; VII, 21; IX, 1; XVIII, 42. (A.) I, 20; V, 2; VI, 11; VII, 5; XXXI, 5.
- Viniraya, (A.) IV, 63.
- Vibhâgagñâ, (A.) XXXV, 27. And see XXIV, 25.
- Vimârga, (S.) II, 7.
- Vishesha, (A.) XX, 21, 48; XXX, 9; XXXII, 13; XXXV, 7; XXXVI, 7, 28.
- Vishvarûpa, (S.) IV, 1.
- Vishamedhamâna, (S.) III, 18.
- Vishûkî, (S.) VI, 4.
- Visarga, (A.) XXVII, 26.
- Vismaya, (A.) XXIII, 7.
- Vîra, (S.) XIV, 17.
- Vrîgina, (S.) III, 5.
- Vega, (S.) II, 11. (A.) II, 11; XXVII, 62.
- Veda, (S.) III, 35, 38 seq.
- Vedya, (S.) III, 38 seq.
- Vaidya, (A.) XX, 36.
- Vyâkarana, (S.) III, 45.
- Vyutthâna, (A.) XXIX, 16; XXXIV, 13, 14.
- Sâstrakâra, (S.) III, 5.
- Sukra, (S.) VI, 2.
- Saṅkhyâ, (A.) XXXII, 17.
- Saṅgraha, (B.) II, 20, 25; VIII, 12; XVIII, 18. (A.) XXXI, 39.
- Saṅghâtâ, (B.) XIII, 6.
- Saṅgñâ, (B.) I, 7. (S.) V, 2, 11. (A.) XXI, 15; XXV, 11; XXXVI, 25.
- Saṅgñîta, (B.) XI, 1. (A.) XXVII, 59.
- Sattva, (B.) II, 45; X, 36, 41; XIII, 26; XIV, 6; XVI, 1; XVII, 3, 8; XVIII, 10, 40. (A.) II, 8, 27; XIII, 23; XXVII, 58; XXVIII, 41; XXXII, 17; XXXIII, 6, 8 seq.; XXXIV, 16; XXXV, 7 seq.; XXXVI, 36.
- Samâdhi, (B.) II, 44, 53, 54; IV, 24; VI, 7; XII, 9; XVII, 11.
- Samâsîta, (A.) XIV, 6.
- Samâhaya, (A.) VI, 13.
- Samudra, (S.) IV, 19.
- Sampratishthâ. See Pratishtbâ.
- Samvid, (A.) XI, 6.
- Samsthâ, (B.) VI, 15.
- Sahla, (S.) IV, 19; VI, 4, 11.
- Sâvitri, (A.) XXIX, 6.
- Sûtra, (B.) XIII, 4.
- Stabdha, (B.) XVI, 17; XVIII, 28. And see (A.) XXI, 12.
- Smṛti, (A.) XXXVI, 5.
- Srotas, (A.) II, 24; XXI, 3, 31. And see XXII, 16; XXIII, 13; XXIV, 7 seq.
- Svabhâva, (B.) II, 7; V, 14; VIII, 3; XVII, 2; XVIII, 41 seq., 47, 60. (S.) II, 40. (A.) VII, 3; VIII, 3; XI, 10; XIII, 2, 4, 5, 22; XXXIV, 12; XXXVI, 11.
- Svarga, (S.) II, 26.
- Ha, (B.) II, 9. (A.) VIII, 9, 15, 18, 20; XIV, 4; XV, 4; XVIII, 3; XX, 5; XXXI, 5.
- Hitakâmyâ, (B.) X, 1.
- Hîna, (S.) V, 21.

TRANSLITERATION OF ORIENTAL ALPHABETS ADOPTED FOR THE TRANSLATIONS  
OF THE SACRED BOOKS OF THE EAST.

TRANSLITERATION OF ORIENTAL ALPHABETS.

CONSONANTS.	MISSIONARY ALPHABET.			Sanskrit.	Zend.	Pehlvi.	Persian.	Arabic.	Hebrew.	Chinese.	
	I Class.		III Class.								
	I Class.	II Class.	III Class.								
Gutturales.											
1 Tenuis . . . . .	k	.	.	क	𐬕	𐬕	𐬕	𐬕	𐬕	k	
2 " aspirata . . . . .	kh	.	.	ख	𐬖	𐬖	𐬖	𐬖	𐬖	kh	
3 Media . . . . .	g	.	.	ग	𐬗	𐬗	𐬗	𐬗	𐬗	.	
4 " aspirata . . . . .	gh	.	.	घ	𐬘	𐬘	𐬘	𐬘	𐬘	.	
5 Gutturor-labialis . . . . .	q	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	
6 Nasalis . . . . .	h (ng)	.	.	ङ	{ 𐬙 (ng) }	.	.	.	.	.	
7 Spiritus asper . . . . .	h	.	.	ह	𐬚 (h)	𐬚	𐬚	𐬚	𐬚	h, hs	
8 " lenis . . . . .	,	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	
9 " asper faucalis . . . . .	'h	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	
10 " lenis faucalis . . . . .	'h	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	
11 " asper fricatus . . . . .	'h	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	
12 " lenis fricatus . . . . .	'h	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	.	
Gutturales modificatae (palatales, &c.)											
13 Tenuis . . . . .	.	k	.	च	𐬛	𐬛	𐬛	𐬛	𐬛	k	
14 " aspirata . . . . .	.	kh	.	छ	𐬜	𐬜	𐬜	𐬜	𐬜	kh	
15 Media . . . . .	.	g	.	ज	.	.	.	.	.	.	
16 " aspirata . . . . .	.	gh	.	झ	.	.	.	.	.	.	
17 " Nasalis . . . . .	.	ñ	.	ञ	.	.	.	.	.	.	

# TRANSLITERATION OF ORIENTAL ALPHABETS

	CONSONANTS <i>(continued)</i>	MISSIONARY ALPHABET.			Sanskrit	Zend.	Pehlvi.	Persian.	Arabic.	Hebrew	Chinese
		I Class	II Class	III Class							
		y	(y) (ū)	s z							
18	Semivocalis . . . . .	y			य	𐬨 init. 𐬩𐬪	𐭣	ی	ي	,	γ
19	Spiritus asper . . . . .	t	(y)		.	.	.	.	.	.	.
20	" lenis . . . . .	th	(ū)		.	.	.	.	.	.	.
21	" asper assibilatus . . . . .	d	s		श	𐬯	𐭥	ش	ث	.	ʃ
22	" lenis assibilatus . . . . .	dh	z		.	.	.	.	.	.	ʒ
<b>Dentales.</b>											
23	Tenuis . . . . .	t			त	𐬔	𐭠	ت	ط	ת	t
24	" aspirata . . . . .	th			थ	𐬕	𐭡	ٲ	ظ	תּ	th
25	" assibilata . . . . .				.	.	.	.	.	.	.
26	Media . . . . .	d			ड	𐬤	𐭢	د	ذ	ד	d
27	" aspirata . . . . .	dh			.	.	.	.	.	.	.
28	" assibilata . . . . .				.	.	.	.	.	.	.
29	Nasalis . . . . .	n			न	𐬌	𐭮	ن	ن	נ	n
30	Semivocalis . . . . .	l			ळ	𐬫	𐭱	ل	ل	ל	l
31	" mollis 1 . . . . .		/		ॠ	𐬀	𐭴	ل	ل	ל	.
32	" mollis 2 . . . . .				ॡ	𐬁	𐭵	ل	ل	ל	.
33	Spiritus asper 1 . . . . .	s			ष	𐬶	𐭳	س	س	ס	s
34	" asper 2 . . . . .				ש	𐬰	𐭶	ش	ش	שׂ	ʃ
35	" lenis . . . . .	z			.	.	.	.	.	.	ʒ
36	" asperrimus 1 . . . . .				.	.	.	.	.	.	.
37	" asperrimus 2 . . . . .				.	.	.	.	.	.	.





# TRANSLITERATION OF ORIENTAL ALPHABETS.

VOVELS.		MISSIONARY ALPHABET		Sanskrit.	Zend.	Pehlev.	Persian.	Arabic.	Hebrew	Chinese
		I Class.	II Class.							
1	Neutrals . . . . .	o		.	.	.	.	.	.	o
2	Laryngo-palatalis . . . . .	ē		.	.	.	.	.	.	ē
3	" labialis . . . . .	ō		.	.	.	.	.	.	ō
4	Gutturalis brevis . . . . .	a		अ	𐬀	𐬀	𐬀	ا	א	a
5	" longa . . . . .	ā	(a)	आ	𐬁	𐬁	𐬁	آ	א	ā
6	Palatalis brevis . . . . .	i		इ	𐬂	𐬂	𐬂	ي	י	i
7	" longa . . . . .	ī	(i)	ई	𐬃	𐬃	𐬃	ی	י	ī
8	Dentalis brevis . . . . .	h		ह	.	.	.	.	.	h
9	" longa . . . . .	h̄		ह	.	.	.	.	.	h̄
10	Lingualis brevis . . . . .	ri		रि	.	.	.	.	.	ri
11	" longa . . . . .	rī		रि	.	.	.	.	.	rī
12	Labialis brevis . . . . .	u		उ	.	.	.	.	.	u
13	" longa . . . . .	ū	(u)	ऊ	.	.	.	.	.	ū
14	Gutturo-palatalis brevis . . . . .	e		ए	𐬄	𐬄	𐬄	ه	ה	e
15	" longa . . . . .	ē (ai)	(e)	ऐ	𐬅	𐬅	𐬅	ه	ה	ē
16	Diphthongus gutturo-palatalis	āi	(ai)	आ	𐬆	𐬆	𐬆	آ	א	āi
17	" "	ei (ēi)		इ	𐬇	𐬇	𐬇	ی	י	ei
18	" "	oi (ōu)		उ	𐬈	𐬈	𐬈	و	ו	oi
19	Gutturo-labialis brevis . . . . .	o		ओ	𐬉	𐬉	𐬉	و	ו	o
20	" longa . . . . .	ō (au)	(o)	औ	𐬊	𐬊	𐬊	و	ו	ō
21	Diphthongus gutturo-labialis	āu	(au)	आ	𐬋	𐬋	𐬋	آ	א	āu
22	" "	eu (ēu)		इ	𐬌	𐬌	𐬌	ی	י	eu
23	" "	ou (ōu)		उ	𐬍	𐬍	𐬍	و	ו	ou
24	Gutturalis, fracta . . . . .	ā		अ	.	.	.	.	.	ā
25	Palatalis, fracta . . . . .	ī		इ	.	.	.	.	.	ī
26	Labialis, fracta . . . . .	ū		उ	.	.	.	.	.	ū
27	Gutturo-labialis, fracta . . . . .	ō		ओ	.	.	.	.	.	ō

